00043481

THE
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY
TOWN HALL, BOMBAY-400 023.

Digitized with financial assistance from
Government of Maharashtra
on 30 January, 2020

The Romans of Partenay,

or of Lusignen.

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, No. 22.

1866.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

The Romans of Partenay, or of Lusignen:

OTHERWISE KNOWN AS

The Tale of Melusine:

Translated from the French of La Coudrette
(*before* 1500 A.D.)

43481
a1

FORMERLY EDITED FROM A UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT IN THE LIBRARY OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,

WITH AN

Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index,

AND NOW REVISED

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, Litt.D., LL.D., D.C.L., Ph.D.
ELTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON, AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

Ll. m. 20

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO.,
PATERNOSTER HOUSE, CHARING CROSS ROAD.

[Revised ... 1895]

00043481

PREFACE.

1. DESCRIPTION OF THE MSS., ETC.

The MS. from which the present poem has now for the first time been copied and edited, is one belonging to Trinity College, Cambridge (where its class-mark is R. 3. 17), which is believed to be unique. It is written (on paper) in a clear but somewhat loose handwriting of the beginning of the sixteenth century, or possibly of the latter part of the fifteenth. I am inclined to guess that it may appear to be of a somewhat later date than it really is, from the possibility of its not having been written by a professional scribe; that is to say, if we are to take literally the lines near the conclusion,

> Sin at your request and commaundement
> This warke on me take, it to fourge and make;
> And so have I don after myne entent
> With litterall cure for your sake,
> Tham conveying in sadde lines blake, etc.

which seem to imply that the maker of the translation wrote it out with his own hand. This, however, involves two other assumptions, viz. that this particular copy is the original one (which can hardly be the case), and that the translator did not, in the first instance, employ a scribe. The MS. is nearly perfect, but two leaves are wanting, viz. fol. 1 and fol. 88. The sense of the latter has been readily supplied from a French MS. which will be described shortly, but fol. 1 contained original matter which might have told us more about the translator himself. As each page contains exactly four stanzas of seven lines each, we have thus lost 56 lines at most. Yet the preceding one (or more) being quite full, the lines of the Prologue have been numbered consecutively. Had the MS. been perfect, the whole number of lines would have been 124.

been copied, and will be found in the foot-notes. On a vellum fly-leaf at the beginning are the marks of ownership

"Liber Ricardi St Georg } faro et spero"—
Norroy Regis armorum }

and below this—

"Beaupré Bell, de Beaupré Hall in Com. Norf. APPETEYEIN."

By the latter of these owners it was presented to Trinity College.

On the front of this fly-leaf there is written, in a very scrawly hand-writing which it is very difficult to read, the following short poem, which seems worth transcription.

"maisters mine,
I am your man,
as yet may well esp[y];
if you will be
content with me,
I am ner[er] [say ?]
but if you will
[com]pany still
with eyes [ma]ke [re]ason;
what betell [fits]
[mythefull to [me,]?
I am, etc.

but if you fayne,
I tell you playne,
if I shulde presently die,
I will none suche
as louse to muche,
I am, etc.

For if you can
lone every man
yet can flatter & lie,
then are not ye
no mache for me.
I am, etc.

For I will not take
no suche kinde of m[ate,]
as you shall full well it trie,
yet of all me cast
at every blast;
I am merle, etc."

The present text [is a close] fac-simile of the MS. as printing allows of, most of its peculiarities being preserved as far as possible, including even the occasional occurrence of a small letter at the beginning of a line, which is of no significance. Every stanza begins with a large red capital, indicated by the large printed letter. The expansions of the various contractions, which occur but seldom, are indicated by italics. A hyphen within a word, such as in "Co-la," (Prol. l. 63), means that the syllables are written with a [illegible] between them. Letters or words between square brackets—as [a]s in "columb[a]e," l. 1[7]—do not exist in the MS., but have been supplied because they are necessary. To ensure accuracy, the

[illegible] "merle" is hardly legible, and the line is incomplete.

[illegible] "me" have been cut off by the binding. There are also two other [illegible] these two lines, thrust [illegible] the [illegible] from above, viz.

"[illegible] [illegible] will not work [illegible] will."

proof-sheets have been twice compared with the MS. throughout the poem. I am of course responsible for the punctuation, marks of parenthesis and quotation, side-notes, etc.

The peculiarities of the MS. that have not been observed are these:—the use of long *s* (ſ); full points occurring at the ends of lines[1]; the strokes through the upper part of the letter *h* when it follows *c*, *g*, or *t*; slight tags to *f*, *g*, *t*, and *ll*, which (in this MS. at least) mean nothing; and the fine downstrokes employed as metrical marks. These are often left out, and were merely intended to shew where a pause might be best made in the middle of a line when recited aloud. Such strokes occur oftenest after the *fifth* syllable, often after the *fourth*, rarely after the *sixth*. In the first stanza of the Poem, p. 8, one occurs three times, as thus:—

> Hit is so in trouth / in time auncion,
> After the time / that Octauian was, . . .
> And A man ful ripe / in other clergie.

The lines most frequently consist of ten syllables, which require a slow and measured pronunciation to make them melodious. The *-e* and *-es* at the end of words must often be fully pronounced.

The construction of the sentences, owing to some peculiarities of grammar, is not unfrequently obscure, and the question of punctuation in particular often presented difficulties, but nearly all doubts of this kind have been completely removed by a very fortunate circumstance, which, as I believe, has nearly doubled the value of the present edition. A MS. (marked Ll. 2. 5) belonging to the Cambridge University Library was kindly pointed out to me by Mr. Bradshaw, of King's College, which contains, in French, the whole of the very romance of which the present edition is a translation. The copy which our translator used must have resembled this very closely indeed, though a few differences of reading can be traced; and, as a consequence, this French MS. has proved of the utmost service, and a constant reference to it has explained many a sentence, phrase, and word, which would else have proved puzzling. Whilst a comparison of the two throughout has well decided the punctuation. The French MS. is in all respects superior to the English one; it is older, clearer, and better written, and the language is easier and more poetical. It is of the fifteenth century, on paper, and contains

[1] When one occurs in the middle of a line it has been treated as one of the marks of parenthesis, as at

186 written leaves, followed by a few blank ones. Of these, the first 148 are occupied by the "Romance of Melusine," and the rest chiefly by a Chronicle of events in French history, arranged in short paragraphs under their proper years, the last entry referring to the year 1454. Numerous extracts from it, illustrative of doubtful points, will be found in the notes, and the whole of the Prologue to the poem, carefully copied from it, will be found at p. 229.

Besides these two, there is also a copy of the Romance in prose in the British Museum (Bibl. Reg. 18. B. ii) consisting of 210 folios, and entitled—in a later hand—"A Chronicle of Melusine in olde Englishe, compyled by Ihon of Arras, and dedicated to the Duke of Berry and Auuergne, and tranzslated (as yt shoulde seeme) out of Frenche into Englishe." But this, as will be more fully explained presently, gives a different version of the story, and I have not made much use of it. Still, a few extracts from it will be found in the notes, and two more at pp. ix and xvi of this preface.[1]

There is also, among the Additional MSS. in the British Museum, a short abstract of the Poem in Icelandic, entitled "Melucinæ og Remunds Saga." It is, however, of late date and little value. It contains seven short chapters, and begins on fol. 62b of MS. 4870.

Several quotations will be found in the notes from a book of which the title is—"Histoire des ducs de Bourbon et des comtes de Forez: par Jean-Marie de la Mure"—printed at Paris in 1860 from a MS. bearing the date 1675. The author accepts a large portion of the romance as genuine history, and works out genealogies and titles with the most laborious minuteness. Several of his statements are certainly open to question, but the book is interesting as illustrating the romance; see particularly book ii, chapters 77—84.

II. SOME ACCOUNT OF THE ROMANCE.

The first mention of the Romance is in connection with Jean d'Arras; of whom some account is given in the "Biographie Universelle." He was secretary to the Duc de Berri, who was brother to Charles V., king of France, and uncle to Charles VI., and also notorious for exercising great severity as governor of Lan-

[1] The whole of this prose version has since been printed by the Early English Text Society (Extra Series, no. LXVIII), edited by A. K. Donald, under the title "Melusine; Part I." (*Addition in proof.*)

gudoc. In the year 1387, the duke bade Jean d'Arras to write this romance for the amusement of his (the duke's) sister, the Duchesse de Bar. The famous deeds of the fairy Melusine had long before this been recorded in some documents that had been carefully preserved in the castle of Lusignan. To these Jean trusted for the main portion of his work, but added much of his own. It seems probable that it was at first written in Latin, as we find in the Catalogue of MSS. of Gaul, Switzerland, etc., by D. G. Hensel, the following entry:—"187. Roman de Melusine; traduction en vers du *latin* de Jean d'Arras."[1] But it is probable that it was not long before there was also a French prose translation in existence, which may have been made by Jean d'Arras himself. This seems to agree with the statement in the Cambridge MS.,

> "Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez
> En *latin*, et tous approimtez,
> Quon fist *translater en francois*" (see p. 231);

or as our English translator puts it (at p. 6)—

> "Within the toure of noble mabregon
> To faire lokis were founden ther-on
> In latin, And all prouyd at deuise,
> That men made translat in most frenshest wyse."

It is this version of the story which is given by the British Museum prose romance, which begins by invoking the "Creatour of alle Creatures," and continues thus. "And to the plaisire of my Right high, nighti, and doubtid lord Iohan, sone to the kyng of Fraunce,[2] due of Berry & of Auuergne. The whiche hystory I haue bygonne after the veray & true Cronyklos which I haue had of hym and of the Erle of Salesbury[3] in England, & many other bokes that I haue sought & ouerredde for to accomplysshe hit. And bycause that his noble suster Marye, doughtir to the kyng Iohan of Fraunce, duchesse of Bar, had Requyred my said lord for to haue the said historye; the whiche in fauour of her [he] hath doon as moche to his power as he might, to sorche the very trouth & true historye; and hath commanded me for to do drawe alle alonge thystory whiche herafftir foloweth. And I, as of herte dyligent, of my pouere witt & conuyng, [do] as nygh as I can the pure trouth of hys graceyous commandement. Whiche this present hystorye I byganne the

[1] Hensel, in his "Manuel de Librairie," speaks of this romance as

[3] See note to Prol. l. 178.

Wednesday [before] saynt Clementis day,[1] in wynter, the yer of *our* lord mccclxxxvii., beseching alle them that shalle rede or here it Redde that they wil pardouna me my fawte yf their be eny. For certaynly I haue composed it the moost lustly that I coude or haue mowe, aftir the Cronycles whiche I suppose certaynly to be trew."

The earliest printed edition of this Romance is thus described by Brunet ("Manuel du Libraire," ed. 1862, iii. 519). "Jean d'Arras. La Melusine. 'Cy finist le liure de Melusine en francoys, imprime par maistre Adam Steinschabar, natif de Suinfurt, en la noble cite de Geneue,' 1478, in-fol. goth. fig. en bois." It was one of the very first books printed at Geneva. Since then, editions have been very numerous,[2] as well in Spanish and German as in French; and the story is altogether very familiarly and very widely known upon the continent.

We now come to the second and later form in which the Romance commonly appears.

In the Catalogue of the Library of the duc de la Vallière (Paris, 1783), vol. ii., p. 260, there is an account of a fine MS. on vellum of "Le Roman de Mélusine, ou de Partenay, ou de Lusignan." This romance is followed by a chronicle in prose of events in French history from the year 1403 to 1454.

There is little doubt but that the Cambridge MS., already described, altogether agrees with this, but is not so fine a copy. The version is in octosyllabic metre, and was undertaken by one named La Coudrette, a Poitevin, at the request of William, lord of Parthenay, and continued after this William's death (in 1401), at the request of his son, John of Parthenay, of whom there are profuse praises towards the close of the poem. La Coudrette tells us, in his "Prologue," that he had three books to refer to, and he professes to have done little more than re-arrange his materials. When these failed, he broke off the narrative, not venturing to continue it on his own authority. He is also careful to tell us[3] that his was not the first attempt at versifying the story, and he therefore deprecates criticism for his performance. The reader will observe that the one

[1] ... ted; the French version has "le ... St. Clement's day, Nov. 23, 1387, ... was Nov. 20.

[2] ... also the La Vallière Catalogue, vol. ii., ... 642; and the ... 6399.

[3] Prol. v. 159–161.

version only preceded the other by a period which is less than fourteen years. I may add here that there is an excellent modern version of the story in German to be found in Tieck, which I have often found of service. It is written partly in prose and partly in verse, but it is clear that in the prose portion Tieck has often adopted the very words of La Coudrette's version, so that a close comparison of them often explains minor difficulties. So common indeed is the story in Germany that an abstract of it can be had in the form of a "Volksbuch" for a couple of *groschen*, in which the principal circumstances of the legend are very well and clearly told.

III. THE LEGEND.

The subject of the legend may be most briefly shewn by an extract from a well-known work, which also discusses the name of the heroine.[1] "Melisenda is, in Spanish ballad-lore, the wife of Don Gayferos, and, being taken captive by the Moors, was the occasion of the feats that were represented by the puppet-show in which Don Quixote took an unfortunate lively interest.[2] Melisende again was the princess who carried the uneasy crown of Jerusalem to the house of Anjou; and, perhaps, from the Provençal connections of the English court, Lady Melisent Stafford bore the name in the time of Henry the Second, whence Melicent has become known in England, and never quite disused, though often confounded with Melissa, a bee, and sometimes spelt Millicent.

"Melusine[3] was a nymph who became the wife of the Lord de Luzignan, or Lusignan,[4] on condition that he should never intrude upon her on a Saturday; of course, after a long time, his curiosity was excited, and stealing a glance at his lady in her solitude, he beheld her a serpent from the waist downward! With a terrible shriek she was lost to him for ever; but she left three [two] sons,

[1] Miss Yonge: on Christian Names, vol. i., p. 257; (2nd ed.), p. 233.

[2] In the original Spanish, "Melisendra libertada ... el famoso D. Gaiferos."—Don Quixote, parte ii. cap. xxv.

[3] Baring-Gould gives a very different account of the origin of the name, which he believes to be of Semitic origin. See his "Curious Myths of the Middle Ages," ii. 233.

[4] "près de la ville de Mont... propre nom de *Lezig*... de Lusignan ainsi ..."—De la Mure: ... tions Lexicon" ... wrong form of the ...

all bearing some deformity, of whom Geoffroi *au grant dent* was the most remarkable. Prose makes this gentleman the son of Eustachie Chabot, heiress of Vouvant, but the Mélusine tradition lingers round his castle of Lusignan, near Poictiers; and to this day, at the fairs of that city, gingerbread cakes are sold, with human head and serpent tail, and called *mélusines*. A *cri de Mélusine* is, likewise, a proverbial expression for a sudden scream, recalling that with which the unfortunate fairy discovered the indiscretion of her lord.

"The story is a frequent one; it occurs in Brittany, where the spell was broken by the husband speaking the word *death* before his fairy wife; and in Wales, where the lady is called a *pellen*."

We may recall, too, Keats's "Lamia;" and how she disappeared as Apollonius uttered the word "serpent" for the second time—

> "A serpent!" echoed he; no sooner said,
> Than with a frightful scream she vanished—

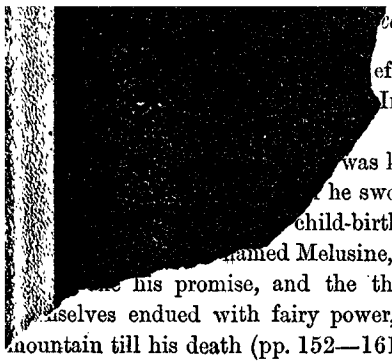
a story which, as Burton tells us, is to be found in Philostratus, in his fourth book *de vitâ Apollonii*.[1]

For an excellent article on "Melusina" see "Curious Myths of the Middle Ages," by S. Baring-Gould, 2nd Series, p. 206. It is tolerably clear that the romance-writer has confused the story of a mermaid with that of a lamia, and has further supplemented it by introducing the notion of the Celtic banshee.

To come somewhat more to particulars, I may first observe that the prose version is much longer and contains many more details than the rimed one;[2] and that the story resolves itself into five several parts. (1) The story of king Helmas and the enchanted mountain; (this part of the story is inserted in the rimed version near the *end*, but the prose version puts it in its proper place at the *beginning*;) (2) Raymond and Melusine; (3) the deeds of their sons; (4) the legend of Sparrow-hawk Castle; and (5) Palestine's treasure

[1] "L'histoire de Mélusine est une vieille fable dont le cadre, nettement tracé, existait déjà au xiie siècle; du reste, cette tradition de la femme-serpent doit être beaucoup plus ancienne et n'est peut-être pas sans quelque rapport avec la Dracontalopedes, et même avec la déesse Derceto des Syriens."—De La Mure: "Histoire," etc., note by the editor.

[2] It records more of the valiant deeds of Raymond and others, and especially of Geoffrey; and it mentions many minor details which the present version altogether omits. For example, when Urians and Guy depart on their adventures, the prose romance tells us how their mother Melusine gave them two magic rings or amulets; and in like manner she gives two similar rings to Raymond just before her disappearance, to protect him from harm and misfortune. (See fol. 94 back, and fol. 183. Cf. *Melusine*, ed. Donald, pp. 110, 312.)



ef abstract of these, referring the Index of Names" at the end of

was king of Albany, who married a he swore a vow, that he would never child-birth. Presine had three daughters named Melusine, Melior, and Palestine. Helmas his promise, and the three children in revenge, being themselves endued with fairy power, shut him up in an enchanted mountain till his death (pp. 152—161). Presine, angry at this, punished each of them with different evil destinies. Melusine was partly to turn into a serpent every Saturday; Melior was to be banished for ever to Sparrow-hawk Castle in Armenia; and Palestine to keep unceasing watch over king Helmas' treasure, which was deposited on a mountain-top in Arragon.

II. Count Raymond. A rich earl of Poitiers, named Amery, adopted Raymond, the youngest son of the earl of Forest. In a boar-hunt, Raymond accidentally slays his benefactor; and soon after, whilst riding aimlessly about absorbed in grief, is surprised by the sudden sight of three beautiful damsels (Melusine, Melior, and Palestine). The eldest, Melusine, promises him all earthly prosperity if he will marry her; but he is to swear that he will never inquire whither she repairs on a Saturday. After some years, he secretly watches her on that day, and perceives her with her serpent's tail. He is deeply grieved, and being very penitent, is forgiven for the present. But afterwards, in a moment of rage at hearing of the death of his son Fromount, he calls her a "serpent!" She swoons with horror, and after an expostulatory farewell glides out at the window in a serpent's form, passing round the castle three times, at each time uttering a terrible and mournful cry. Raymond is afterwards absolved by the pope, and becomes a hermit at Montserrat in Arragon, where he dies at a great age.

III. [illegible]eir Sons. Raymond and Melusine had ten sons, all marked (except the two youngest) with some blemish, and nearly all remarkable for their great valour and extraordinary success. Of these, Uriens becomes king of Cyprus; Oede was lord of the marches of Poitiers; Guy was king of Armenia; Anthony, duke of Luxemburg; Raynold, king of Bohemia; whilst Geoffrey with the great tooth, who succeeded his father as lord of Partheney, [illegible]formed

many prodigies of valour, slaying
the giant Grimold in Northumberl
of the enchanted mountain. But
graced the family by becoming a m
Geoffrey burnt him alive with all his
The next, Horrible, was put to death by
the wickedness he would else commit. The
time after the rest, and were named Raymond and Thierry;
became earl of Forest, and Thierry succeeded Geoffrey as lord
Parthenay.

IV. Sparrow-hawk Castle. In this castle, which was in Armenia, the lady Melior was to abide for the rest of her days, as above told. Presine had given her the power of granting a boon to any knight who watched the deathless sparrow-hawk which was within the castle, for three days and nights without sleeping. He was to have whatever he liked, except Melior herself as wife. The story tells how a king of Armenia dared to ask this, and how he was punished. (See Mandeville's "Travels," ch. xiii.)

V. Palestine's treasure. Palestine guarded her father's treasure at the top of a mountain in Arragon, which is variously spelt Courgo, Coinqs, Quonig, etc. In this she was assisted by a huge serpent with a huge eye, and by a great bear and innumerable snakes that infested the lower part of the mountain. The story tells how an English knight slew the bear, and passed by all the snakes, but was swallowed bodily by the great serpent, in whose mouth he appeared no bigger than a pasty does in an oven.

The rimed romance concludes with many praises of John of Parthenay, with a lament for his father's death, and, at the end, a solemn litany for the preservation of the family and lineage of Parthenay. La Coudrette discusses the proper name to be given to the romance, and decides that it ought to be named either the "Romans of Partenay," or the "Romans of Lusignen"; to which decision I have therefore adhered.[2]

The translator appends a short epilogue of his own (l. 6546 to the end), as he had already prefixed 77 lines to the prologue.

The story of Melusine is alluded to by several historical writers. Thuanus[3] speaks of the excellent situation of the castle of Lusignan,

[1] See Index of Names (p. 298); s.v. Raymond (2).
[2] See ll. 6116—6121.
[3] Thuanus: lib. liv. § xi.

strongly fortified as it was by a wide fosse and two large towers, and conspicuous for its "Melusine's tower," and "Geoffrey's gateway;" the latter being so called, according to Brantôme, from the colossal statue of Geoffrey *au grant dent* which surmounted it. Thuanus also mentions the famous fountain (for the marvellous origin of which see p. 32 of the present volume) in the words—"in imâ turre fons Melusinæ a poetis nostratibus decantatæ fabulis famosus scatet." Both Mezeray[1] and Brantôme[2] record the sad fate of this famous castle, which was razed to the ground by the Duc de Montpensier in January 1574-5, because it had been determined to pull down all the fortresses wherein the Huguenots had been accustomed to take refuge. Mezeray's words with regard to Melusine are remarkable. "The great acts of Melusine," he says, "her riches, her extraordinary knowledge, which she derived either from communication with higher intelligences, or rather perhaps from the cabala of the Rabbins who were then very numerous in France, have procured her immortal renown in the mouth of posterity; who, not knowing her real history, have invented marvellous tales concerning her. These I leave to amuse old women and children. But I am enabled to report, on the credit of many persons of honour, and who are not generally thought credulous, that it has been observed that whenever one of her descendants, or a king of France, was about to die, she appeared on the great tower in a widow's[3] habit, and uttered long and terrible cries; that she was thus seen before the siege of Lusignan; and that, when her castle was about to be demolished, she was seen longer than ever before, shrieking aloud in so lamentable a voice that she cleft all hearts with pity; but that she has since never been seen or heard save very rarely. Si cela est ainsi (I here give his own words) les Theologiens en rechercheront la cause, et nous enseigneront si nous devons croire que des pareilles choses proviennent, ou de la malice des demons, qui se plaisent à mettre les hommes en peine par ces illusions; ou de la bonté de Dieu, qui *pour monstrer aux incredules l'immortalité de l'ame*, et les merveilles de l'autre monde, veut permettre aux esprits heroïques de paroitre

[1] Mezeray: "Histoire de la France," tome iii. p. 359 (fol. 1685).

[2] Brantôme: "Capitaines Françoises," tome iii. p. 369; or "Œuvres Complètes," ed. Lalanne, v. 16. Cf. "Hist. de France," par H. Martin; 4me ed., 1865, iv. 415.

[3] Brantome also expressly calls her "veufve," so that the historical account is that she outlived Raymond, instead of disappearing so suddenly as in the romance.

quelquefois en celuy-cy dans les lieux qu'ils ont aimez durant leur vie."

Brantôme also testifies, but less strongly, to these miraculous reappearances;[1] and especially laments the destruction of the fine castle, for which many spoke of the Duc de Montpensier in terms of bitter execration. The ruins of the castle can now scarcely be traced. Miss Costello has recorded her extreme disappointment when visiting the site of them.[2]

With regard to the question just above raised by Mezeray as to the existence of fairies, the following extract from the prose romance is very interesting, and may serve also as a specimen of it.

"We haue thenne herd sey and telle of *our* auncyents, that in many partes of the sayd land of Poytow haue ben shewed vnto many oon Right famylerly many manyeres of thinges, the which som called Gobelyns, the other Fayrees, and the other bonnes dames or good ladyes; and they goo by nyght-tyme and entre *with*in the houses without opnyng or brekyng of ony doore, and take & bere somtyme with them the children out of their cradelle*s*, and somtyme they turne them out of theyre wit, and somtyme they brenne & Roste them before þe fyre, and whan they departe fro them they leue them as hoole as they were before, and som̄ gyue grette happe & Fortune in this world. And yet haue I herd say of oon Geruayse, a man worshipfull & of credence, that som other fauntasyes appyeren by nyght-tyme vnto many oon in dyuerse places, in lyknes of wymen with old face, of low and lytil stature or body, whiche dide scoure pannes and potts and dide suche thinge*s* as a mayde or *seruaunt* oughte to doo, lyberaly & without dooyng of ony harme. And also he saith for certayn that in his tyme he hadd a frend that was auncyent & old, which Recounted for trouth that in hys dayes he hadd seen many tymes suche thinges." (fol. 2 *b.*)

Jean d'Arras then goes on to give several instances of men who had married fairies, always under certain conditions, and specially mentions one whom "Geruayse" *well knew*, viz. Sir Robert du Chastel Rouseel of the province of Asy, who found a fairy in a

[1] Cf. note to l. 8711.

[2] Miss L. S. Costello: "Béarn and the Pyrenees," vol. i., p. 140. She gives a sketch of the legend, and adds that Bouchet, in his chronicles, says he cannot find that any duke or count of Poitou was ever called Bertrand or Aymery; whence he concludes that the whole story is one of those which it is *impossible to believe, but which are at the same time delectable to read.*

meadow, and married her on the understanding that he was never to behold her stripped; but happening one day to see her in this condition, she immediately "putte her heed in-to a watre, & was tourned in-to a serpent." (fol. 3.) With regard to Melusine's re-appearance before calamities, and to her tending her youngest son, Thierry, as described at p. 140, the reader may compare the following. "In German tradition the name of Berchta is given to the so-called *White Lady*, who appears in many houses when a member of the family is about to die, and, as we have seen, is thought to be the ancestress of the race. She is sometimes seen at night tending and nursing the children, in which character she resembles the Keltic fairy. In other and more wide-spread traditions, the White Lady is an enchanted or spell-bound damsel, who usually every seventh year appears near some mountain or castle, points out treasures, and awaits her release.[1] Sometimes she is seen combing her long locks or drying flax-knots. Some pretend that, like Huldra, she is disfigured by a *tail*."[2] The story entitled "How Count Baldwin of Flanders married a devil"[3] has several points of resemblance to that of Melusine; but Melusine is always represented as loving and beneficent.

IV. THE LANGUAGE OF THE POEM.

Judging by the occasional occurrence of plural verb-endings in *-en*, the dialect would appear to be Midland; and other indications suggest that the scribe was an East-Anglian. I have observed, in particular, that many of the words used occur in the Promptorium Parvulorum, with the same peculiarities of spelling. The chief points to be noted are these.

We find plural verb-endings of the indicative present in *-en*; as, *willen, shinen;* and also of the past tense, as *weren*. The past tense of weak verbs ends in *-ed*, and the past participles end in *-ed* or *-yd*. The past participles of strong verbs end in *-en*, *-yn*, and even *-ing* or *-yng;* as *founden, forsaad n* (1290), *wroughten, thrown, coruen, yewyn* (1860), *taking* (4921), *takyng* (1754), *yeuyng* (1799). Even the infinitive mood sometimes ends in *-ing* or *-yng*, as *endosing* (5625), *yeuyng* (1528). Present participles end in *-ing*, *-yng*, *-and*, *-ant*. Examples of the latter

[1] This clearly applies to the legend of Melior and Palestine.
[2] B. Thorpe: "Northern Mythology," vol. i., p. 279.
[3] Ditto, vol. iii., p. 283.

forms are *trenchand* (3045), *distrussand* (4082), *Ioynant* (4513). But the most characteristic marks of the poem are these; (1) the continual omission of inflexions, so that we meet with *reste* = rested, *yilde* = yielded, *gif* = given, whilst *diffend* (1468) is to be compared with *deffendyd* (2105); so too *goo* = gone, *be* = been, *mysdo* = misdone; (2) an extraordinary partiality on the part of the writer for the present participle, which he continually compels to serve both for the present and past tenses of the indicative; see *musing* = mused (363); and (3) a continual omission of the personal pronouns —see note to Prol., l. 4—and even of the verb *to be*, which gives many sentences an awkward look, and obscures the meaning. As a genitive case-ending, *-is* twice occurs written apart from the word, as *sone is* = son's (28), and *Tristram is* = Tristram's (5750). By comparing *Tristram-is* with *Tristram hys* (6008), we have a good example of the unhappy substitution of *his* for the genitive case-ending; a change to which proper names were very liable. It is further remarkable that this case-ending is constantly neglected altogether, as *castell strength, lady lore, medee auise, fadir deth*, for castle's strength, lady's lore, Medea's advice, father's death. The following past tenses are noticeable: *fly* (flew), *blent, glint, rought* (recked), *sly* (slew), *clive* (clove), *grint* (ground), *lepe, condute* (conducted). Some of the past participles have prefixes; as, *I-graunted, I-thought, A-conqueste* (2492), *A-stoned*, generally spelt *stoned*. Also *to-stoniste, to-chapped, to-rent* occur, from the verbs *to-stonish, to-chap, to-rend*. Owing to the frequent occurrence of *y auoir* in the French, the translator constantly uses *had* or *was had* in place of *was*, and *had* or *were had* for *were*. Similarly, the occurrence of the French *elle* induces him to use *she* in place of *it* more than once. The accusative case *me* is curiously used, as *me moste goo* = I must go, *speke me shall* = I shall speak. *Me* is also found, as commonly elsewhere, in the sense of the Fr. *on*. The plural *bretherin* occurs twice.

Of adjectives, we find many double comparatives, as, *more leuer, more fairer*; and superlatives, as *moste hieste, moste gretteste*. The forms *bryghty, moisty*, occurring for *bright, moist*, are very significant as pointing to the full pronunciation of the final *-e* in old authors, being no doubt corruptions of *brighte, moiste*. So too *pitty* is written instead of *pitte* = pit. The forms *breueloker* = briefliер, and *goodlokest* = goodliest, are worth remark, as affording instances of forms

common in older MSS. The adverbs *fro-hens, fro-thens, wher-hens, ther-hens, ther-thens*, occur often. The adverb *well* is generally spelt *will*, which is at first sometimes perplexing. *Sonly* occurs instead of *soon* in l. 4078. *In* and *inly* mean very, extremely.

The conjunctions *yut* (yet) and *os* (as) are provincial forms. The preposition *toward* admits of separation, as *to-Brehaigne-ward* (2147, 2151). Double negatives are common. The forms *not-for-þat* (nevertheless) and *neuer-for-neuer* (never at any time) are curious.

A few words as to spelling. *Th* seems to have often had the sound of *t*; as we find *thought, thowne, thaken, thouchyng, thyme*, meaning taught, town, taken, touching, time. Compare *whyth*, with, and *whent*, went. Such words as *crying, rejoying, noying*, are spelt *cryng, reioyng, noyng*. We find, too, *piteous, shameous, beauteous, hideous*, for piteous, etc. *World* is spelt both *worle* and *worlde*, and for *worldly* we find *worly* and *wordly*. But one of the most curious freaks is that two letters are often transposed; *for* is repeatedly written when *fro* is meant; and *traying, presone, beded, presight, aduersite, berres, ther, secerly, perdestinat, portared, soyren*, all noticed in the foot-notes, are simply errors for *tarying, persone, bedde, perfight, aduertise, breres, thre, secrely, predestinat, portraed, soyrn*, respectively. It is curious that *r* is the letter shifted, in nine instances out of eleven. We are thus left somewhat uncertain as to whether the spellings *refersh*ing, *crussing* are *intentional*, or whether they should be altered to *refreshing, curssing*. Cf. the O.E. *kerse, bridd*, for *cress, bird*.

It only remains for me to explain why my name appears alone on the title-page, instead of jointly with that of the Rev. J. Rawson Lumby, as at first advertised. Mr. Lumby had done his full share of the transcription, viz. the latter half of the poem, from l. 3151 to the end, and had begun to add side-notes, when he was compelled by stress of work to relinquish the task. He has nevertheless been ever ready with suggestions and advice, and to him therefore are my thanks especially due; as also to Mr. Bradshaw (as before mentioned), and to the authorities of Trinity College, who have allowed me the unrestrained use of their manuscript.

Postscript (in 1899). In reprinting the former edition of 1876, I have taken the opportunity of making a few corrections and additions; and I subjoin a note on the author's language.

The extremely numerous instances of departure from all ordinary English idioms clearly shew that the author's native language could hardly have been English of a correct type, in spite of his use of such expressions as "our moder tonge" in l. 6573, and "our tonge tobore" in l. 6563. It is further noticeable that his native language was not French; for he expressly writes, in his own peculiar grammar:—

> "I not aqueynted of birth naturall
> With Frenshe his verray trew[e] parfightnesse"—(l. 8).

The only solution that occurs to me of the linguistic phenomena here presented is that the author may have been born, of English parents, in the province of Poitou, where the legend of Melusine was extremely well-known, and where the French which he daily heard was not of the literary type. His knowledge of English was likewise imperfect, notwithstanding that it may literally have been his mother's tongue. In any case, it deserves to be noted that the poem abounds with constructions to which I cannot remember to have met with any parallel. The accentuation of the verse is frequently unexpected and unusual; and one cannot but suspect that many of the lines could at no time have been considered melodious.

The sole existing MS., as explained above, seems to be a copy made by an East-Anglian scribe.

The Romans of Partenay, or of Lusignen.

[*Fol.* 1 *is wanting.*]

* * * * * * *

FOr full fayne I wold do that myght you please,
yff connyng I had in it to procede;
To me wold it be grete plesaunce and ease,
yff aught here might fourge to youre wyl in dede;
But barayne is my soule,[1] fauting connynghede,
Natheles in it wil I make progresse,
Euermore trustyng to youre gentilnesse.

I not aqueynted of birth naturall
With fre[n]she his verray trew parfightnesse,
Nor enpreyntyd is in mynde cordiall;
O word For other myght take by lachesse,
Or perauenture by vnconnyngnesse;
For frenshe rimed or metred alway
Ful oft is straunge in englishe to display.

As nighe as metre will conclude sentence,
Folew I wil here my president,
Ryght as the frenshe wil yiff me euidence,
Cereatly after myn entent;
Al-be-hit I am vnsufficient,
Ne can noght peynt my boke as other be,
Vnder youne supporte yut aunter wyl me.

[Fol. 2]
I would gladly, had I the cunning, forge something here to please you; but my soul is barren, and lacks skill.

I am not acquainted by birth with the perfection of French, and may mistake one word for another;

for rhymed French is difficult to be displayed in English.

As nigh as the metre will permit, I will follow my text, in due order;

albeit I cannot paint my book as most books are painted.

[1] MS. "foule."

In ancient times men invoked deities;

In auncion tyme of antiquite
Men called goddis to theire helpe and ayd,
With deuoute prayers to theire deite,
Their werkys to fourge eche houred brayd,[1]
Their celles of memoir to refreshe prayd;
As valerius maximus gan do,
Tiberius Cesar called helpe vnto,

thus Valerius Maximus invoked Tiberius.

[Fol. 2 b.] and explained in the proem of his notable book, how the gods were created.

In the proheim off hys notabile boke,
Wher all thes goddis apertly may see,
(ho-so lust out it to behold or loke),
hou thay were creat eche in their degre;
Som lust their faders honoured shold be,
Som for their strenght or for thing in holde,
Som for wisdome or somwhat vnfold.

Midas, the rich king of Phrygia, besought Bacchus that all he touched might become gold; which the god granted, even with respect to his meat and drink.

Off roial frige Midas the riche king
Bachus god of wyne ther besoght he,
That al gold myght be what he were touching,
For he was of hys confraternite;
Hys desyre graunted that gold fine shold be,
Ne had thys god relesed hym at large
Off hys mete and drinke, per shold he had discharge.

Some gods owed their origin to poets' fancy;

To declare how they were deyfied,
large tyme, longe space wold it occupie;
Poetes whilom som fantesied;

others were malign spirits, giving oracular responses.

Som maligne gostes, ful of tyrannye,
yeuyng answeres to peple soudrye;
For to tell or say their generacion
yn vayn, ryght noght their fundacion.

To call to my aid gods such as these,

To callen in ayde tho of no valoure,
Which want myght and strenght, vertu none hauyng,

[1] MS. "houredbrayd."

That miscreantes whilom gan honoure,
As for their goddis thaim deyfiyng,
As power had, where none wer hauyng,
Poetes faynyd in their poetrie,
Theim-selfen the more for to magnifie;

who are of no value, and were only imagined by poets,

Suche fayned goddys noght is to cal on,
Thing Agayne our feith[1] And but fantisie;
No help ne socour to cal thaim vppon;
I lay theim Apart And fully denye,
Requiring that lord whych is Almightye
That of hys highnesse he be my trew gide,
The weyes of trouth me vn-to prouide;

[Fol. 3] would be against our Christian faith.

I deny them, and call rather upon Almighty God,

That in thys mater my penne conueid be
As plesaunce may be vn-to the highnesse
Off our sacred lord, sitting in trinite;
Now be he myn ayde in thys besinesse;
To hym only I trust in thys forth progresse,
That throgh his mercy he me send[2] such grace,
For[3] frensh tyll english that it may purchace.

to guide my pen as may please the Trinity,

that I may translate the French into English.

Mi labor wil don'After my simplenesse
hit for to conuey As I can or may,
Besoching hertly of your highnesse
My defautes for to pardon alway;
Trustyng to your grace now euer and ay,
The prohemy and prologe of frensh here begyn,
After my sampler passing forth ther-in.

I will do my best, asking pardon for defects, and will now begin to translate the prologue prefixed to the French text.

The philisopher ful wyse was And sage
Whiche declarid in hys first pagent,
hys methephisike off noble corage,
Werto plieth humayn entendement,
Naturally conceyung the entent

The philosopher was full wise, who declared in the first page of his "Metaphysics," that the human intellect naturally endeavours to *learn* and *know* things;

[1] MS. "feith." [2] MS. "fend." [3] Fro (?)

for all a man's endeavour

To lerne And know; thing said wel and wisly;
For all humayn entendement fully 84

[Fol. 3 b.] is to know that which he before knew not, especially in matters that concern him closely. Old things, when rehearsed, are good and fair; as when we speak of Arthur,

DEsireth come to know that he knowith noght, 85
Whether of loue or of reproche it be,
And specially if it touche hym aught.
Thinges of long time passyd in contre,
When rehersid is, pleasith hertes fre; 89
Auncion thinges wich ben good and fayre,
As to speke of king arthure debonayr, 91

and of his noble knights and worthy people;

How he wold preue his vertu and manhede 92
With noble knightes and peple worthi;
Many of hym spekith at thys hour in-dede;

or of Lancelot, Percival, or Gawain.

And so thai don of lancelet sureli,
Wher ful good loos had ryght ful preysingly; 96
Of perceuale also, And of Gawayn,
Which lo! at no time had hertes in uayn 98

Whoever inquires of their marvellous adventures by sea and land,

As for to adquire grete honour and prise; 99
Ful wel lernid were in knightly coniectures.
Who wyl know and enquere in what maner wyse,
By se and land meruelous auentures
Which came unto sondry creatures, 103

will find it an excellent thing to know them.

For to conne it is an excellent thyng,
And cause of many mannys preferring. 105

Science is a most worthy thing:

As rose is aboue al floures most fine, 106
So is science most digne of worthynesse;
Ho noght ne can, noght worth is to deuine;

and every one should study history, more especially if he be of high degree.

Hit wel belongeth to tho of goodnesse
Strongly to enquere histories expresse, 110
Which that of longe tyme makith memorie;
Moch more is if he be of degre hye; 112

[Fol. 4] Such a man ought to know his pedi-

HE shold serche, fro degre into degre, 113
vn-to know wherhens he descendyd is,

Duke, Erle, or Baron, or markois if he be,
So þat long mynde therof shuld be ywis;
Al thes lordes gret so shold do in thys,
Ther-off scripture make as an historie,
To ende that ay ther-of be memorie.

For-so-moche I say that an high grete lord,
Whilom of peiters, (whom god yf honour),
lord of partenay named of record,
To whom I shal be redy at ech hour,
Me commaunded, noght gretly, to labour
Of hys proper sentement and feling;
Hys commaundment wern shal I no-thing.

For euery knawith and full wel May see
That to lordes here men obbey, lo! shold;
ho can it noght do, wise ne sage is he;
In hys swete langage ther he me vnfold
That I ther take the exampleir wold
Off a boke[1] of his which that he had made;
He it ther me toke, to fourge it me bade.

To know in sertayn ho fourged and wrought
Roial lesigne[*n*], the noble castell,
Als ho made the town, vnto mynde it brought;
A meruelous strenght is in for to dwel.
Then I answerd greing to hym well,
"My lord," said, "vnto your wil and plesire;"
Then said he, "do it at your owne lesire;

For all the labour and iornay is your;
Thys castell was made with on of faire,
(As ouer all rehersed is eche hour),
Of the which I am drawen lynyally,
I and all the lyne discendyd fully
Of partenay, it is ryght no doute at all;
The fair melusigne men gan hire to call,

[1] MS. "aboke."

gree, and cause it to be duly recorded.

Thus it was that a great lord of Poitiers and Partonay commanded me to labour after this manner;

and men should always obey great lords.

His bidding was, that I should make a (rhymed) copy of a book of his; which book he gave me,

so that men might know who made the castle and town of Lusignan.

I promised accordingly to do so

[Fol. 4 b.]
He then told me that this castle was built by a fairy, from whom he was himself lineally descended, and whose name was Melusine;

whose arms, indeed, he still bore; and he bade me rewrite the whole history of it in rhyme, because then people would the sooner recite or hear it.

This fairie womman þat you namyd haue,
Of whom the armys here now here wee,
The which ofte were borne; and daly it craue,
And to end of it there-of memoir be,
ye shall put in ryme thys historie fre:
I will that it be rimed hole entire,
The sonner peple wyll it say or hire."

I replied, I would gladly undertake it, but desired to receive no praise,

for that it had been put into rhyme once before already.

Then sayd, "my lord, I grant your entent;
Alwais your will and plesire wil doo,
My power also; but lose wil none hent,
For in other tyme in frensh put also,
And rymed, As men me haue told vnto;
Wherefor vnto me shold it be gret shame
Of thys dede me auaunt and of it haue name,

Still I would try and put it into another shape,

which would please him better;

Syn Another time hath fourged be and made.
But to my power what I can wil doo;
so god be plesyd, my witte shal put to fade
In-to other fourme, if leyser haue, lo!
Which letter[1] shal you come plesaunce vnto,
Syn that the other ye haunt ne vse noght;
And, that you plesith, put to will I my thought

[Fol. 5] and would consult two books that had been found in the tower of Mabregon, originally written in Latin, but which had been afterwards translated into French;

After tho bokes which of it men fynde,
Wher this historie preuyd manion;
And to ende that we may bring vn-to mynde,
Within the toure of noble mabregon
To faire bokis were fonden ther-on
In latin, And all preuyd at deuise,
That men made translat in most frenshest wyse.

the contents of which books had been subsequently confirmed by Anthony, earl of Salz and Barry, in another book,

And syn, after monthes fife or sixe, lo!
This historie confermyd anthonye,
The erle of salz and of Barry also,
In a boke whych had of this castel hie,

[1] *Sic* in MS. *Read* better. The French has *miculx*.

Whiche that was so faire, ful strong and myghtie;
But al-wais spake *in* his wordes al
Vn-to thes bokes Aboue-said egall:

Off bokes thre that boke drawen oute,
(Ryght so fayn[1] men rehersyng the chaunce),
And that wherby it was know no doute,
Which other tymes haue sayne the substaunce;
here-to shal I put all my hole pusaunce,
In ordinat rule shal it sett surelye,
As plesire may be vnto our lord hye."

Thenne toke I my leue As of my good lord,
(Vn-to whom god yeff ioy, grace, and honour).
As to þe castell strength here to recorde
Of þe said lesignen, whiche was fair þat hour,
here shall ye here thys historie labour;
So þat it may plese the kyng of glorie,
Which to me yeff Felyng ther-of fullie,

Withowt whom a man[2] here may do no thyng,
Be it in fransh tonge other in ebrew;
All science cometh of that noble kyng,
Wich is the clere wele or the pilour trew,
The maker of all whom liff doth ensew;
Of hym cometh goodnesse, wite, and sence;
Non, but by our lord, herite in science.

With hole hert entire here I hym require
To thys nede me ayde; and hys moder swet
Mi mater conduce to the ende entire,
Thys werke vnto me here shewyd and gett,
To the hie plesaunce of my good lord grete,
To whom god yeff ioy, worship, and honour;
Right thus the prologe Endeth at this hour.

[*End of the prologue.*]

which, they say, was compiled from three others;

and I do not doubt it, as I have seen the substance of it.

Thereupon, I took my leave, and will now endeavour to write the history of the castle of Lusignan, with God's assistance,

[Fol. 5 *b.*] without whom one can write nothing, whether in French or in Hebrew.

Of Him cometh goodness, wit, and sense.

I pray Him, with my whole heart, to aid me; and that his sweet mother will conduct my work to the end.

Thus endeth the prologue.

[1] *Read* sayn. [2] MS. "aman."

[THE ROMANS OF PARTENAY.]

In ancient times, after the time of Octavianus, lived in Poitiers a certain earl named Amery, well-skilled in astrology and other sciences,

Hit is so in trouth in time auncion, 1
After the time that OctauiAn was,
In peyters a erle had of grete renoun,
Off whom gret talkyng men held hie and bas;[1] 4
louid of all, cherished in eche place,
Callid Amerys; wel cowde astronemie,
And A man ful ripe in other clerigie 7

as well as in canon and civil law.

Off the right Canoun and Ciuile also; 8
Wel nye al by hert thes science coude he,
Als wordly witte I-now had ther-to;
yut hys dedes neuerthelesse to se,
Never was there a better astrologer, or one more learned in the science,
Neuer better astronomian might be, 12
Founde was neuer man being *christian*;
He cowde moche more than any other man, 14

[Fol. 6] excepting only Him, who gave stars their names. He was also great and rich, and very fond of hunting.

But only he which sterres gan to name, 15
Then all other, with ther names all.
A gret man this was And of noble fame,
And wel at ease of goodes mondiall;
Disport of houndes loued moche with-all, 19
Full ofte chaced he hertes, bores grete;
Thys erle of peyters huge nobles gan gete. 21

He had a fair son and a fair daughter, whose names were Bertram and Blanche.

A Fair sone had by his gentill wiffe, 22
Full moche loued hir, chirsly can hir hold,
And A doughter fair, ful swete As fare liff,
Streight nose, fair mouth, wel fetured, me told,
Gret beute she had wonderly vnfolde; 26

[1] MS. "has," which is wrong.

Which men callyd Blanche, she was inly fair;
And the sone is name Bertram debonaire. 28

Thys Erle thes children ful moche loued tho; 29 Neither Rochelle nor Macon were yet founded;
yut was noght founded, neither like to be,
Rochel ne machon, neither of them to;
Thorugh al peyters foyson of wode plente, and there was, throughout Poitiers, abundance of trees, and especially a large forest called that of Coulombiers.
A ful gret forest with many A streight tre, 33
And in the wild forest As of columbere,
Which is noght full ferre fro peiters there. 35

For tho ther was A Erle in the forest, 36 Now there was an earl in the forest, who had a huge great number of children, not very rich,
Which of children had A huge noumbre gret;
In riches herite was not in þe best,
But of good lyuyng was in-dede and set,
Sagely And wisely good gouernaunce get; 40 but who lived sagely, and spent warily,
After that had, warly gan dispende;
And for hys good gouernaunce, at ende, 42

Loued and cherished was of peple all. 43 [Fol. 6 *b.*] and was beloved by all. He was cousin to Amery; who, hearing of his great number of children, thought to assist him.
Cosyn he was to Erle amerye fre,
Which thes nouels hurd at that entreual,
That his cosyn had of children plente;
Then came hym *in* wil and *in* volente 47
Off such greuous charge hym to discharge tho;
Without traying,[1] therfor, gan he do, 49

At peiters made A roial gret feste, 50 He made therefore a great feast at Poitiers, and invited the earl of the forest and his feudal barons.
A more worshipful neuer sayn with eye;
After tho he send the Erle of forest,
Of poiters The erle commaunded so fullie,
And other Barons lyke-wyse verilye, 54
Which of hys seignorie landes gan hold
Of this noble erle A-forne spoke and tolde. 56

Tho wer after sende, to hym came gladlye; 57 They came gladly upon the day appointed; and the
All other cam, non lakke, vnto that iournay

[1] *Read* tarying. See note.

earl of the forest brought with him three of his sons.

That thys sayd Erle commaunded hertlye.
The Erle of Forest brought hym, thay say,
Thre of his sones vnto court that day,
For to do to hys cosyn gret plesaunce;
And he cam vnto full fair ordinaunce.

The earl of Poitiers was glad to see them, and regarded the three sons closely, especially the youngest, and said,

The Erle of poiters had gret ioy to sight
Of hys good cosyn, And hym fested so,
And hym cherished in al that he myght;
Hys children feruently gan he behold tho,
To on of them thre hys behold gan go,
The lest gan hym plese in hert brennynglie,
To hys cosyn sayd thes wordes swetly.

[Fol. 7]
"My fair sweet cousin, I beg you to give me one of these children; he shall be well taught,

"Understandeth me, my fair swete cosin,
I haue vnderstande And by neighbours knowe
That largely ye haue children good and fin,
Full good is that ye ther-of discharge yowe;
Here I you require, yeff me on to owe;
He shall be wel taught in curtesie and speche,
For suche doctrine schal hym lere and teche;

and I will make him a rich man." "My lord," said the earl, "do your pleasure as regards these three;

I will not refuse you.

And for euermore ryche man shal hym make."
"My lord," sayd thys Erle of the forest hie,
"Of thes thre on your plesire do and take,
And you ther-of I thanke whyth hert ful humly,
Reson is no right that you werne shold y;
So ye here now thre in your hie presence,
Do as liketh your noble reuerence.

Take whichever of them you like best."
"Then give me the youngest," quoth the earl of Poitiers,

TAke here vnto you which you best do plese,
No man shall ther-of you werne ne withsay;"—
"Then yeff me the lest to my hertes ese,
For I haue to hym my loue yeff thys day,"

The Erle of poiters this to hym gan say.
"Sir, I wyll gladly do your will and hest,"
So hym Answerd the Erle of forest,[1]

"Syn he you plesith, ye shall hym haue trulie;
My lord, se hym here, you here take sone myn;"—
"My fair cosyn, I thanke you ful hertlye;
Declare me hys name (.) gentil good cosyn."
"My lord, men hym cal Raymound good & fyn,
The fair, the swet, the gentill, the curtoys,
Off all thre best thaught, still, not moche of uoys."

"and declare to me his name.

"My lord, his name is Raymond."

When thys roiall Feist was endyd and done,
Ryght so As it fell vppon the thyrd day,
The Erle of foreste toke hys leue to gone;
Tho thes brethen thre to-geders kyssyd thay,
Entercommaundyng to god other ay,
At ther departson had thay gret dolour;
Thys Raymound Abode *with* hys lord that houre.

[Fol. 7 *b*.] The third day after the feast, the earl of the forest departed.

The three brethren mutually commended each other to God, and Raymond remained behind.

Ful wele he hym seruyd vnto his powere,
Off trouth he it knew ful wel verilye,
Thys full noble erle, sir Amerie, there,
Which moche hym louyd And cherished[2] hertly,
As for that so wel hym seruyd daily,
And surely wold do that to hym wold say,
Neuer seruitour louid so no day;

Raymond served earl Amery faithfully,

and was much beloved in return.

And[3] Also he was his faythfull cosyn.
Raymound after thys, gayn wyl, hym gan sly;
Standed cast to ground, to deth most incline
By fortune fals glotenous cruelte,
Which no-thyng dredith ne doughteth to be,

But after this did Raymond slay him; cast stone-dead to the earth, to death must Amery incline, through the false gluttonous cruelty of fortune.

[1] MS. "forest." [2] MS. "fherished." See l. 121.
[3] MS. "AAnd."

But causith ofte meruelles for to come,
So As ye may hire sondry tymes lome. 119

The earl Amery went often to hunt in the aforesaid forest, during five or six years;

At noble poiters the erle Amerie, 120
Which so was louyd and cherished tho,
Als of hys men holden ful cherishlye
Both of ryche And pour *in* like wyse also,
To wodes he went ful ofte to hunt, lo! 124
Into the foreste of sayd columb[e]re;
So fyffe or sexe ȝere regned *in* powere. 126

[Fol. 8] and he went to hunt one day with a large number of knights,

HIt cam on A day, for to hunt he went, 127
With hym gret fusion of knyghtes many,
Of tho which he moste louyd ther hent,
Whith hym to disport brought he forth surelye.

with Raymond on a high courser beside him, bearing his sword.

Besidis hym rode Raymounde gentillye, 131
vppon A coursere he, beryng ful wel
(As thys hystorie doth declare and tell) 133

The chase began;

The swerd of thys noble Erle and man. 134
Tho began the chace strong and myghtly;

the beast ran before the hounds, closely followed by them and by the earl,

The best for noyse A-forn the hundys ran,
The houndes sewing after ful strongly;
The Erle thaim sewed and spored lyghtly, 138
Of whom anon shal you declare and say
Where hym cam tho gret mischef and afray; 140

who never returned again home. Raymond followed him as closely as he could;

FOr neuer after he ne cam againe, 141
Raymounde hym sewed As moche As he myght,
As for to leue hym ne wold he certayn;
Of thaim to it fil As ye sall know ryght.

and, as the moon rose, the boar was still slaying the dogs.

In the forest sought thys swyne euery wyght, 145
Which in columbere bred and fed trulye;
The mone ther rose; the swyne ther houndes slye,

The earl's people knew not where he was, having

Ther ded to ground thaim cast myghtilye. 148
his peple wyst noght where that he became,

Novmbred were thay ther mo then twentye
Which full feruently rode after thys game;
"Come heder," said, "Raymound, lord, in goddys name!
Our houndes, our peple lost now haue we,
In what part thay ben vnknow is to me;

ridden away after the boar.

"Come hither, Raymond!" said the earl,

And now is it noght to retorne, parde?
Thought we cerche Aboute we shal not thaim find.
What say ye now? what do now shal we?"—
Raymounde sayd, "go forth, tary we not behynd,
Vnto som receit nye the wodes lynde,
Wher we mow thys tym receyued to be."
The Erle answered, "ful wel now say ye;

[Fol. 8 b.]
"and tell me what you advise."

"Let us find some retreat," said Raymond, "where we may tarry awhile."

Ryght so shal it be As to me said,
Sithen the mone is risen vp an hie,
The euening is fair and clere displaid,
The sterres shinen fair I-now truly
That all the wordle enlumyneth goodlie."
Then vnto ther way went thay ful nere,
For the mone gan shine inly fair and clere.

"So shall it be," said the earl, "for the moon and stars shine clearly."

Thorught the wodes went, athirt trauersing,
Where thay found places diuers and sondrye,
Then a full fair way to thaym apperyng
Whoron a stronge pas rode thay hastily.
The Erle said, "Raymound, thys path wyl vs bryng nye,
As me semeth, to peyters the ryght way;
What sey ye? is it noght so, now me say?"

Traversing athwart the wood, they found at last an easy path, which the earl thought would lead them to Poitiers.

RAymounde said, "I trow it so be trulye;
Now ride we then, in goddis name, apace,

Raymond thought the same, and advised that they

should ride on fast, and inquire their way of some one whom they might meet.

We shall come ful late thought we ful fast hye,
That into the town to entre haue no space;
yut perauenture we may fynd som grace
To mete your peple whiche that knowith the way:"—
"Go we," sayd the Erle, "I graunt, al that we may."

[Fol. 9] The earl, as he rode, began to behold the stars, being (as was told) a skilful astrologer.

Thanne thay toke ther way wonder spedfullye.
Thys noble Erle be-gan to behold
Thes fair sterres shinyng ful bryghtly,
So that the skye enlumyned manyfold;
Of astronemye wyse was As is told,
So moche ther-of knew he the maistrie.
As he a sterre beheld in the skye an hie,

Thereupon he perceived, by a certain star, that a strange adventure was at hand,

Ther he saw a meruelous auenture
Which ful sharpe and hard after to hym was.
The profite of other touched he ther sure,
But of hys owne ille perceyued no cas.
Ther wonderful syghtes[1] gan to purchas,

and wrung his hands, and cried out,

Hys handys gan wryng and to draw fast,
"O lord god!" said, "that angelles formed hast,

"O Lord God! why doth fortune make a man prosper by ill-doing?

That thes meruelles so strange bene sothlese!
Fortune is ful strong any man to know;
O varray god! for why made she encresse
Only a man,[2] for doing ille, to grow?
She is ful glad of duyng ille, I trow,

For I perceive that prosperity will thus happen.

Now is it ryght thus, I se wel now expresse
That, for ille doing, comyth gret goodnesse!

Raymond! behold the e stars, and know that if, in this hour, a man

In thes sterres se, Raymounde, vnderstand!
For I here perceyue ful gret auenture."
He hym answerd, "what is that sayand?"

[1] syghes (?). [2] MS. "aman."

Thys Erle hym said, " the shal declare sure,
Without any doubte know thys of trouth pure,
And no-thyng no doubte, but be in certayn,
If a man[1] gan sle hys lord souerayn,

were to slay his sovereign lord,

As in thys hour, he shuld gretter lorde be;
More pusaunt, ful myghtly, and ryght gret
Then any of hys kynred in contre;[2]
In al places shal fructefie and get,
loue of all shal haue wher he entermet,
More gretter loue haue then his neyboures all;
know thys, fayr cosin, this is trouth, & shall!"

[Fol. 9 b.]
he would become himself a greater lord, and more puissant than any in the country,

and be more beloved than his neighbours."

RAymounde noght o word yaf hym to answere,
Al pensif a foote discended adon;
An hepe of wode a[t] that tyme founde there,
That herdes had lefte, gret and smal, theron;
A lytyll fire found ther, the wode brend anon.
Certes ouer warme at that tyme was noght;
The Erle ther lyght doune, somwhat hym chaufe thought.

Raymond answered not, but alighted, and found a little fire kindled in a heap of wood.

The earl also alighted to warm himself.

Ther thai hurd a noyse, for to speke shortlye;
The wod breke and rent ful heuily tho;
Then Raymound his sword gan to gripe fersly,
And the Erle his in that other party to.
leuing the fyre which ful clere brend, lo!
Then aforn them saw ny to them comyng
An huge bore of meruelous wreth beyng,

Then heard they a noise. The wood brake, and they beheld a huge boar, in marvellous wrath,

With tuskes tho whettyng ful strongly,
And with malice yre comyng, fast smytyng;
"My lord, saue your lyf and ward yow quiklye,
here vppon a tre wyghtly be clemmyng;"—
With hie hautyng voice the erle answeryng,

and whetting his tusks.

Raymond begs his lord to climb wightly into a tree, who boldly refuses

[1] MS. "aman." [2] MS. "incontre."

"I neuer was repreued at no stound,
Ne here shal not be neuer shuch wise founde.

[Fol. 10] to flee from a pig of a foul sow.

WEre it plesaunce to god I shold hens fle
As beforn A pigge of A fowle sowe, lo?"

The earl advances to pierce the boar, when his sword glances;

Towardes the swine hys swerd fast shoke he;
Raymound vnderstode his worde hym noyed tho.
Thys sayd Erle tho went to launce hym vnto,
And when it cam so, the swerd went adōn;

for, as the boar came fast towards him,

Thys swyne to the Erle forth faste ran anon;

his sword would not pierce the boar's hide; so that, missing his stroke, he falls from his horse upon the boar's tusks.

By mischef ther thys noble Erle gan die;
The Erle hym ne myght no lenger ther hym hold.
By myschef thys swyne smot hym feruentlye;
But hys swerd in hym entre ther ne wold,
There he moste of horse fal to hys tuskes bold.

Raymond runs up to aid him,

Raymound fast gan ren thys sayd swyne agayne,
Trowyng hym to smite thorugh the body playne;

but his sword also turns aside.

But hys swerde glente, non hurt had he tho,
For vppon the bakke was the stroke to se;

A second stroke, however, is successful, and he cleaves open the boar with his steel sword.

Againe Raymounde smote, thorught the bely gan go,
With the stilen swerde there tho made entre;
The blade fourged good, rasour kene was he,
All the bowelles cutte, all fil out anon;
Hys good swerd withdrew, the bore ther fil dōn,

He finds his lord dead, and his soul commended to God.

To mortail deth to grounde fallen tho.
Thens vnto hys lord went he forth anon,
Neuer gan to rest til hym cam vnto,
Al dede ther hym founde And the soul gon;
Commaunded was she to goddis hie renon,

For he was as valiant a man a any on this side of Rome.

For A worthy man and vaillant he was
As Any A-this-side[1] Rome to purchas.

[1] MS. "A thisside."

RAymounde hym tuke fast ther to wepyng, 267 [Fol. 10 b.] Raymond exclaims against Fortune, saying that a man who trusts her is a greater fool than any mute beast;
hym-selfen gan bete and hym sore torment—
"ha! alas! thou fals fortune," ther sayng,
"To me hast thou be felonesly bent!
Goode to tho wykyd thou grauntest and lent; 271
he is A more foole then Any mute best
That trustith on the, or in thy behest! 273

Thou art no gudfader ne Godmodere! 274 that she is no godfather nor godmother;
To on art thou swet, Another bitter to;
Non may on the trust, ne in thy fals gere;
Off A smal man thou makest a kyng, lo! that she makes a king of a small man;
And of tho ful rych right pour men also. 278
In the no wyl streine to helpe moste or lest;
Thou on aydest, Another destroest! 280

Alas for sorow! thys in me to fynde! 281 that she has perdurably condemned him,
Thou here me hast destroed entierlie,
And perdurabelly dampned to mynde,
But *iesu* crist, the cheritable god hye, unless Christ will have pity on him.
The trew, the swete, the piteful, of mercy 285
Of my wery soule lust to haue pyte!" Hereupon he swoons,
And *with* that Raymound zownyng dõn gan fle, 287

And wel nye an hour ryght so gan hym hold 288 and does not come to himself again for an hour.
Without spech or loke; after cam agayne,
Ther begynnyng his sorowes manyfold.
When he rewardyd hys lord souerayne, Again regarding his lord, he invokes death,
Whiche ther dede-cold lay, sore hym gan complayne,
Rewfully sayng *with* scrychyng vois hie,
"Come, deth! tarye noght, anon let me dye! 294

Comyng me to take, for time now it is; 295 [Fol. 11] for that his lord is slain by his misdeed.
For loste haue I here both soule and bodye;
My souerayne lorde that dede here lith thys,

He would commit suicide, but that it is against providence.

By my grete mysdede here hym slayn haue I.
Deth, come to me! season is trulye; 299
Come forth here anon, or I shal me sle;
But god shold me sle, I shold noght so me. 301

God would not that any should despair;

God wold noght, which is our chef fader hye, 302
That any cristyn in dispeir be shold;
But the hour coursed that born was worly,
Or that wreched lyf so long leuyng hold.

yet it had been better for him to have been born dead.

Better had me be dede-born here vnfold, 306
For then had I noght dampned ne lost be.
Alas! my lord cousyn, gentile and fre, 308

Lesse worth am I then any sarysyne, 309
Whiche is in beleue of sory mahound!"

Leaping again nto his saddle,

Ther leping vp into hys sadel fine,
More lenger ne rest he ther that stound,

he leaves the body, and rides away from the spot,

The body of hys lord rest[1] in that ground, 313
A sory man was thorught the wode gan ride,
With wofull malice destrussed that tyde; 315

leaving the bridle-reins loose.

The brydell-rayne lefte, at large let it go; 316
hym-selfe[2] tormented and cursid ful sore,
Vnnethes for-bare hym-selfe to sle tho,
Ful ofte hys colour changing euermore,
he had non end of his dolorous (.) store. 320

Thus rode he along lamentably,

In thys estate rode lamentabillye,
Tyll he Approched, certes, sodenlye 322

[Fol. 11 b.] till he approached suddenly the fountain of Thirsty Gladness, said to be of fairy origin.

The fontayn and well of thursty gladnesse, 323
(As said is, it came[3] of the fayrie);

The horse chooses his path at will,

Thys wofull man apas streight ther-to gan dresse,
hys horse ches a path conueyng wightly,
Ouer all thys hors so went wylfully, 327
here and there ouer all where at hys lust wold,
For that he had lefte the rayne for to hold. 329

[1] left (?). [2] MS. "felfe." [3] MS. "canne."

At thys said fontayn hys courser hym brought, 330 and thus brings
So forth passing by ther tho apertlye; him to the fountain.
Neuer ne reste, but was in other thought;
hys coursere hyme bare forth fast and wyghtly;
For discomforted was he moche truly, 334 The rider is so distressed that he
That hys mynde was gone fro hym-self full ferre, cannot look about him.
So that he ne saw Abowt, ferre ne nerre. 336

Uppon thys fontayn ther had verilie, 337 Beside the fountain were
Which was right holsome, ful clere as crestal, three ladies of high degree.
Thre fair laydes of gret seignorie.
In hys forth-passyng saw non of thaim all, He sees none of them; but the
Such dolorous thoughtes to hym gan call. 341 most good-looking and "jolliest" exclaims,
Then spak the moste gentillest of thaim thre,
The most goodlokest And iolyest to se; 343

SAyng, "neuer saw, dais of my lyfe, 344 "I never, all the days of life, saw a gentleman pass ladies without salutation."
Where it were gayn night or at morne erlie,
Gentil man to pass but had respectif
Aforn ladies without saluz hye,
I wyll goo And speke *with* hym verilie." 348
She vn-to him cam, taking by the rayn, She then seizes his rein,
After openly to hym said certayn— 350

"FOr goddis sake, man, shew the noght soo, 351 [Fol. 12]
Which be descended of noble linage, and tells him that to go by without a word is not the deed of a gentle heart.
Sin Aforn vs thre ye apperen, lo!
And without worde say for to make passage,
It is noght the dede of gentil corage." 355
he, whiche dolour hurt tho ful feruentlye, Raymond suddenly perceives her,
vpp sodenly lepte, perceyued thys ladye; 357

Ther he trowed that fantesie it were, 358 and thinks it is all the effect of his imagination,
Where he slepte or wakyd wel knew he noght; and knows not whether he is awake or asleep.
A dede mannys colour that tyme had he there,

He returns her no answer.

To hir non answere at that season brought,
Noght intended here for sorow in thought,
But musing ful fast and was ryght penssife
As euer was man which that here bare life.

She asks him why he will not speak, and wishes to know who taught him such behaviour;

Thys fayr layde toke her tho to speke,
Anon ful hiely sayd she hym vnto,
"how, Raymound, is thys, ye lust no word breke?
ho hath you taught that to a mayden so,
Or to A lady when ye se thaim, lo!
That no word haue ne lust to say onlye?
Of it cometh repref and vilanye.

for that it is a dishonour to him that he thus forces his heart to be unnatural.

IN you all swetnesse And good curtesie
Shold byde and dwel *with* al honour sure;
Here-on ye be dishonoured gretly
Which comyn be of so noble nature,
That your gentil hert put to disnature."

Raymond is many times astonied,

Raymounde vnderstode, ther hir gan behold,
Sore astoned was times manyfold,

[Fol. 12 *b.*] and, perceiving the human body of this fair lady, his heaviness of heart troubles him yet more. Knowing not whether he is alive or dead, he alights hastily,

When that he saw she hym held by rayne—
But when perceyued the humayn bodye
Of thys fair lady hym so to restrayne,
In whom gret beute was preynted freshlye,
Moche the more troubled his noysance heuye,
That he wiste not where he were quicke or dede;
Fro hors fill down vppon the grasse in-dede.

and says, "Most gracious image,

After hys[1] sayd, "moste gracyous ymage,
Soueran layde of gret beute hye,
With whome to compare non hath Avantage,

pardon me, sweet thing! My heart is heavy with misfortune;

Pardon me, swet thyng, for goddys mercye;
With sorowes I haue the hert ful heuye

[1] thys (*t*).

By ouermoche meruelous auenture;
By my faith, lady, I will you ensure 392

That in such astate wher-on that I was, 393
I remembred noght what I owght to do; I remembered not what I ought to do.
So moche sorow and care me doth enbras,
Truly more than man can say you vn-to.
For-soth I noght you perceyued no wyse, lo! 397 I perceived you not;
But, noble lady, you beseche and pray
Me vnto perdon so it please you may." 399 pray, pardon me."

Ther *thys lady spake*, "Raymound!" answeryng, 400 She addresses him by name:
"I am ful sorye of your gret noysance."
When Raymoun*de* knew sche hym ther namyng,
A litell began to muse that instance.
"Lady, of my name ye haue conysance, 404 at which he is much astonished;
Where-of I am Ameruelled gretlye;
By my feith, I know noght your name redilye. 406

You named but . . . . . 407 [Fol. 13]
Wher that perceyue so full huge beute, but, reassured by her beauty, he trusts that he will soon recover himself;
lyt causeth me to beleue verilie
That I schuld by you wel assured be,
And that I shal yut wel recouer[2] me, 411
By you to acquire som good recomfort
Off my huge sorow is my dyscomfort. 413

For of so fair A swete creature 414 since only goodness can come from so sweet a creature.
Approcheth non ille, but ay al goodnesse;
Fro you may noght come but good auenture,
I beleue noght that terrene boody sothlesse He cannot believe that an earthly body can have so much sweetness.
Of lusty beute may haue such richesse, 418
So moche of swetnesse, so moche of connyng
As in your gentil body is beryng." 420

[1] Here follows the catch-word—"you named but." See note.
[2] MS. "ye-couer," the tail of the *y* being partly erased.

She then recounts to him all he has been doing, explaining that she is well acquainted with all that has happened.

"Raymounde, I perceyue how it goth now;" 421
She declared hym ther all hys doyng,
Ther hym gan rehers euerydele how,
As Aboue is said al hym declaring.
Then Raymounde feruently reioyng, 425
How-be-hyt he moche astoned tho was
How hys name myght know; strange to hym
þat cas. 427

She then declares that all the good fortune which his lord predicted for him will be brought about if he will attend to what she says.

Then thys lady said of gentil bodye, 428
"Raymounde, my good loue, vnderstandeth me,
Al that whiche your lord said youe varilye
By wordes myn fulfillyd shal be,
Truly and forsoth, yf so do wil ye 432
Ryght As I shal here vnto you rehers,
Thinges to non hurt, sondry and diuers, 434

[Fol. 13 b.]

Unto the plesire of our lorde an hie, 435
And of his glorius moder also."
When Raymounde vnderstode she spake trulye,

Yet more assured, he gladly promises to do all her commandments.

Stedfastly hym toke the more surer to,
Ther hir saing, "swete gentill lady tho, 439
I schall put my hert And my holy[1] entent
To your plesour do your commaundement. 441

Yet he wishes to know how she knows his name and circumstances.

But certes, lady, I may no wyse tarie 442
That you me[2] demaunde the trouth and verite,
How ye myght my name knowen verilie,
And how thys dede know any wyse may ye
That by my fortune and mischef fil to me, 446
As wherthorugh I haue deserued deth full wel,
Wherfor that I haue desired deth cruell?" 448

"Raymond," she said, "I counsel you not to be astonished.

"Raymounde, you councel, Astoned be noght," 449
Asaid thys lady, "for god shal you ayd;

[1] hole (?). See l. 182. [2] *read* ne; see note.

yf ye will, moche more to you shall be brought
Of wordly goodes then your lorde you said,
Whiche in the forest dede-colde light this braid.
I wyll in no wyse you to discomfort,
I shall you socour, helpe, ayd, and comfort.

You shall be yet more successful than your dead lord predicted.

YAm, after god, your nexst frende trulye,
Wordly catell I-now shall be brought.
But loke ye me truste And beleue verilie,
And dubte ye no-thing of goddys part am noght,
I noght beleue in hys vertues wrought;
yut I you promise that I do beleue
Ryght As holy Catholike feith doth yeue.

I am, after God, your best friend;
but you must trust to me entirely.
Do not doubtingly think that I am not on God's side;

EUery Article beleue I and hold
Of the holy feith catholike named,
That god, vs to saue, of the virgyn unfold
Was born without wemme in hir attamed;
Dethe endured; third day rose vnshamed;
After ascended vnto heuenys hie,
Ther verray man And varray god trulye;

[Fol. 14]
for I hold every article of the Catholic faith; viz., that God was born of a spotless virgin, endured death, rose the third day, and ascended into heaven,

And is in ryght syde of hys fader hie.
Raymound, vnderstand here now me vnto,
Firmely all beleue without doubte anye.
Now ye here beleue that sagely ye do,
And ye shall rise vp, to such honour go,
That more shal ye be As of hie parage
Then any man, lo! As of your linAge."

and is at the right hand of the Father.
Trust me entirely, and you shall attain to great honour.'

Then Raymound musyd and gan aduertise
The wordes ther said, and hertly ioyed tho;
A litel his colour cam, vnto deuise,
And moche amendyd of sorow and care to,
When he answerd, "lady, I shal do
With all my hole hert, without withsaing,
Al that which ye wyll be me commaunding."

Raymond, much amended of his care and sorrow,
promises to do what she commands without gainsaying.

"Swear then to me," she said, "at this time, that you will marry me,

"RAymounde," she said tho, "this is ful wel said;
Now vnderstandeth me without gayn-sayng,
To god and his sayntes me swere now thys braid,
That in mariage me wil be taking,[1]

and that you will never inquire as to where I go on a Saturday;

And that neuer, dais of your leuing,
For no worde that man wyl vnto you say,
ye shall not enquere of me the saturday,

[Fol. 14 b.]

NE after me cerche in no wise ye do,
Neither to what part drawith my body,
Ne what I will do, ne to what place go;

and I promise, in return, to go to no ill place, but always to labour that day on your behalf."

Als I schall you swere For trouth uerilie,
To non ille place go ne will certaynlie,
But alwais to labour that iournay,
Puttyng my hole hert, strength, mynde, and thought (.) ay

To your honour, hawse, and encrese also;
Neuer shal ye se me forsworn no day."

Raymond swears, but was, in the sequel, forsworn, to his great misfortune.

Raymounde wolde swere and ther hys othe gan do,
But att end forsworn was he, is no nay;
To ful gret myschef it cam hym alway,
For that hire couenaunt brake and noght gan hold.
"Raymounde," sche sayd, "understande this told;

She tells him that if he breaks the compact, he will lose her;

Iff thys poyntement hold noght in thys deuise,
ye shall me lese, be therof certane,
Without sight of me any maner wise;

and that himself and his heirs will lose their lands.

After that, ye and al your hoires playn
Shal begin to fall, and thaim-selfe distayn
Off landes, honoures, and heritages;
Then doloures shall be in their corage[s]."

[1] MS. "betaking."

Raymonde swere agayn secundarilie, 512 Raymond swears a second time;
That neuer no day forsworne wolde he be.
(Alas! thys dolent man said not soth trulie, but alas! this miserable man spake not the truth.
For gret heuinesse After suffred he,
Hys cherefull lady lost of nicete!) 516
At thys present time of it speke no more,
Vnto my purpos tōrn shall I therfore. 518

"Raymounde," she said, "ye most to court go, 519 [Fol. 15.] "Raymond," said she, "you must go to Poitiers,
And me this not werne here in no cas,
To peyters boldly go ye now vnto,
Say wel and playnly when ye come aplas,
If any you demaunde, hie other bas,[1] 523 and give out that you lost your lord in the wood while hunting,
Of your said lord ne say ye no thyng
But that in the wode ye lost hym huntyng; 525

And that longe ye gan After hym Abyde, 526 and that you sought for him a long while unsuccessfully.
Cerching, enquering in wodes ramage,
A wilde swine chasing at that houred (.) tyde.
Many other to court shall do make passage,
Whiche equipollent schall say of corage, 530 At last he will be found, and brought to Poitiers,
After shall your lord truly shall[2] ther be founde,
And to peyters brought openly that stounde. 532

Then gret heuinesse ther shall sone Awake, 533 when his wife and children will lament in woful wise.
With euery men huge sorow shall arise;
Full dolorous wo this lady will take,
And *with* hir other gentil wemmen of price;
His children lamenting *in* wofull wise. 537
Thaim aid and councell ryght auysilye You must counsel them concerning his burial,
yn that belongeth to hys obsequye. 539

Loke ye thaim councell hie and lowe that hour, 540 and wear black as others do; and when at last the time shall come
For a man[3] shold do A grete lorde vnto
his funerall obsequye *with* gret honour,

[1] MS. "has." [2] This word is redundant. [3] MS. "aman."

Cloth you ther in blakke As other ther doo.
When that passyd is ther dolour and wo,
By processe of tyme at leyser and space,
When weping dais an end do purchace,

[Fol. 15 *b.*] for his heir to receive the earldom,

And that the enheritour ther shall be
The erldom of peyters resceyued to,
And hys homage take of men of contre,

demand of him a gift ere ye go, as payment for your services to the late earl;

Of thys lord demaunde A yefte or ye go
For your guerdon of seruise ye haue doo
To the Erle last past in the same place;
Wher þe *present* be, so myght please his grace,

beg him to give you so much land as may be enclosed by a hart's skin, and cause deeds of the gift to be duly executed;

So moche os[1] A hert-skyn myght aboute enclose,
In seueral to shitte wodes and contre.
hit will not you wern but graunt, I suppose;
Dedes therof make the cause ther-on be,
Off the lordes yifte the encheson may se,
Wher-for he it yaf, And for wat reason;
After sette day of lyuerey and season,

and, when you have the deeds ready, depart; and go on till you see a man carrying a large hart's skin, which buy at his own price.

That men deliuer you possession;
And when your letters ye haue all redy,
Thens ye depart, a litell[2] way shal gon,
ye shal se A man come gayn you hastilie,
The hertis skyn bring gret and large to eye.
By ye that skyn, I you gyf in charge,
What-someuere cost, spare not, yif ye large.

Next cut the skin into small thongs, very narrow, and tie them up into a bundle,

After cutte that pece into thwanges smal,
lete it not be brode, but narow As may be,
Enuiron the skyn rounde Aboute cut all
As narew as may perceyue it to se,
As long As the skyn endure see may ye;
After ther-of A fardell do ye make,
And afterwarde to your repair you take,

[1] *for* as; cf. Glossary. [2] MS. "alitell."

ANd lete it noght be lefte[1] to do, certain, 575 [Fol. 16.]
But men deliuere to yow your lande sad and make men deliver you up the land which you
Aboute this clere well and ful fair fontain. can enclose with them around this
Now complaineth noght of your huge pain had, fair fountain.
For ye shal finde[2] this place fourged and made 579
In all places ryght As it liketh me,
Where that your lande appere shall to se. 581

IF the thanges be more lenger certain 582 But if the thongs
then the rowndnesse made which that ye finde shall, will enclose more than such a
Again the ualey do it to remayn circuit, draw them down along the valley.
The rennyng of thys fantain clere with-all,
Where ye shall take the dwellyng to fall 586
The thwanges lenght after to ende had.
Do thys hardily, be no-thyng Adrad, 588

ANd when that ye be Assuryd of all, 589 When assured at
As at peiters when ye come only, Poitiers of all your possessions,
Take your leue and return that enterual, return hither,
For in thys said place shal ye verily, and you shall find me here."
At wat tym ye come, fynde me certainly. 593
luke ye me hold trew *per*fecte couenaunt."
"lady," said Raymound at that instaunt, 595

"I shall plainly do your commaundement, 596 Raymond promises to obey at
What-someuer cost it for to cheue, whatever cost;
Sin it pleassith yow me it commaunde to hent."
Fro hir de*per*tyd, taking fair hys leue,
This thing takith on ioyusly in breue, 600 and, greatly rejoiced, returns
To peyters he cam in the morow-tyde; to Poitiers,
Many demaunded wher ther lord gan bide. 602

RAymounde Answard, "yusterday hym lost 603 [Fol. 16 b.]
vppon hys coursere[3] which bare hym swyftly; where he gives out that he had lost his lord,

[1] MS. "lefte." [2] MS. "finde." [3] MS. "courfere."

and knew not what had become of him.

That I was basshed, wist noght to what cost
he went, I cowde not mete *with* him truly;
After I sewed As I myght full ny,
I hym lost when in-to woode gan draw,
Neuer after perceiued hym ne saw."

Thus Raymond excused himself, and accused not the soul of the homicide (himself); and none ever thought of accusing him.

Ryght thus Raymounde hym excusid tho,
the soule of the dede-doer accusyd noght;
For neuer man ne had in hym beleue, lo!
That þe dede was by hym done and wrought,
Though that moch he were distrained *in* thought,
And that for the dede sighed ful ofte there.
But it behouith to yonge baculere[1]

Many now return from hunting, both high and low.

Such A strange dede to couere secretly,
Wich vnto hym cam at that huntyng-chace.
Vnto his manoir comyn were many,
Which fro hunting were drawing to *þat* place,
As wel of gret As smal, both hye and bace,

There were none but were sorely annoyed

Ni to Ramound drawing euermore.
Ther had was non but noyed wonder sore

at not knowing the truth, as to where the earl was that night abiding.

That thay myght noght the trouth perceiue and know,
Wher he that nyght[2] gan byd and remain.
Ful dolorous was his fair wyfe *þat* throw,

At last his sorrowing wife and children saw two men approach, bearing the body,

All wette *with* teres in hir visage plaine,
And ther children to ful harde gan complain;
Tho A-ferrom saw to worthi men comyng,
Which the dede body sorily gan bring

[Fol. 17.] which they had found in the woods, with the dead boar lying beside him.

Which in the wodes barainly ther founde,
Thys notable Erle whilom off renon;
And thys foule swine besides hym that stounde.
Ther wepte burgesses And squiers manyon,

[1] MS. "baiulere." [2] MS. "myght."

Ther wepte ladies And knightes echon,
Ther wepte old, ther wepte yong peple all,
Thay wepte the deth of thys Erle roiall.

All bewailed his death.

When that the Countesse of him had the sight,
Ful dolorous wo hir hert gan attain,
Here handes wrang, hir heere tare þis woful wyght,
With wepyng teeres soroly gan complain;
Ther wepte the sone, the doughter, both twain;
Ther wepte the gentile that Raymonde *men* call,
Ther wep[t]e prestes, ther wepete Chanones all.

His Countess wrang her hands, and tare her hair.

Raymond joins in the general mourning.

Through Peiters Euery *man* sorow lad,
Both tho gret and smal ful sore were weping,
Thys day can noght be saad the heuinesse mad,
Noght halfe the wofulnesse the cite haning.
Tho that this dede Erle were *per* beholdyng,
Euery bewepte hys deth mornyngly,
Thys Erle beried ryght ful solempnely;

Every one bewailed his death, throughout the town;

and buried him with all solemnity,

Ful nobley wele the almes yef and do;
Aboute hym gret wexe, fair store, and gret light.
Forsoth the burgesses of the cite tho
Cast thys cursid swyne in A huge fire bright;
The Barons of contre þhere had ech wyght.
A *man* shold shortly the dole ouerpas,
When remedy non may be in the cas.

distributing alms, and burning great store of wax.

The cursed boar was cast into a fire and burnt up.

RAymounde Ful wel aqueinted hym that hour,
Ther many A persone of hym said, "a! he
Felith sore in hert anguish and dolour!
Of hys souerain lord had he such pite."
So he gan do in trouth and uerite,
As for to see hym gret pite it was,
His morning, his wailyng, his loking bas.

[Fol. 17 b.]

Raymond hears many remarking his excessive grief, which was indeed real.

After the burial, the barons busily went to do homage to the new earl;

After when that the obsequie was don,
The Barons faste went ful beselye,
To the nouel Erle homage hym do echon,
After the season and[1] usage customlye.

and Raymond approached to prefer his request.

Then Raymound drew hym forth to thys lorde hye,
his request to make after hys lady lore,
As she hym warned long tyme ther before,

He asks for as much land, lying near the fountain, as a hart's skin would enclose;

The lady of whom he had take leue to go.
"Honourous lord," he said, "bes[e]ch you yif me,
Ni to the Fontain of thursty gladnesse, lo!
Off wode, Roche, or ualey in that contree,
Be it medewes or arable (.) to see,
So moche as an hertis skin of grounde strech wold;
For noght wyll demaunde, ne in thys place shold,

and requires no other payment.

Thing which that shold you be in cost gretly;
I require of you non other paiment
For my seruice done continually
Of your Fader, whos soule god haue and hent."

The young earl accedes, if it will content his barons.

Thys yong Erle said, "I graunt all your entent,
So that it may please to my Baronage."
Then the Berons said *with* full fair langage,

[Fol. 18.] The barons think Raymond well deserves it,

"RAymounde may full wel thys said yifte to haue,
(For he hath full wel deseruyd it sertain,
His lord so seruyd), As hym lust to craue."

and the earl commands the deeds of gift to be duly executed and sealed.

"Then shal he it haue," Asaid thys Erle plain;
"hys dedes lete make his graunt to contain."
Deuised thay were passyng sotilly,
After the writyng scalled ful truly

[1] MS. "and and."

With the gret seal[1] of thys Erle nouel, • 694 It was sealed both by the earl and the barons,
Which curious was, fair, and moche of told;
The hye barons put to al-so well
There gret sealles to the dedys unfold;
The scripture deuisyd full wel to be-hold, 698 and the day fixed for its becoming of force.
Fourged and made of good ordinaunce,
The day perfixst of the deliueraunce. 700

The morn a man cartainly he found 701 In the morning, a courteous man brings him the skin,
Which A hertis skin broght hym there before,
A ful curtois man hym it toke that stounde.
The skyn ful narew kerue thay euermore;
His gyfte required after hys lady lore; 705
The Erle said, men him deliuer it shold, and the earl bids men to deliver
Fro peiters partyd *with* gret raundon told, 707 him up his possession.

To Raymound hys ghyfte deliuerd this wyse; 708 As soon as they come to the fountain, Raymond produced the skin, to their great wonder,
The Erle send peple to delyuer plain,
Fulfillyng that which he gan promise.
By that were comyn vnto the fantain,
Streith Raymound thaim lad to *þat* place sertain,
Raymound drew hys skin ther forth vnto sight; when they see how narrowly it
Of *þat* merueled strongly *many* A wight, 714 is cut.

When so narow corue thai gan it to se; 715 [Fol. 18 *b.*]
Vnknowin was thaim what that thai shold do.
To men comyn were ther to that contre, Two men then approach, who make the things
Takyng ther thys skin coruen ful smal tho, up into a bundle,
Anon on A band put thay it vnto, 719
A gret trusse ther-of making vp that stound.
On ende to a pain thai had ther y-bound, 721 and bind one end to a stake;

[1] MS. "feal."

and enclose the whole rock with a part of the skin.

All the Roche thay had enuironied, 722
But yut of the skyn ful gretly abode.
To A pane on ende strongly thai tied,

They again bind an end to a stake, and carry it down the valley.

That other ende bare againe the ualey brode,
Ful litill it held As thay forth glode. 726

A stream suddenly wells up,

A-ferre fro thens A streme gan to rise,
Wher-of stoned were strongly to deuise; 728

which had never been seen before.

For neuer body had that water sain. 729
And when thay had all prouided thys place,
Which the hertis skin compassed sertain,
Seing the contre that comprehended was, 732

All wondered when they saw the immense tract enclosed.

That supposyd noght that it wold purchas
Neither to enclose ther-of the moite,
Gret wonder and meruail had thay tho, perde, 735

Raymond receives all the neighbouring country,

So large contre the skyn gan comprehende. 736
Forsoth al the procincte ther gan hym take
Ryght As for that where charged and owte send,
As ther dedes mencion gan make.

and news of it is carried to to the earl,

To poiters toke way, And ther told and spake, 740
Thys said Erle vnto, al the gret meruail,
Whych neuer ne saw such like apparaill. 742

[Fol. 19.] that the circuit enclosed is two miles about.

For thys hertis skyn in circute gan hold, 743
To miles aboute gan it comprehende;
And of tho men which it gan close hym told,

He also hears of the two men, and of the new stream.

Also of the streme that thai saw at ende,
Rysing ther vp, again the ualey wende. 747
"I beleue it was thing of the fairy,"
As said thys Erle, "so god me saue only! 749

The earl is aware of the marvels connected with the fountain, and

For thys Raymound hath founden in þe way. 750
Ful ofte hath bene said that at that fontain,
Many merueles have sain ben A day,

Whiche men sodenly and ofte there haue sain;
And so to Raymounde myght it come certain,
For of it wold [I] merily reioy."
And raymounde tho spake that he had gret ioy,

rejoices at Raymond's luck.

FOr he was comyn hym to thanke hertly,
Of hys notable gyfte ther hym thanking;
And he Answerd to hym, "graunt mercy!
Of your goodnesse ye lust so be sayng.
I wout nere what to me shal be comyng,
But, if your lord wyll, good may com to me."
So forth passyd till morn-day-lyght to se;

Raymond thanks the earl, declaring that he hardly knows what is coming to him.

RAymounde tho lepte vp hys coursere vppon,
To the fantain and wel of thrust gan to go,
Wher that hys lady founde beyng alon,
Which hym said, "my loue, welcome me vnto!
luke ye be wise, redy, wel thaught, lo!
And ye shall now haue for your good labour
yut here-after gret worship and honour!"

Raymond rides away to the fountain, and finds there the lady, who welcomes him.

ANon into A schapel made entre,
Which thaim ny vnto ful redy ther found,
knightes, ladies, And gentile wemmen fre,
Clerkys, prelates, Squiers at that ground,
Clothed, apparailled nobylly that stound;
Raymounde meruelyd of it wonderly,
Of that peple which ther saw plainly.

[Fol. 19 b.]
They enter a chapel, and find there knights, ladies, clerks, prelates, and squires, all nobly apparelled.

UNnethes he myght hym-selfen withold
That he demaunded noght thys gentile body;
Thys lady had tho many in housold,
I-now hym semyng for to haue truly.
"Neuer bash herof," said this faire lady,
"Thay ben al youres," ther commaundyng al
hym for to resceiue for lorde principall;

He cannot refrain from asking her about them.

She replies that he need not marvel, for they are all his.

They humbly do him reverence.

Also gan thai do ryght As thai shold, 785
Ful humbly thay gan do hym reuerence;

Raymond muses within himself,

But raymounde in hert musid manyfold,
In hym-selfe said demurly in audience,

and hopes the end may be as good as the beginning.

"Se here a noble gynnyng *in* presence! 789
God yif that the ende therof be ful good!"
Thys lady hym resoned there he stood, 791

The lady tells him he must take her in marriage.

SAyng, "ye Raymounde, what willen ye to do? 792
Til that ye haue me had *in* mariage,
ye may noght the estat se ne know, lo!
Wherefor you councel, purucy As the sage."

Raymond declares himself ready at once; but she tells him that all is not yet ready.

Raymounde said, "I am redy to that passage." 796
Thys lady hym said, "we faute that we shold haue,
Raymond, all other wyse we moste do craue, 798

[Fol. 20] He must bring a number of witnesses to the marriage with him, and come again on the Monday.

Iff we shall do to plesaunce honestly; 799
you behouith to trauel and haue pain
So that peple ye moste bryng redy,
Which of thys acte may haue conisaunce plain.
haue no point of doubt, but therof be fain, 803
I-now of all good here schal fynd by grace,
But warde that ye be a monday in thys place." 805

Raymond returns to Poitiers, and comes into the presence of the earl.

RAymounde answerd to hir curtoisly, 806
"Forsoth I shal do your commaundement."
Fro thens deperted Raymounde hastily,
Vppon hys courser retorned and went,
To poiters he cam, ther discending, hent 810
And anon forth went, taried ne bode,
Toward the erle of peiters where he stode. 812

He salutes the earl, and says he feels that he ought not to hide anything from

RAymound wel cowde salute such estat, 813
Without colour changing or muable,
To hym humbled formally that dat,

There declarid his lord honourable,
"My lord," said Raymound *with* contenaunce stable,
"I ought ne shold my dede be couering,
To *you* al declare And certefying;

I shal noght you lye for no man*er*[1] wight,
Maryed shal I be vppon monday;
To a gret lady that day be trought plight,
Ryght at the fontain of thurstes gladnesse ay;
Nothyng so loue ne likyng to my pay.
humbly you beseke at that day to be,
And to bryng *with* you your peple and mayne;

Ryght gracyous lorde, to me honour do,
And your gud moder wise and debonair,
My ryght doubted and shereful lady to,
Which is proclamed so noble lady fair."
The Erle sayd, "I shal to that place repair,
But afoure will you thys demaunde make,
What is that lady which that ye shal take?

WArde you And beware ye tAke noght amis,
knowith whens she is and of wat linage;
Say me, fair cosin, now what sho is,
Thys day am redy to your mariage."
"Sir, it may noght be for non auantage;
More may noght enquere As of hir beyng,
For ye may no more[2] of hir be knowyng;

You it suffisith I-now hyr to se."
The Erle to hym said, "thys is gret meruell
That ye take A wif vnknow what is sche,
Neither haue knewlich of hir gouernail,
Ne of hir kinrede; strange is without fail!"

He therefore confesses that he is to be married on Monday to a great lady,

and beseeches him to come to the wedding.

[Fol. 20 b.]
He also hopes that the earl's mother will be present.

The earl is willing to come, but wishes to know the lady's name,

and warns him against marrying one of whom he knows nothing.

Raymond asks him not to inquire further,

for that it will suffice to see her. The earl marvels greatly at such conduct;

[1] MS. "nomaner." [2] MS. "nomore."

but Raymond says she is like a king's daughter;

"Sir," said, "I hir saw in so noble ray
As kinges doughter where fresh is and gay; 847

and that a fairer lady was never seen.

A More fairer neuer sain with ey; 848
Off hir linage enquered I no-thing;
Where she be of[1] duk or of markois hy,
Forsoth I wyll hyr haue, she is me pleasyng."

The earl promises to come, with his mother and all his barons.

Thys Erle said, "Raymounde, to you shal be comy*ng*,
My moder also with all our barony." 853
Humbly Raymounde sayd, "my lord, graunt mercy!" 854

[Fol. 21] On the Monday, the earl and his mother, with many attendants, set out, wondering where they will be lodged and entertained,

THe monday cam men apparailled fast; 855
Thys Erle Awakyd, rose vp ful erly,
Hys moder *with* hym brought, freshly on hyr cast
Full ryche Atire, besain ful womanly;
Sondry ladies with knightes many; 859
But moche on thaim toke to ful gret meruail,
How thay shold there loge, by what gouernail, 861

though they need not have wondered, as all was ready.

When thay approched ny to thys fantain. 862
But therof certes nedid noght haue doute,
All redy was made A place ful solain.

Riding on, they at last approach the rock.

The wayes And pathes so rode thay aboute
That thay approched Columbere tou*n* al-oute, 866
And ouer that went ryding the contre,
Hilles, wodes passyd, the roche might se; 868

There they found pavilions pitched beside a valley, where flowed the new stream.

TEntes And pauilons streght and pight freshly 869
Besyde a ualey,[2] enmyddes a plain;
The streme besydes, the fontain ful ny,
Which nouelly was vp-risen and sain;
Euery man meruellyd of it certain, 873
Ful wel thay sad knew it the fayry was.
Into the medewes thay beheld apase 875

[1] MS. "fo." See note. [2] MS. "aualey."

THEntes, pauilons freshly wrought and good,
Doucet songes hurde of briddes enuiron,
Whych meryly chirmed in the grene wod;
Vppon the ryn saw A wyld wood anon,
Where gret peple were to-geders manyon;
And in there kechins say thay gret smoke to;
As tham semyd, was A ful huge hoost thoo.

They heard sweet songs of birds;
and saw a wild wood with many people;
also several kitchens, with much smoke.

AND thay saw comyng toward thaim anon
Ther nombred aboute knightis ful sexty,
yong, strong, lusti, fers, and ful lyght echon,
I-horsed ful wel, armed nobilly;
(hyt nedith not demaunde of it truly);
The noble Erle demaunde of peiters,
And thay hem shewed sondry and dyuers,

[Fol. 21 b.]
Next they saw coming about 60 knights, well horsed and armed,
who asked for the earl, whom many pointed out to them.

OFF whom demaunded had the trouth to know.
Raymounde thai anon gan se and behold
In the said Erles company so grow,
Which ther ful iocunde tales gan unfold.
humbly to the Erle cam thes knightes bold,
And hym ther salute ful debonerly.
The Erle ther saluz yilding ryght goodly

The knights ride up to the earl, and salute him humbly.
The earl returns their salute,

UNto euery man, without other abode,
After that to hym it shold appartain
For that place whens that he cam and rode,
Both to gret and smal menal persones sain,
Ful wel knew to eche ther saluz yild plain;
And thay which ne wold haue no point of blame,
To hym cam and said worshipfully the same:—

yielding to every man the respect due to him, according to the place whence each came.
The knights say to him

"THat fair Melusine hym thanked hertly
Of that pleased hym to com to ther feste;
And that she had charged thaim verily,
you wel for to loge yaf in charge and hest."

that the fair Melusine thanks him heartily,

and that due lodging was provided for his retinue.

Thys Erle thaim said, to plesire in the beste,
"For here I perceiue ful fayre ordinaunce."
Nobley thay loged thys Erle that instaunce.

[Fol. 22] The coursers were well lodged, and provided with rack and manger.

A Ful fair pauilon thay hym gan take,
Ther coursers loged passing inly wel,
Both rekke and manger at their ease gan make,
Insyde tentes ful fair eueridel.
Gret ther labour was wherfor atimed wel.

The Countess was received in a golden chamber,

The Countesse resceiued in that housold
In-to a chambre freshly bete with gold,

where many ladies welcomed her.

Which men pight And streight vppon the fontain;
Many ladyes, ful of gret beute,
Went to a company with the Countesse plain,
Ech welcomyng hir after ther degre.

All marvelled at so rich a sight.

Al meruelyd there thys ryche sight to se,
Als of the noblenesse that ey myght purches,
Neuer trowed se so fair in no place.

The chapel was well apparelled, high and low, and stuffed with rich jewels.

RAymounde with the Erle that tyme logid was.
Of ther fair chapel doubt therof had non,
Wel apparailled was it, hie and bas,
With riche iewelles stuffed manyon;
What wold ye shold say? fresh was enuiron.

The earl and countess demand the bride.

The ful noble Erle And thys fair countesse
The espouse demaundyd thay expresse.

Melusine enters the chapel, freshly attired, and looking, not human, but angelic.

Ther men anon forth aplace hir brought,
Fair melusine, enmyddes the chapel;
Thys mayden ful fair As cowde bene I-thought,
Freshly atired rychely and ful wel,
That al hir saw preised thys damycel,
Sayng, "it was noght no humayn body lyke,
But more better semed a thyng angell-lyke."

THen thys said Erle applied vnto
Thys fair melusine to resceiue sothlesse,
And of that ful wel his deuoir gan do,
And ful wel or better the noble countesse;
Al tho bothe that hour weren at that messe.
In that place was had ful gret mynstracy;
Both hye and bas instrumentes sondry;

939 [Fol. 22 *b.*] The earl and countess duly receive her.

943 Minstrelsy is heard, both of high and bass instruments.

945

AND fro[1] that constantinople vnto,
In no place was so noble a feste made;
Al the wodes range merily sounding tho,
ther was no persone[2] that present tyme hade,
But that "meruelles," said, "I se ful sad;
Neuer humain ey saw to it egal!"
With great ioy made thys matrimonial.

946 Never was so noble a feast.

The woods rang merrily, and all agreed that human eye had never seen the like of it.

950

952

AFter thys messe don, taken haue the way;
The Erle the espouse courtoisly forth lad;
In that other part, A prince of contray
In-to the chef hal thys fair mayden had,
Which noble peple held that day ful glad;
Ther mete al redy, vnto wash thay went;
After sette As was most conuenient.

953 The mass done, the earl led forth the bride, and a prince conducted her to the chief hall.

957

959

BEsides thys maiden thys noble Erle sate,
The gentile countesse next sette hym vnto,
After A gret lord of contre that date,
Which for gret honour worshipped was so.
Raymounde tho sate with other knightes mo.
The course tho brouth[3] in with squiers many,
Gret plente there had of deyntees sondry,

960 The earl sat beside the bride, and the countess next him.

The courses were brought in by squires, including great plenty of dainties.

964

966

WHich that apperid As thing infinite;[4]
With wine of Angoy, And als of rochel tho
Which wold eschawfe the braines appetite;

967 [Fol. 23] There was wine of Anjou, and of Rochelle;

969

[1] MS. "for."
[2] MS. "prefone."
[3] brought (*t*).
[4] MS. "infinite."

of Tourmine and Beaune;

Wine of Tourain, And of Bewme also,
Which iawne colour applied noght vnto; 971

also Clarre Romain and Ypocras.

Clarre Romain, with doucet ypocras,
Thorught al the hal rynnyng hye and bas. 973

Wine, moreover, of Tours and Dijon, of Auxerre and Saint Jouin (?); of St. Jean d'Angely, and others.

Wine of Tourimz, and also of digon, 974
Wyne of Aucerre, of seint Jougon also;
Wyne of Seint Johan of Angely good won,
Of it ful many ther spake and tolde tho;
Wine of estables, of uiart[1] also; 978
After thaim cam the wyne basterd good,
Wine of seint pursain, and of ris hys brood. 980

Ouer all thes wines ther had the prise 981
The nouel osey of Dingenon,
Off all the wynes named to deuise.

Every one had abundance, as much as he asked for, whether of wine or meat.

Ther all peple preuilage had echon,
Euery in hys loge plente and fuson, 985
Euery of that which thai wold demaund
Off wynes and of uitaillouns viand. 987

After this began the jousting, where Raymond jousted mightily.

After thys diner, men to ioustes went; 988
Be-syde the fontain ful fair ioustes had;
But Raymound iousted strongly and feruent,
Certainly myghty ioustes[2] ther he made.
Thys Joustes dured till sonne went to glad. 992

Next they went to vespers, and then to supper.

After to euessong went euery wyght,
And sin to soper set were and dyght. 994

[Fol. 23 *b*.] After supper came the dancing.

When sopyd thay had at ther owne deuise, 995
Strongly thay daunced, ioying merily
Ful long that night in right gladsom wise.
And when that men saw time approched ny
Vnto go to bedde, And departed fully, 999

At last the bride retired into a costly pavilion,

Men made the espouse to depart fair.
Into A pauilon made she A retrair, 1001

[1] MS. "mart."
[2] MS. "iousted," roughly altered to "iouftes."

Off whom moch cost the fourging And makyng; 1002 portrayed with painted birds.
Portreid it was with briddes freshly,
Thys fair pauilon rich was in seing;
Forth Anon the bede streight And made redy, Then they laid the bed, and made it ready.
Which *with* floure-delise couerid was to ey. 1006
Quicly cam Raymound, in the bedde[1] him laide
By fair melusine, the suete doucet made. 1008

Forsoth A Bisshop which that tyme ther was 1009 A bishop gave his benediction, "*in nomine dei.*"
Signed and blissid the bedde[2] holyly;
"In nomine dei" so said in that place;
After fro thens departed hastily,
For the ceason late le[*n*]ger to tary. 1013
The Erle hym *with*drew to hys pauilon; The earl and his mother also retired to their tents.
And hys good moder, time was and ceason, 1015

INto hir chambre goodly went to bed. 1016 All went to their allotted chambers,
Euery man went to hys erbigage,
But som all night dysported And solas led, but some spent the whole night in singing and dancing.
Singing, daunceing, disporting *with* longage;
Many fayr songis songe that compernage. 1020
Off thys noble feste no more[3] you will breke,
Off gentile Raymound shall I to you speke, 1022

Which[4] with melusine lyght ful meryly, 1023 [Fol. 24]
To whome ful suetly outred she and sayd,
"Now vnderstandith, fayre swet loue, hertly, Melusine addresses Raymond, reminding him of his good fortune,
The Auentur comyn vnto vs thys braide
That we togeders by grace here bene laid; 1027
Ryght As mAn And wyffe after entent,
And I Am her at your commaundement; 1029

But that oth most hold which first day me made. 1030 and of his oath lately made to her.
I know full wele, when ye cam to pray

[1] MS. "beded." [2] "body;" French text, *Le lit.*
[3] MS. "nomore." [4] MS. "Whicht."

She tells him she is aware how the earl inquired concerning her lineage;

The Erle of peiters And knightes that he had
To come and to do you honour that day
That I shuld be maried to your pay, 1034
Be[1] you enquered full moch wat it was,
And of linage ye gan me purchas." 1036

HE answered hym to the point ful wel, 1037
"Myn owne verray loue, now doubt ye ryght noght."

she proceeds to tell him that his good fortune will

"ye sall be moste best fortuned to tell,
So ye couenaunt hold As of reson ought,
As euer was Any of your linage brought, 1041
Hou-someuer fortune that thay haue had,
So the contrary by you be noght made. 1043

last as long as he holds to his covenant: but that if he breaks it, he will suffer huge harmful pains, and be disinherited of all.

Iff it be, ye shall haue gretly to doo 1044
huge noisaunt pannes *with* aduersite,
And desherite be wrechedly also
Of tennementes, landes, the beste to se;
It wyl be so And sertanly schal be." 1048
"Fayre swet lade," said, "I you plegg[e t]routh myne,
Whyle I leue shal be, be it non m[align]e,[2] 1050

[Fol. 25 *b.*][3] He again swears to be faithful,

FAlshed shall noght be our said couenaunt, 1051
Of which here beforne made haue I promesse;
And yut I wil you promit the same grant;"

giving her his hand in pledge of his sincerity.

hys hand vnto heres put in *gen*till wyse,
Makyng. A gret oth As hert cowde deuise, 1055
That he wold it hold euer entirely.
Melusine hym hanswered swetly, 1057

Melusine cautions him yet once more, declaring

"Now, my swet loue, I say you feithfully, 1058
If ye be stedfaste and couenaunt hold,[4]

[1] "He" (?).
[2] A piece near the corner of the page is here torn away.
[3] See Note to l. 1050.
[4] MS. "bold."

In good hour ye be here borne treuely;
kepe it truly, besech you manyfold;
For in my part fail shal I for no gold,
Off me haue ye had ful tru Assuraunce
Which I shall hold; no more say thys instaunce."

that she will never fail in her part of the covenant.

With clipping, kissyng, that nyght gan do so,
That an fair[1] sone ther engendred was;
Vrien callyd at that tyme tho.
Dedis and warkis such gan he purchas
As in tyme shal hire the mater and cas.

Their eldest son was named Urien, whose famous deeds will be told of hereafter.

Thys feste endured dais ful fiftene;
At ende to lordis yiftes gaf melusine,

The feast concluded,

And to lades which that men brought
With thys roial and noble Countesse.
Al said ther, "lord god! what wyse is this wrought,
Which that we se here present of rychesse?
Maried is he vnto gret hinesse!"
Raymounde of all moch ther preised was,
No worldly man myght better in no cas.

Melusine gives very rich presents to all, who wonder at her wealth and liberality.

After when it cam vnto departson,
Faire melusine went faste ther openyng
A forcelet[2] wrought fresh of yuor[3] bon;
A formelet,[4] of gret ualure beyng,
With presious stonis gernesshed that thyng,
With vertues perles ful many,
To the countesse gaf it verra hertly,

[Fol. 26]
She opens an ivory casket, and draws from it a clasp garnished with precious stones, which she gives to the countess.

Which of that iewel she ful gret ioy had.
Thens deperted the Erle and hys maine,
Which were ful noble peple, good and sad,

The earl and his people depart,

[1] MS. "an m fair."
[2] From Fr. *forceret*.
[3] MS. "your."
[4] "fermelet" (?).

Melusine taking her leave of them.

The fair melusine hir leue take hath she
Of thys said countesse of ful hy degre
By-forn al peple honourabylly,
And of thys sayd Erle ryght semblabilly,

Off lades And of maydens all.
Thai leaping vp ther sadelles unto,
Openly ther-thens went that enterual;
But gentill Raymound conueied tham so,
With peple of estat Acompanied tho,
With hym wold not haue creature Afoote,
Noght passyng Columberes woodes foote.

Leaping up to their saddles, they ride away.

Raymond accompanies them to the edge of the forest.

At leave-taking, the earl would fain have asked Raymond who Melusine is, but durst not.

RAymounde of thys Erle ther hys leue gan take,
But the Erle drust noght, And ful fayn wold,
Ryght gladly hym A demaunde to make,
Off fair melusine, what she was, tel shold;
Ful moch he thought, but yut hys pes gan hold;
Fere of displesaunce of Raymound any wyse.

Raymond, seated on a courser,

On A coursere sate ful fair to deuyse,

[Fol. 26 b.] takes his leave of the earl, and returns to Melusine, who receives him joyously.

Off thys Erle toke leue; after gan retorne
Streight vnto hys wyf kyssyng hir swetly,
And thought in hert ther vnto sogorn,
Which hym resceiued ryght ful ioyously.

At the end of eight days, all the trees in the wood were uprooted

Er that eight dais were ended fully,
Al the wodys were roted up and gon;
Of laborers had plente and fuson,

by labourers of an unknown nation.

NO man knew whens was, ne of what nacion;
Ful gret diches made, ryght huge and profounde,
Ful hiduous was to behold adon;
No cause had thai dismaing thaim no stound,
Neither no deffaute *in* þe pament found,

They made hideously deep ditches,

Euery day had ther money and argent,
The laborers were the more diligent. 1120

and were diligent, finding themselves well paid.

The fundementes made thai right profounde, 1121
(Ful wel know may be if y myssay, lo!)
Fair melusine was deuiser of that ground,
And of werke also lyke as it was do.
Vppon the quicke Roche thay it sett tho; 1125
The fyrste stones to put thay, and made
In litell of tyme; Masons I-now had. 1127

They made deep foundations,

building a castle upon the live rock according to Melusine's plan.

The walles hye deuised she echon, 1128
Wel founded was vppon the said uayley;
Too strong toures made with a huge dongun,
And Enuiron an hy with wardes strong that day.
Of it meruelyd strongly the contray, 1132
hou ful sone men made this said strong repair.
And when thys castell was bastiled fair,[1] 1134

There were two strong towers with a huge dungeon;

insomuch that all the country marvelled.

Thys swete melusine saw it full fair tho, 1135
After hir ryght name gan it she Baptise;
Off hir name she hath taken a part, lo!
lusignen to name yaf after hir deuise,
yut is oueral named in that wise; 1139
Many bare that name, it aboute gan cry,
And yut is ryght and cried was suerly; 1141

[Fol. 27]

Melusine baptized the castle after the latter part of her own name, calling it Lusignen.

NOght-withstandyng the good kyng Ciprian 1142
hit cried lusignen euer in his cry,
As the history seith to euery man
Off whom after shal do make memory.
Melusigne is As moche to say truly, 1146
Ryght As ho seith, meruele[s] fauti[t]h non;
She was A woman A-per-se, alon. 1148

The meaning of Melusine is, "no marvels are lacking," she being a woman A-*per-se*.

[1] At the bottom of the page is the catchword—This fwet meluſine ſaw.

When this castle was built, high walls and all,

YE may se here A comfort meruelous,
Moche more then other strange auenture.
Wel was A-cheued this castel beuteuous,
Al A-boute reised wonder hy wallure.

people wondered how it had been finished so soon.

Euery man said it was A huge dede sure,
That thys said castel was so sone made;
The peple wondred and gret meruel had.

Melusine bare a son, named Urien, whose visage was very short and broad, and who had one eye red, the other gray;

Thys fair melusine here in hir tyme bare;
At nyne monthes ende childed she A sone,
vrien named, the soth to declare,[1]
Which that after was of ful gret renone;
But hys uisage was strange to uision,
For it was full short And large *in* trauers;
On ey was rede, Another grey dyuers.

[Fol. 27 b.]
also a huge mouth and great nostrils;

EVery man myght se it openly,
Huge mouth And large gret nostrelles also;
neuer man sain non to hym egally;

yet well made as regarded his legs, arms, and feet.

But of body was inly wele made tho,
Off legges, of Armes, of feete therto,
In it not failled thing thouchyng nature,
And at the ful made vnto hys stature.

After that she made a city,

After that tyme made she ful huge honoures,
Fourged the brought in mount of bew-re-pair,

with high walls and towers,

The walles bild hye, and als tours,
The goinges and comynges wroughten fair,
All couered and made, non might ben gair;

well provided with loopholes.

At louers, lowpes, Archers had plente,
To cAst, draw, and shete, the diffence to be,

That non wordly man myght no wyse it take;
So strong *with* peple Acompanyed was,

1 "Vryen" is here scrawled in the margin in a later hand.

That strenght ful strong *with* peple gan make,
The diches profunde large brede gan purchas, — The ditches were of great breadth,
With this toure couerid hye and bas; 1181
The yates Iumelles, mighty and strong, — and the gates large and long.
To sain the trouth, ful large were and long. 1183

Atwixst the borough and thys strenght myghtly 1184 — Between the town and the fort was made a strong tower, called "Trompe;"
A place ther fourged meruelously strong,
The toure trompe som callyd it daily,
In lusignen town so named tham among;
For Sarisins trompers tho were put ful long, 1188 — for it was garrisoned with Saracen *trumpeters.*
To ende this said toure thay sold kepe and ward,
And al enuiron aboute to rewarde 1190

That peple noght approch neither to com ny, 1191 — [Fol. 28]
But tho of that strenght shold it know and se.
That yere childed she the secunde sonne truly, — The second year Melusine bare a son named Oede, who had a face as shining fire, resplendent with redness.
Oede[1] named; a fair semblant had he,
As shinyng fire his uisage semynge be, 1195
With wonder rednesse so resplendising;
his membres ful fair formid *in* makyng; 1197

IN that same yere made that lady fair 1198 — That year she made the castle and town named Mel,
The castel and brought which men callen mel,
Vauuant and meruant made she, non gair,
The tour of seint Messent after made ful wel; — and some others, including Parthenay.
The Borugh fourged, the abbey gan echdel, 1202
Where þat our lady is serued alway;
And After the town of noble partenay. 1204

AND Als the castel fourged she roial, 1205 — She also made the castle of Parthenay with good lime and stone, towers, turrets, pinnacles, and wall.
With good lime and stone freshly vnto sight,
Toures, torettes, pinacles, and harde wall;
The craftismen wrought As tho perfight.

[1] *Oede* is also in the margin, written in the later hand.

By that, Raymound was doubted of ech wight, 1209
Into gret honour risen is A-hy,
And worshipped is in ech company. 1211

Her third son was named Guy, who was of great beauty, saving that he had one eye a little lower than the other.

After she had the third son fair withall; 1212
A more fairer neuer say[n] with ey,
Off beute ynow vnto him gan fal,
hit cowde noght ben withsaid certainly;
Sauyng þat on ey had he more basly 1216
Then þat other a litel[1] ther semyng,
Men callyd hym Guy, which doubted no-thyng.[2]

[Fol. 28 b.] The same year was founded Rochelle;

Then that said same yere founded was Rochell, 1219
In peito, by fair melusine this lady.
After taried noght, but litel gan dwel,

and soon after she built a great bridge, for which she received great praise.

That A ful faire brigge made she vnto ey,
(As ther cornicles[3] shewith openly), 1223
And in talmondois fourged was to se,
Of which werke gret loos ther resceiued she. 1225

Her fourth son was Anthony,

ANon after had she born in certain 1226
The fourth sone, callyd and named Antony,[4]

who had on his jaw a mark like a hurt made by a lion.

But *in* hys iaw bare A hurt ful of pain
Off A lyon, which al hys life bare ful sighty;
To hym A gret stonyng was it verily, 1230
To moche skin grow, A long seme cutting;
But hardy man was, noght drad ne fering. 1232

All these things are true.

All Is trouth that I outre you or say, 1233
Doubt ye noght of it that I you do tel;
In luxenbrough fair thyng made that day.
Thys lady norished thes children ful wel 1236

And when it pleased our Sovereign Lord, this lady had the fifth son,

Till thay wer growyn ryght large, wyse, and fell;
And when it pleased our lord souerain,
The fyfte child thys lady had again, 1239

[1] MS. "alitel." [2] In the margin is *guy* in the later hand.
[3] *Sic* in MS. [4] In the margin, Ανθονι.

Which in his hed had on ey and no mo,
Moste hieste set, wonderly to se.
hys name of Baptime Raynold called tho;[1]
his sight more clerer ueryle then he
Whiche to eyes had, for al their plente;
Meruеles gret gan do, after ye shal hire,
So it may be hurde thys tale hole entire.

1240 whose baptismal name was Raynold. He had but one eye, but his sight was clearer than that of a person who has two eyes, for
1244 all their plenty.
1246

GAffrey with gret toth Afterwarde she bare,[2]
Which growyn in mouth A wonder toth hade,
Which without issued pasing gret and square;
he meruelous strong, of nothyng Adrad,
Blacke monkes he slay, to mortail deth lad;
Off mallers Abbay were thay, lef or loth,
Which causyd hys fader strongly to be wroth.[3]

1247 [Fol. 29.] The next was Geoffrey with the great tooth, which issued from his mouth, great and square.
1251 It was he who slew the black monks of Maillezais abbey;

Again melusine wrothed he ful sore,
That to hir sayd moch repref and velony,
That hir company lost for euer-more;
Which causid a fal fro hys Astat hy
To hys gret repref, ryght to shamfully,
As after wyl make declaracyon,
Of al ther warkis the conclusyon.

1254 which event caused his father to be angry with Melusine,
and was the cause of all his
1258 misfortunes.
1260

The seffe child Ffromont that tyme callyd was,[4]
Of stature of persone hie, gret, and long,
Inly wel formed, pulcrious of face,
Sage, subtile, wel taught, myghty and stronge;
But vppon hys nosse such a tach had fong,
Ryght As A wolfes skyn row was it tho,
Ful strange vnto sight to se hys nose soo.

1261 The seventh son was Fromont, who had a blemish on his nose.
1265 It was rough as a wolf's skin, so that his nose was
1267 a strange sight.

[1] In the margin, *Raynold with on ye.*
[2] In the margin, *geffrey withe gret tothe.*
[3] MS. "wroght."
[4] In the margin, *Froymonde w[as] a monke, and w[as] burnd.*

The eighth son was Horrible; he had three eyes,

Then the eighteth sone borne of Melusin, 1268
Thre eyes hauyng on in front uisible;[1]
Moche peple meruellyd and wonderd ther-*in*,
Thys child named and called horrible;
For hym vnto se was thyng terrible, 1272
And also he was of wycked doing,
In no goodnesse, thought but to do ille thing.

and was of a very wicked disposition.

[Fol. 29 *b*.] We now return to Uriens, who was grown big, mighty, strong, and light; and was fond of war.

Now retorn Again vnto vriens, 1275
Which of tham was the most auncion.
Eche shal declare by ordres diligens,
That men may perceiue dul am not ther-on.
vriens was A fair squier of person, 1279
Growen ful bygg, myghtly, stronge, and lyght,
Willing to know where by see and lande ryght.

He took ship at Rochelle in a barge, with Guy and much people; intending to go and acquire lands.

At Rochel toke A shippe ful fair and large, 1282
(And for she was long, wide, hole, sounde, entire,
I founde in scripture that it was A barge),
Sayng *þat* he wold go land to acquire,
So god hym warde fro perel to plesur; 1286
Moche peple with hym had, the barge ful was;
Ther Guy with hym went landes to purchas. 1288

They took with them much silver and gold, and went to sea.

IN many places preuid was hardly 1289
Thys forsaiden Guy truly manyfold.
And to wel find ther peple only,
The fair melusine of siluer and gold
Gret plente toke, in tresour store to hold. 1293

Soon came they to Cyprus.

Into see thay went, the sayl vp gan reise,
To cipresse contre ther shippes gan teise 1295

The king of Cyprus was then being besieged in

Streight to that place wher fair auenture funde. 1296
Of Cipresse the kyng tho beseged was

[1] In the margin, *horrybl with iii yes.*

In A myghty towne, which owyd that stound; Famagousta,
Named Famagouce[1] that cite and place;
Which, enfaimling, Almoste gan purchace 1300 which the Sultan had nearly taken.
The soudan bigly the town beseging,
With an hundred thousande men fightyng. 1302

Off it knew vriens the uerite, 1303 [Fol. 30.]
Off Famagouce[1] the Cite roial;
land toke, refershing[2] hym and hys maine. Uriens lands,
Forth-with declarid to hys peple all, and, calling his men together,
And to thys Cite his peple gan cal, 1307
Wher-vnto thai had An euyn streight way; displays his banner.
And beforne tham his baner gan display, 1309

Whych of Fine silke was enbrauded freshly. 1310
The Sarasins knew and saw ther comyng; Both Saracens and citizens see them coming.
Als tho in cite knew them uerily,
And ther ooste myght see ful fast herbiging,
The peple of Armes ther disloging. 1314
Nye to the soudan thai re[n]gid tho were; Soon were they arrayed against
As to the Cipriens to sight semyng there, 1316 the Sultan.

That the Soudan cast Away for feere to flee; 1317 The Sultan meditated flight; which the king perceived, and was at once armed by Ermynee his daughter,
That said to othir, "we most after sew."
The kyng Armed was *with* fair Ermynee,
hys swet doughter ful maydenly to vew,
hyr honorous fader *with* harnois new; 1321
Ther hym conueing ryght ful curtoisly, and mounted his horse.
Vnto hys courser ful debonairly. 1323

Trompes, clarions, blew up fast sounding, 1324 Trumps and clarions sound.
The kynges baner lifte, vp-reised hy; A hard conflict ensues,
Ther full gret affray was at ther mellyng,
The paynymes saw the kyng cam freshly,

[1] MS. "Samagouce."
[2] MS. "referfhing;" the *rr* is blotted.

and many Christians and Saracens are slain.

Anon Assembled that full hastily; 1328
Many A cristyn Approched deth in haste,
And Sarasius many to mortal deth caste. 1330

[Fol. 30 b.]

The sarisins were myghty, fers, And strong; 1331
The Cipriens shewed ther strenght and myght.

The king is shot with a poisoned dart,

The king withe a dart[1] toxicat poison fong,
Such A malice stroke his foes hym dight
That in garison hym wold take no wight. 1335

and the surgeons fear that they cannot heal him.

Tho Sourgeons doubte, As thay gan report,
Wherfor the peple were tho discomforth. 1337

The Cyprians thereupon retreat, closely followed by the Saracens.

The[2] Cipriens went for fere euermore, 1338
The sarisines after full fast fleing,
Into the thowne thay bete thaim before,
Many ther slain And many don castyng.

Great clamour in the city.

In that towne was horrible crying, 1342
As for tho wounded And Als tho slayn;
And for the kynges hurt, ther souerain, 1344

Fvll dolorous wo ther enforced was; 1345
Ermyne by-ment hir good fader sore,

Ermyne bemoans her father, and tears her goldish hair,

Gret torment to hir ther gan she purchas,
hir goldish herre tering, breking, euermore,

perceiving that he had arrived at death's door.

For hir fader and lord lying hir before, 1349
Whom perceiued riued at dethes port,
And that no man[3] cowde yif theroff comfort. 1351

Meanwhile Uriens and Guy had displayed their banners,

Off kyng Ciprian leue we shal and rest, 1352
And of vriens speke and talke we shall,
Which was wurthy, uaillant, and gentillest,
Full semly to see, lusty ouer all;
And of his brother, that Guy men do cal, 1356
Of fader And moder As beforn is said;
Ther baneres were openly displayd, 1358

[1] MS. "adart." [2] MS. "Thy." [3] MS. "noma."

AND in ther handes full faste gan to hold. 1359 [Fol. 31.] and attacked the Saracens.
A fers and hardy stoure ther a man[1] shold se,
When to-geders mete *with* sperys manyfold.
The petyuins tham bare As warly men fre;
For ther good vitail and wines plente 1363 The men of Poitou, owing to their good victual and plentiful wine, were stronger than their foes.
The more strenger were And the more semly;
Assautes tha[y] gafe dyuers And sondry. 1365

THer vriens shewed his noble prowesse, 1366 Uriens and Guy are dreaded by the Saracens;
Many be-gan sle and hurt manyon;
his brother Guy in lyke besinesse,
Men hym doubted As thai wold A lion;
Paynymes hym drad, fered hys person; 1370 and, at last, the Sultan presses forward at full speed,
After wiste noght the soudan what to do,
But *with* spores priked hys coursere tho. 1372

HIs forbeshed swerd of stele faste holding, 1373 smiting down a Poitevin with his furbished sword,
To A peiteuin wightly smote he faste,
So that neuer myght[2] be purchassyng,
With-in litel while standed was in haste;
The timbre And yre thorugh hys body wraste. 1377 so that both wooden hilt and iron blade pierced through his body.
hyt perceiued tho gentile vriens;
Semyng fro hym-selfe, *with* gret uiolens, 1379

IN hys handes twain hys swerd fast gripte he, 1380 Uriens grips his sword in both hands, and cleaves the Sultan to the teeth, at which the Paynims are distressed,
Such A stroke ther yaf the Soudan vnto,
To teeth cliue his hed for hys cruelte,
*With*in the Soudan entred his swerd so;
Vnto mortall deth fell this paynym tho, 1384
The paynymes All abashed heuily.
Such-wise vriens wrought dedes Army, 1386

THat both paynymes, turkes, and suriens, 1387 [Fol. 31 b.] so that Paynims, Turks, and Syrians
That As A larke fro A hauke doth fle,
And hare fro grohund As for ther diffence,

[1] MS. "aman." [2] MS. "nyght."

flee fast to their ships, hard pressed by Uriens.

So fleyng thay vnto thar naue.
Vriens which had to tham enmyte 1391
As for to dystroy the sarisins all,
Smote vppon thaim As vppon curres shal.[1] 1393

Ther by[2] vryens And curtois Guy 1394
Were slayn of paynymes the myghtiest.

Uriens determines to rest awhile in the tents of the conquered foes;

Vriens in ther tentes thought long surely,
Thens thought not go, but ther take to reste,
Sin vppon paynyms had he such conqueste. 1398

but, before long, come a troop of Cyprians,

Ther ne taryed he noght ouer[3] long,
That the Cipriens cam besily strong 1400

who beseech him to visit the king,

Off the kinges part to hym send, and come, 1401
Besechyng tham com to the cite,
Off frendlyhed the way to hym nome,

as the king cannot visit him,

For vnto tham come certes myght not he;
For vnnethes myght speche on hym be, 1405

being so sorely wounded.

Strayned *with* seknesse such wyse was tho,
Wounded and hurt *with* hys enemyes soo. 1407

He answers that he will come gladly.

When vriens was thaim vnderstandyng, 1408
he Answerd thaim ryght ful curtoisly,
That gladly wold he Approche that hy kyng.

Uriens and his brother dight themselves freshly in noble array, and set off.

In noble Aray greithed thaim freshly
Vryens And hys brother in company, 1412
Towardes the kyng whent thai forth Anon;
Moche went Cipryan, beholdyng the person 1414

[Fol. 32.] Many a Cyprian, seeing Uriens' face, said that he would conquer all lands by his appearance,

Off vriens, which he saw moche, large, and grett, 1415
Ther seing he had A ful strange uisage
In horrible wyse, As he went by strett,
Euery man blessed, sayng in ther passage,
That neuer such a man[4] saw *in* al ther age; 1419

[1] "fmal" (?).
[2] MS. "Therby."
[3] MS. "oure."
[4] MS. "aman."

"By reson," said, "he shuld do conquere[1]
All landes *with* hys semblant and chere; 1421

NOn shold to fight[2] hym attende ne bide, 1422 for that none would dare to stand against him.
Which fro hym may Any wyse diffende;
ho, lord god, ho? noght A geaunt no tide!
I you ensure, meruelus is to attende!"
At the gret paleis gan thay to dissende; 1426 On arriving, they ascend the palace steps, and find the king's nose and mouth swollen,
On grice went vp, the kyng on bed thay founde,
Hys nose, hys mouth bolned gret that stounde,

With toxicat uenym replete was certain; 1429 and the king replete with venom.
hym ther complaynyng and ful sore bement.
humbly vriens salute thys souerain, Uriens salutes him humbly, who returns his salutation, and great thanks also.
Thys kyng which *in* body this poison hent;
Anon hys saluz yild forthwith ther present, 1433
Sayng, "ye haue me seruyd nobilly,
And to me ye haue done gret curtesy; 1435

NEuer in my lyf no such ne had." 1436
Thes wordes outred the kyng of Cipriens,
After demaundyng vriens ful sad, The king further demands Uriens' name,
"What be ye? what is your name þis *presentens*?"
"Worshipful kyng, men cal me vriens; 1440 who answers that he is Uriens of Lusignen.
Off lusignen am naturally grow,
I wyll that my name to all men ben know." 1442

"IN faith," sayd the kyng, "of it am I glad 1443 [Fol. 32 *b.*] The king is glad to see him, but tells him that he feels he is incurably wounded, being stuffed full of venom;
That dressyd and come ye be to thys place,
And that your wyll were truly to be hale.
Swet frende, I fele mortal dethe me brace,
Neuer After thys comforth to purchace 1447
Off surgery-crafte ne with medicine,
For stuffed I am ful of uenyme, 1449

[1] MS. "comquere." [2] MS. "fight."

wherefore he besought him to please to condescend to accept his gift, which Uriens does.

Whereof helth neuer shal I not conquere, 1450
But of my̆ days shortly to make ẽnd;
Wherefor you bes[e]che *with* me accorde here 1452
That to my gift you please to condiscend,
Whereby noght shal lese, vriens, gud frend;
honour shal ye haue, worship, and profite."
Vriens graunted hym *with*out respite, 1456

That hys commaundement wold he do gladly, 1457
Agre and Accorde hys sayd gyft vnto;

The king thanks him for his assent,

The kyng hym thanked, And sayd full humbly,
"Thys is wel sayd, and the more gladder, loo!

and sends for his barons and his daughter Ermynee.

I shal mortal deth take;" commaundyng thoo 1461
That Al the Barons After send shold be,
And hys fayr doughter the swet Ermyne. 1463

He tells his barons he expects not to live longer,

To hys barons said, "now ye vnderstande, 1464
More longer liff noght in me attend;
lenger may not liue here *with* you in lande,

and that he wills to leave his kingdom to his daughter,

My noble Rewme Cipresse; now say you at end,
Whom, to my power, haue warded and diffend 1468
Ffro paynymes at point of swerdes cru[e]lte,
Now it wyll I leue my doughter Ermyne, 1470

[Fol. 33.] she being the true heir.

IN me noght had no poynt of medicin; 1471
For therof she is enheritour of ryght."

The barons thereupon do homage to his daughter;

Thai sayng hym *with* contenance good and fin,
That gladly wold do hys plesire eche wyght.[1]
Ther homage made to hir do in sight, 1475

and the king adds,

So takyng hir ther landes and fe.
Then toke to speke this noble kinge fre; 1477

that his subjects cannot be defended by a simple woman against

"The barons All here me vnderstande, 1478
ye warde And kepte truly may noght be
By simple woman gayn Sarisins hande;

[1] MS. "wyight."

your neighbours thay ben wonder ny to se; such cruel neighbours as the,
Such fers stoures of huge cruelte 1482 Saracens;
As off Armes here, ne the sharpe shoures;
Here Auised haue to you good socoures. 1484

Uppon thys dede here I haue deuised 1485 that Uriens is puissant and mighty,
That vriens is pusant and myghty,
Off lusignen uaillantly franchised,
Which that the Soudan discomfith manly, and has discomfited the Sultan,
And hys men gan sle by dedes Army, 1489 as they all saw for themselves;
By the huge prowesse off hys body strong;
Off thys knewlych non hath by mene of tonge;

What demaunde or aske here of hym now wold, 1492 and that he therefore asks them to beseech Uriens to grant him all his request;
To pray hym I you here beseche hertly,
That he me noght wern, but my requeste hold."
Thay hym besought and prayed swetly; which the barons at once accede to.
To ther request Acorded he humbly; 1496
To the kyng reportyd thay that he wold do
What-someuer he wold hym demAunde, lo! 1498

THeroff was the kyng Full ioyous And glade, 1499 [Fol. 38 *b.*]
To vriens said, "me request hir ye, The king is glad thereof, and tells Uriens that he wishes to ask
And here perdon me of my wordes hade, nothing of him,
For nothyng wil ne of you for to gyf me,
Off youres nothing sall demaunded be; 1503
But you wil I gif gentilly, sire, of myne but to confer on him something
Thys Rewme *with* all enheritaunce fyne, 1505 of his own,

With my fair doughter in franke mariage; 1506 namely, his kingdom and his daughter.
For other haue non discended of my lyne.
You beseech to take here thys fair Image."
When the Barons knew to that wold inclyne, The barons are of the same mind.
Strongly ioyed all off that discipline, 1510
Ther loue to vriens strongly gan draw,
For the gret goodnesse that thay on hym saw. 1512

Uriens thanks the king, and says he would not take the gift if he saw in the king any respite from death.

Uriens the king full well understode,
A lytell mused, after gan Answere;
"I thanke you hertly, gracyous lord goode,
Off that ye me haue don such honour here;
But iff respite of deth *in* you saw were,
Full litill or noght wold I your gifte preise;
But, lord, syn it doth your hert so to pleise,

Syn your will it is, Full wele lyketh me;
Wherfor shold I, lo! lenger it delay?"

The marriage is performed: and, as the priest was raising the host at the mass, the king yielded up his soul.

Thys mariage don plesantly to see,
And ryght As the preste reised god *þat* day
Off the holy masse, *þat* þe preste gan say
Where thys sike kyng lay in such maner wise,
yild vpp hys good soule in-to paradise,

[Fol. 34.] Their great joy is thus turned into wo.

Where our lorde will resceyue hym of hys grace,
And off all hys syn yeuyng hym pardon;
For I witnesse you And say in thys place,
That he was A trew catholike person.

The bride's heart is "locked up" with heaviness.

Ther gret ioy changed in-to wo Anon,
full dolorous was tho the espouse,
With heuynesse loke was hir good hert fre.

The king is buried royally;

The kyng After entered was goodly;
long taried noght or put were on graue,
hys obsequie don ryght worshipfully,
And, to say the soth, As reson wold craue;

and there were therefore no plays or tournaments at the wedding,

For A kyng shold roiall obseque haue.
That time noght had pleys ne tornement,
For the gret dolour whych for the kyng hent,

which was, nevertheless, honestly done.

Which At mortall deth was ther presently.
But not-withstandyng honestly was don
The mariage And weddyng greabilly;
Blame ne reproche certes nedith non

Tho melled of thes dede passed and gon; 1545
So wyll was this thing At poynt don þat day,
At which time ther was full noble array 1547

No blame attached to those who were busy about that matter;

Appertaynyng wel to A kinges dede. 1548
At thys mariage was nobles ful many,
Of sondry townes peple in that stede,
knightes, laydes, damycelles worthy,
yonge Squiers, And maydens goodly, 1552
Where-*with* thys said feste gretly gan honour,
Which ther daunced At that tyme and hour. 1554

for many nobles, knights, ladies, damsels, and squires, honoured the marriage feast, and danced thereat.

Ryght[1] thus the peple merily ioyng 1555
As off the good rule noysed of thaim to,
Of the espouse full noble gouernyng,
And of the good lordes renomyng also.
Anon was she made vnto bedde go, 1559
For vriens wold in no wyse tary,
With hir went to bedde As man ful hastly. 1561

[Fol. 31 b.]
Thus joyed the people on account of the good rule of those two, viz., of the bride and Uriens.

IN that night Greffon ther engendred was, 1562
Off whom I shall declare, outre, and say;
Which in payny conquered hye And bas,
Gret seignories And contrees that day,
And of Colcis quitte the contre Alway, 1566
Where playnly no man *in* no wise passe myght.
Many merueles of trought cam ther ryght, 1568

Their firstborn was named Greffon,
who conquered many countries,
including Colchis,

EVery moneth twenty And mo. 1569
An Ile was ther had full fair to deuise,
Wheron conquered was the flees tho,
Which conqueste was made by medee auise,[2]
By Iason Away it bering such wise. 1573
he it conquered by the hy prudence
Off medee the fair, And by hir science; 1575

where was an isle, in which the golden fleece was gained by Jason, with the aid of Medea.

[1] In the margin, [*Vr*]*ien kyng of* [*Cip*]*re by ermyne* [*hy*]*s wyf hathe a boy* [*cal*]*led gryffon.*
[2] MS. "medeeauife."

It would take up too much time to tell all that story.

FVll long tyme wold be it to rehers here. 1576
ho in-to thys boke thys mater draw wold,
The meruailles huge had *in* that ille there,
A thousand ther hau[e] fall, come, and unfold;
I should then be going aside from the matter in hand.
A thousand sayn, A thousand tymes told, 1580
As wele opin plain As said by straitnesse;
Out of my mater issue shold expresse. 1582

[Fol. 35.]

Off thys Ile to speke thys tyme shall I reste, 1583
And vnto Greffon retorn here me shall.
Greffon was quick and ready in war, and conquered many places.
Greffon with swerdes fors was redy and preste,
Off maree the prince, chef, And principall;
After the porte yaffe conquered he all. 1587
At last he came to Tripoli (?),
So Aboute went purschassing dayly,
That the uaillant Cite of Triple cam by; 1589

which he assailed and took.

BI hys huge prowesse went it to assaill 1590
In ryght werly wyse, For manly was in breste,
That both his penon And baner sanfaill
Put within the town, so making conqueste.
Thus he acquired laud, honour, and praise.
Neuer At no day taried ne reste, 1594
That he [ne] went by land And by ssee,
laude, honour, preising so conquered he. 1596

Off hym we shall reste And tary now, 1597
And to our purpos here retorn shall we
Uriens is crowned king of Cyprus.
Off vriens, kyng which is full know,
And crounyd lorde of Cipresse was he.
His wife's uncle is king of Armenia.
Vncle[1] to hys wif, the king of hermyne; 1601
When hir Fader in lif was being,
Brother to hym was of hermyne the kyng. 1603

Thys full noble kyng of Arminiens 1604
In his days was man of grett goodnesse,

[1] In the margin, *kynge of hermy[ne] enkull to vriens, brother to her fa[ther]*.

But Ay myght not be in liffes existence;
Tho feble and stronge dethe takyth expresse.
Ther ware hys peple full of heuynesse,
With that sorow had many mortalite,
For whyle he regned, well ruled the contre.

This king of Armenia dies, to the great sorrow of his subjects, many of whom died of grief.

A douhter he had gentile And full fayr,
A more gentelere was ther non then she,
Off hym discended was non other hayir.
A concell ther hold off the hermyns fre
That thay wold send to cipresse contre,
Requiring the kyng that hys brother Guy
Sol[d] send in-to ther region only,

[Fol. 35 *b.*] His daughter was his only heir; wherefore the Armenians send to Cyprus, requesting Uriens to send them his brother Guy,

And[1] he shold haue that gentile damycell
To hys wedded wife, flourye the fair.
Thay thys ordinaunce Amonge thaim held ful wele;
To Cipresse cam thes messyngers debonair,
Without tarying or Any retrair
Vn-to the kyng declaryng ther message,
For euery off thaim was full wyse And sage.

who should have the damsel, Flourie, to wife.

The messengers come to Cyprus.

With full gret ioy resceyued thaim the kynge,
And tham fested wonder nobilly.
When thes nouelles vriens knowyng
Off the fayr debonair, the gentile floury,
Off hys barons toke concell hastily.
Thay All accorded[2] And to hym thay said,
That hys brother shold send *with* þam *þat* braid.

Uriens takes counsel with his barons, and they agree that Guy should be sent at once.

That thys thyng were done hasted he bigly;
Guye after send, Accorded All ther-to
That which vriens commaunded hym only.
Into sse thay went *with* moche peple tho,

Guy agrees to the proposal, takes ship, and arrives at Armenia.

[1] MS. "AAnd." [2] MS. "occorded."

Off Armes doubty, noble, And gentile, lo! 1636
Ariued thai were In hermeny,
Wher enherite shold the full fair floury. 1638

[Fol. 36.] Disembarking, he soon meets some lords, who receive him gladly;

AT erthe discended, so thay forth going, 1639
A lordys of contre contring thaim Again,
With A wilfull hert full gentilly resceyuyng,
And ioyusly brought forth thys souerayn.
Off hys comyng gret ioy had sertayn, 1643
All the estates made hym full gret feste;
and marries Flourie, he maried floure *with*out other reste,[1] 1645

and is king of the country;

The king After was of all the contre, 1646
Thes to Rewmes put As thay beforn were.
so that two brothers are once more kings of Armenia and of Cyprus. To brethers Aforn of trouth had it be,
So ben thay now in to brothers powere,
By fader and moder, in like manere. 1650
Thes kynges to regned, As it is sayd,
And ther tyme strongly gan thay aid 1652

The two kings aided those who were descended from them, and the people of Rhodes too. They had many children,

To tho which of thaim discended were; 1653
As I understande, tho of rodes to,
That in mischef ye know, And uisite there.
Full many children had thes brethers tho,
Which leuid till thay were large woxen, lo! 1657
Many fair dedes *in* ther tyme thay wrought,
That fele paynymes to discomfiture brought. 1659

and ruled well, trampling under foot those who annoyed them.

After dicesse of ther fader good, 1660
Which vnto tham both gentill fader was,
Ther Rewmes ruled well while in lif stood,
And ther noyours underfote put bas.
Fro thaim to ther fader torn wyll by grace, 1664
As vnto Raymounde And fair melusigne,
Ther noble moder with all honour dygne. 1666

I will now turn to Raymond and Melusine.

[1] In the margin, *Guy mary[ed] flour[ie] kynge of harmy[nie] dogh[ter], & he kyng[ed] hymself.*

When that thay hurde the nouelles And tiding 1667 [Fol. 36 b.] When these heard
Off ther sones too, goode, fair, and gèntill, of the success of their two sons,
how conquered had to gret Rewmes hauyng;
Wherefor thay sayd the sept psabulmes until they said the 7 Psalms to the
The kyng of glorie, enpreising *with* vos shill, 1671 King of Glory,
By whom thai haue had the huge victory,
And conquered ther foes many; 1673

And that in so gret honoures put be 1674 because each of them was called a king.
That Aythor of thaim claymed is A kyng,
And of sogettes loued in eche degre,
Then was she sette in desy[r]ing Moreover Melusine, for her soul's
Our lord for to serue, hertly hym thankyng. 1678 health,
Thys noble lady called Melusine,
As for the helth of hir soule deuine, 1680

Thys fair Melusine, *with*out tarying, 1681
Of our lady A minstre fourged she built a minster to Our Lady,
Which was ful fair, gladsom in seing;
hit edefied Melusine the fre,
And full richely it founded to se; 1685
Thorough All peiters, by hir owne deuyse, and founded also many other
Many churches founded *in* glorious wysse. 1687 churches.

To euery place yaff she gyftes grett. 1688
Affter Oede hir son gan she to marie Next she married her son Oede to the earl's fair daughter.
The fair doughter, of the noble Erle gett.
For soth Raynold, whych had but on eye,
Full gret, thikke, And fers wax he wonderly; 1692 Raynold and Anthony set out from Lusignan.
Anthonye And he parted lusignen fro,
For peple went thens when dined had tho. 1694

For Anthony was ayne and eldeste, 1695 [Fol. 37.] They soon came to Luxemburg,
Towardes Brehain toke he the streight way,
Till that luxemborugh Approched ful preste,
A famous town of gret renon that day.

which was then being besieged by the king of Alsace,

Beforn whom many A penon gan display,
The king of Ausoy it besegied had,
Almoste it toke, *with*in thay sore Adred.

who had nearly taken the town.

When thes brethren to in feld comyn were,
The town vnnethes gayn Ausoys myght hold;

They asked the cause of the war, and find that it was for the duke's daughter, an orphan,

Ther Aither of tham had hurt[1] the manere,
Wherefor thaim werred thys myghty kyng bold;
For A mayden it was that haue wold,
That *with*in the towne was gentil, curteys, & faire,
Doughter of A duke,[2] Orphelyne debonair.

whom the king of Alsace wished to marry forcibly.

BI strenght to wife haue wold hir the kyng,
Remeue wold he noght thys said Cite fro
Til the dukes doughter he were hauyng.
But Anon cam A-place thes bretherin to,
Which *with* thaim brought A wonder huge host tho,

The brethren defy the king by a herald,

Vnto thys said kyng send thay diffiance,
By An heraude of theres that instance.

whereof the king is glad, as he is fierce and cruel.

Wherof the king was ioyus And glad,
For he was lusti, yonge, fers, and cruell;

From afar the brethren perceived the host, armed with knives and halberds.

A-ferrome thay perceyued the strenght had,
Seing the baneres with the wynde ful wel,
Which blew thaim A-lofte *with* many A pensell,
Of Army peple seing grett fuson,
With Custiles And Gisarmes manyon;

[Fol. 37 *b*.] The Lusignans attack the foes boldly,

Then thay stafte[3] thaim, putt in-to ordinance,
Goyng to smyte ther enemies uppon,
huge noyse and crye Assembled that instance.
The lusignens went, faste crying tham on;

[1] "hurd" (?). [2] MS. "guke." [3] MS. "ftafte."

To-geders dreuing cam *with* gret randon, 1727 so that the earth trembles at their encounter.
And when thay cam the Assemble to,
The erth made thay to tremble and quake tho.

Ther entre-sembling don wonder fersly; 1730 The men of Alsace assail the Poitevins, who hammer at them in return.
A gret Abashment was it tho being;
Ausoys peityuyns assailing bigly,
Peiteuyns vppon Ausoys faste knakking, The Lusignans bid their foes abide the taste of their swords.
Manyon ther slayn, mortally deyng; 1734
Ayen lusignens crying[1] were Ful faste,
"Theffes Ausoys! byde our swerdes taste, 1736

FOr escape no wyse mow ne shal ye noght!" 1737
Ther army dedes the peiteuyns gan do,
Fro fele bodies pertid the soule in brought.
Then thes brethren, ech by thaim-self, tho, The two brethren, each by himself, behave in so warlike a manner, that their men are the victors.
So ful werrely wrought, can noght be said, lo! 1741
Off o side and other so departed there,
That the peiteuyns Ausoys gan conquere. 1743

ANthony the kyng toke with handes to, 1744 In Anthony's hands the king "seemed nothing."
In his hand he semyd hym no-thyng,
hym wold he haue slayn, but he yilde hym tho,
A-non hys sword forth-*with* presenting.
When Anthony saw to hym so yilding, 1748 Anthony receives his sword in token of submission.
he hym resceyued And his swerd gan take;
And tho the Ausoys gret flight gan to make; 1750

But peyteuyns Full ny gan thaim to sew, 1751 [Fol. 38.] The Poitevins pursue the men of Alsace till they are all taken and slain.
And Raynold strongly full faste gan to fight,
Many ther were slayn And fele gan subdew,
The Ausoys takyng all And slayn don-right.
Raynold was full sage, And wel taught perfight, 1755
In like wyse was hys brother Anthony,
Full gentill And connyng vnto mannys eye. 1757

[1] MS. "eryng," *e* being mis-written for *c*, and *i* omitted

Anthony and Raynold take their ease in their tents,

Where that day thay toke to ease thaim surely 1758
As for ther repare in the tentes and place.
In-to the town After send quikly
To se if thay were reioed in thys cace;

and send six knights, with the captive king, to the fair maiden.

knightes sixe made go vnto the good grace 1762
Off thys fair mayden, hire to present the kyng,
Ther thens departyd, lenger noght byding; 1764

The kyng presented to thys fair creature, 1765
vnto do *with* hym at hir owne plesance.

The fair creature inquires who are the two noble lords who have thus come to her assistance.

Then thys fayr mayden, fresh shappe of figure,
Which was full gentile, Fair, swet of semblance,
And to tho said which had hir in gouernance, 1769
"Fro whens comith this noble lordes thys hour,
That me thys day han don so gret honour?" 1771

An aged knight tells her they are the "sons of Lusignan;"

"MAdame," said on which was an Aged knight, 1772
"With A herty will ye shal know gladly;
These bene the sones of lusignen ryght;
Men thaim so name, certes, by ther cry,

and that their names are Anthony and Raynold.

That on of thaim is called Anthony, 1776
And that other hath vnto name Raynold,
To full myghty men, manly And full bolde." 1778

[Fol. 38 b.] She is very grateful for their services,

Thys Fair mayden said, "god off his mercy 1779
Off ther socour tham thanke for hys hy pusance,
For me haue thay don dedes Full worthy.
What so I haue shall be to ther plesance,

and expresses a wish to counsel with them ere they go.

For ther consell wrought and good gouernance, 1783
With tham shall I concell, er thay goo,
Off all thyngis that I haue to do." 1785

She tells her council she shall invite the brethren and

Then she ther demaunded hir concell; 1786
After commaundyng thes brethren come hir to,
lenger myght not she it withold well,

And with ther hoste shall[1] come loge also,
In thys said towne ther herbigage haue tho,
And in especiall the Barons moste hy.
hyr peple said, "it shal bene done truly."

their host into the town.

TOward thes brethren went thay forth anon,
Within the tentes merily tham founde,
In place where was the kyngys pauilon
For time that the sege was hold *in þat* ground.
Ther founde thay I-now of goodes *þat* stounde,
But of it thay wold take ryght no-thyng,
But to men off armes All was yeuyng.

The messengers find the brethren in the king's pavilion, where they had found much treasure and had distributed it among the soldiers.

What-someuer thing in that place was founde,
Fyrste gaf to tho gret, After smal vnto.
When fro luxemborugh where come *þat* stounde
Thes messengers Ful Apertly tho,
Ther message sagely And wightly gan do
To thes to brethren off full huge prowesse
Fro the part off thys lady And mestresse.[2]

When the messengers from Luxemburg had arrived at the pavilion, they delivered their message to the two brethren,

Thes[3] brethren to resceyued tham humbly,
Ryght so As thay k[n]ew full well for to do.
When thes messyngers vnderstod uerily
All thare Answer, no lenger taried tho,
That of thes knightes fife hundred and mo
Went thaim to loge there, were noght dangerous,
knowing that ther was al thyng plenteuous.

[Fol. 39.]
who received them humbly.

The messengers receive their answer, and at once 500 knights set out to lodge within the town.

The hostes marschall lefte thai *þat instance*,
Ther forigers[4] A-forn gan to send
For ther hostes to make ordinance,

The brethren leave their "marshals" with the main army, and send their foragers on before them.

[1] MS. "fholl."
[2] At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Thes brethren to refceyued."
[3] MS. "Thyes."
[4] MS. "forigers."

Of whome the Instrumentes sounded at end,
Off luxemborught entre moche to commende; 1818

Every place and cross-way are filled with people.

No place ther had, neither carfoukes non,
But peple shold se ther come many one, 1820

TO the sounde that thes instrumentes gan make; 1821
The nobles and gentiles comyng thaim agayne.

The nobles of the city convey the brethren to the castle.

Tho moste worthiest thes brethren gan take,
Vnto the castel conueing thaim certayn.

The maiden arrives thither; her name is Christian.

To thys assemble peple cam ful fayn, 1825
Where appered thys cristin creature,
Whiche cristian was named, be ye sure. 1827

She is accompanied by many ladies,

THer Acompanied was she noght ill 1828
Of laides had ful gret company,

both married and maiden, who receive the brethren nobly.

With noble damyselles longing hir until,
Als of tho maried As of maidens many.
Thai thes brethren resceyued nobilly, 1832
And ful sagely ryght so As thay shold,
Ther vitail redy As to plesire haue wold, 1834

[Fol. 39 *b.*]

A feast is provided; they wash their hands, and sit in order;

WIth-out tariyng to wash ther handes went; 1835
After went to sitte ther ceriatly.
Sche made thaim ther A ful fayr sight to hent,

the king of Alsace highest, Anthony next, and Raynold and three barons next.

The kyng of Ausoy sette was he moste hy;
After the brother to Raynold, Anthony, 1839
After thre gret barouns of the same place,
Enmyddes tham Raynold ther sette wace. 1841

A more "honest" feast was never seen.

THer tho had was An excellent feste, 1842
A more honester neuer sayn with eye,
Of vitail and als wines of the best;
The peiteuyns were at ease merily.

After dinner they washed their hands; and, grace being said,

When dined thay had, ther handes wash clenly; 1846
The tables raysed After tho anon,
And graces saide with gret deuocion, 1848

The kyng of Ausoys to thes brethren to
Said, "I am your presoner thys instance,
In your handes take at thys iournay, lo!
I you here besech to make ordinance,
In such wyse I may be put to finance."
Anthony hym said in fayr, "lord and knight,
Our presoner be ye noght of right;

the king said to the two brethren, "I am your prisoner, and ask to be put to ransom."

Here haue we done And shewid curtessy,
Where to wrongousiy uillanous ye doo,
To thys noble damicel and lady.
Owr dedes we haue put now hir vnto,
your body we haue yeuyn hir also;
Now by hir moste be all the ordinance,
Other-wyse ryght noght but to hir plesance.

Anthony replies that they have been as courteous as he has been villanous,

and that they now put his body in the lady's power,

In hir standeth all your deliuerance,
Or elles your deth without doubt Any"—
(When the kyng it hurd, in hert had noisance)—
"for that ye haue hir noyed wekkidly."
Forsoth tho anon spake thys fayr lady,
(Neuer concelled by mannys langage,
For she was well thaught, inly wise and sage),

[Fol. 40.] because he had annoyed her wickedly.

But the fair lady at once, without any prompting,

"My lordes," she said, "I thank you hertly
Of honour and seruice that ye haue me do;
But by my feith As to that dede surely
Off kyng Ausoys, I wyll not ordayn, lo!
he is yours, I leue hym you vnto;
here all that I haue you[1] gyf you thys day,
For you to guerdon[2] certes can ne may,

returns thanks to the two lords, and says in return that she leaves the king at their disposal,

as she could not "guerdon" them

And hepes of gold had in tresory,
That which ye haue ynsterday me do,
By your gracious noble chiualry.

if she had heaps of gold.

[1] "I" (?). [2] MS. "gruerdon."

The king's life and death are therefore in their power.

In you lyth hys lif, And his deth also.
No other thyng shal I do ther-to; 1881
So to your goodnesse am I bounde & hold."
hir wordes hurde Antony and Raynolde, 1883

They answer, "If so, he shall have a quit-claim of us,

Thai hir answering, "sin ye wyll do so, 1884
Of vs shal he haue A quite-clayme fully,
With-that he Amend that he hath misdo.

provided he kneel down here debonairly, and cry you mercy,

Then here shall he knele ful debonerly,
here Aforn vs al, criing you mercy 1888
Of trespas and wronges he hath done here;
And vppon hys feith truly you to swere 1890

[Fol. 40 *b*.] and swear he will never do you annoyance, disturbance, or damage.

That neuer you il after thys shal doo, 1891
No noisance, distourbance, neither demage;
Surete And hostage shall you take vnto."

The fair maiden sweetly consents.

Thys fair maden said *with* full swet langage,
"Ryght As ye haue said, it pleasith my corage; 1895
Vnto you I wyll Agre in all thyng,
As ye wyll, so wyll I, by consenting." 1897

The king is full glad, and cries mercy at once,

The kyng was full glad, ioyng merily, 1898
For he trowed wel exiled to be.
To thys lady went, cryng hir mercy,
lyke-wyse As was said by Anthony fre.

She accordingly consents to his freedom.

Thys womanly thyng ther resceyued she, 1902
Ryght As it pleasid ther thys brethren to,
She Accordid in semble wyse tho. 1904

The king next cries with a loud voice, that he should be glad to have such chivalrous men for neighbours,

When the kyng had made hys othe & swrete, 1905
Then ful lowde he spake And ful hautaynly,
And sayd the Barons, "ful glad mow ye[1] be
yif such a neighbour puruely myght I
As on of you to to haue uerily, 1909
Which bene so chiualrous in your doing,
And which for to do is preisable thyng. 1911

[1] "myght I" (?).

SEith here now thys plesant debonair
Gentile Cristian, thys nobyle duchesse,
Which holdeth contrees and rentes fair!
Anthony, me hire besech your hinesse,
ye don haue gret curtesy and gentilnesse,
Hit is gret reson ye were satefied
Off your ful good will don And Applied.

and he bids Anthony look on the pleasant Christian, this duchess, with fair rents, and consider that it is reasonable that he should be repaid for his kindness.

I say thys to ende that it myght be wrought
As that we App[r]oche that I thenke fully,
Ryght noble Barons, sin wel I haue thought,[1]
To my semyng, Cristian might mary
As to be yeuen vnto Antoni.
A man no better myght hit employ nay-where,
For this knight is A worthi baculere."[2]

[Fol. 41.] He thinks that Christian might be given to Anthony,

as he is so worthy a bachelor.

Off luxembrough the Barons and eche lord,
Thay sayng, "ful wel here hath said the kyng."
All Agreable sete in one Accorde,
To thys werke the kyng was thaim there saing.
The mariage had *with* all the weddyng,[3]
Which endured eight days plenerly,
Ther had ioustes and tornementes myghty.

The barons and lords of Luxemburg applaud him;

and the marriage feast is held, and lasted for eight days.

There iousted tho ful nobilly the kyng.
At eight days ende finished the feste,
Then euery man redy faste hastyng
To go And leue take of tho semyng best.
Anon ther cam, *with*out bode or reste,
A messenger, streight fast As he myght goo,
Which longing was the king of Brehayne to.

The feast ended, every man is about to take leave,

when a messenger arrives from the king of Brehayne,

[1] MS. "thoiught."
[2] MS. "baiulere."
[3] In the margin, *Antony ys [duke] of luxenb[ourgh] by marry-[ing] Cryſtyne, eyr yerof.*

with a letter to the king of Alsace.

TO the kyng of Ausoys lettres he brought. 1940
Anon the gate opened hym vnto,
Forth-*with* þe kyng brake thes strange lettres wrought.

Having read the letter, he begins to sigh and weep tenderly;

As sone As he had radde thes letters tho,
There gan he to sigh and sowghid for wo, 1944
And Als for to wepe ryght ful tenderly;
Then thes brethren to demaunded for why 1946

[Fol. 41 *b.*] and, being asked the reason, says he has had hard news;

That he weped so, And wat tydinges he hade. 1947
Vnto tham he sayd, "reste wil noght to tell;
Full ill me is come, hard nouelles and sad;[1]

that the Saracens have besieged a town in Brehayne,

Besegyd haue the sarysins cruell
In Brehayne *with* the tiranny fell. 1951

and that he pities the king his brother.

Off my brother kyng haue I gret pete,
Which sore displeasith and hurteth foule me. 1953

Anthony listens to his appeal, and bids him not be discomforted;

FOr your lordys sake, take therof pete, 1954
And if it you please to hys socour goo,
I thynke it deserue atwixst you and me."
When Anthony vnderstode hys wordes tho,
Full goodly he said thys hy kyng vnto, 1958

for that he will send his brother aid;

"Sir," he sayd, "for thys be not discomfort;
My brother you ful wel shal recomfort. 1960

and that Raynold should go and slay the Saracens.

FOr certes Raynold my brother shal go, 1961
My good knightes *with* hym shal he bring,
And your brother put Away fro wo,
Ther many Sarisins shal be deing."

The king hereupon pledges his life that Raynold shall marry his niece;

"I thanke you hertly," to hym sayd the kyng; 1965
"I Afferme And plegge here vppon my life,
My brothe[r]s doughter shal he haue to wyfe; 1967

RAynold shal so enploed be and sette, 1968
Then in your brother better may noght be;
So god me ayde, he shal hir haue *with*out lette

[1] MS. "fayd."

After my brother, kyng of hy degre;
And he shal gouerne noble Brehaynè;
For non other hoir hath non my brother,
But only hir; ne may haue non other."

and, after his brother's death, succeed as king of Brehayne; as his brother had no heir but this one daughter.

When Antony vnderstode thys nouell, [Fol. 42.]
Which was ful fayr and inly gracyous,
To the kyng he said hautaynly and wel,
"Go hens, ye noble king vertuous,
your hoste Assemble *with* peple plenteuous,
Al your ful hoste vnto *þat* place bryng,
Within thys Auynsime[1] be ye retornyng.

Anthony bids the king go and assemble his army, and return again to Luxemburg within a fortnight;

MI peple ye shall finden al redy,
Noght ouer ferre, but ny by shall ye;
Raynold my brother to you shal come truly,
In *pro*pre persone me thor shal ye see."
The king hym thanked goodly As myght be,
Fro thens dep*ar*ted he ful hastly tho,
hys peple to Assemble fast gan to go.

for there should Raynold meet him.

He himself also (Anthony) would appear there.

The king hastily departs,

And when Assembled hys peple hade,
Then forth-*with* As sone As he goodly myght,
To luxemborugh A retorn he made,
And then to that place came hys peple raid ryght,
A noble Baronage hauyng ther to sight;
Then he made to come A messengere
Fro king Ausoys to Anthony there;

and soon returns to Luxemburg with all his people.

He next sen is a messenger to Anthony

Which ther cam tho in ful noble aray,
With A shil vois said to duke Anthony,
"Sir, I pray your lord you salute thys day;
The king of Ausoy And hys company

to say that he was all ready to go to Brehayne,

[1] Read "quynsime"; see Note.

and that his hosts were beneath the town in the fields.

here comith to go to Brehaynè hastly; 2000
By-nethes ar thai in the fayr medew,
With ful noble company hym to sew." 2002

[Fol. 42 *b*.] Duke Anthony says he is welcome;

The duke hym sayd, "welcom shall he be." 2003
Raynold forth he send, moste no lenger byde.

and tells Raynold that the king of Alsace is come, and he must find his army good lodging,

Raynold cam Agayne, ther taried noght he;
Sir Anthony sayd, "brother, goth thys tyde;
Into thys faire medew forth most ye glyde, 2007
For ther is comyn king Ausoys roiall,
Makyng to loge hys peple gret And small, 2009

His pauilon piche vnto Auantage;[1] 2010
To that done was he inly sage and wyse.

and make them take their ease.

let tham take ther ease after ther corage,
Then make the kyng come of hys hye emprise."

Raymond obeys, and all is well provided.

hys commaundement Raynol[d] gan Auise, 2014
And it was wel don to hertis plesance,
The Ausoys loged wel *with* all circumstance. 2016

The king departs to Luxemburg to see the duke.

The kinge departed and for[2] thaim toke leue, 2017
Towardes luxemborough thys said duk went,

A great feast is made, the particulars of which I need not rehearse.

The town entred in, ther founde, in breue,
Gret fest thaim Among was to all entent;
After at borde set conuenyent. 2021
Of ther diner and fayr leue here I shal,
For hit nedith noght As to rehers All. 2023

Anthony makes all ready to go to the aid of the king of Brehayne.

Anthony Anon made tho all redy, 2024
Such peple As were ther in that contre,
he hauyng ther A noble company
As to aid the kyng tho of Brehaignè;

The number of the two hosts was, in all, 30,000.

Nombred thay were thirty thousande fre, 2028
Ther thes hostes too full Assembled were,
And full gret honour to-geders can bere. 2030

[1] MS. "A uantage." Fr. text, "dauantaige." [2] "fro" (?).

NOble felowship ther A man shold se;
As moche peple the duke As had the kyng.
When that to-geders thay made assemble,
In euery parte the grounde faste tremblyng.
But er that made fro thens departing,
Thys fayr Cristian called Anthony,
Sayng, "you beseche, souerayn lord hy,

[Fol. 43.] The duke had as many men as the king.

Ere the duke departs, the fair Christian calls him, and beseeches him

That it myght you please me do such honoure
That ye the Armes wold fouchesafe to bere
Off luxemborugh; noght put non houre
Other blason, you beseche, to were."
"My fair swet loue," Anthony gan Answere,
"Accorde shal I noght your wyll ther-vnto,
But Another thyng for-sothe shall I doo.

to wear the coat-of-arms of Luxemburg, and no other blazon.

Anthony says he will not exactly do that,

IN whatsomeuer place, lo! that we be,
The shild shal I bere of A lyon,
Vppon my armure, plenerly to se;
That Armys wyl haue; other wyl I non;
For that when I was born thys wordle on,
A hurt of A lyon tho I gan to bere,
Vppon my Iawe strongly appering there,

but proposes always to bear on his shield a lion,

because that, when he was born into the world, he had on his jaw a mark like that made by a lion's claw;

Where-of the peple Abasshed was sore.
Also your plesire certes shal I doo,
And fulfill your wyll days euer-more."
She said, "I you thanke full hertyly, lo!
For yf the Asure be put Away fro,
My hole Armys shal ye bere surely,
Both youre armys And thes same only,

with this exception, he will do her pleasure.

She thanks him, and says that, excepting the azure, he can bear both his own arms and hers,

Which ben Armes ryght full Auncion."
Thes Armes he toke And tham gan to bere,
And so Assorted thaim ryght thys to gon.
Of this fair lady toke he his leue there,

[Fol. 43 b.] which were the old arms of Luxemburg. He accordingly assorts them,

and takes his journey to Brehayne at full speed.

Then fro ther logis thar[1] dressyd tho were,
Towarde Brehaignè went thai fast dreuyng;
Euery Afore other went fleing,

Bavaria is passed, and Almaigne;

PAssyng so Baueres And also Almayn,
Suche progresse forth made ouer the contre,
By huge Iournays, ualey and montayn,

and Brehayne is soon reached.

Till thay Approched the land of Brehaignè.
At thar owne desyre ther made thay entre,
Now shal I say of paynymes the felons,
Which werred dayly thys sayd Brehaignons.

I must now speak of the evil Paynims.

The king of Cracow was mighty and strong,

The king of Craquo[2] mighty And strong was,
Werryng ful bigly the Brehaignons thoo,
Withe hym Esclauons many had aplace,
So os[3] we haue founde *in* old scripture, lo!

and with his men made great war against the Brehaignons.

For of that lande was lorde and syre also.
To Brehaignons ful gret werre he made,
On A day he went, to scarmish[4] *with* thaim sad,

Afforne Brehaignè *with*out hodelnesse.
There hym perceyued the king of Brehaignè,
And ther thought display his baner expresse,

One day the king of Brehayne, whose name was Fedris, armed himself for a sally,

Fedris, which held that Rewme And contre;
Armyng hym ryght faste, taking his helme fre,

and bade the gates be thrown open;

When *with* his armure coueryd he was,
Ther the gates made opon[5] And unbras;

[Fol. 44.] but the Saracens beat these free knights, overwhelming them with the number of their men.

FRo town issued his peple And he;
Off noble peple had he full many.
And the Sarisins bete these knightes fre,
Many ther caste done And moche peple sly,
But such store was of Esclauons only,
That we can not put tham As in writing,
Off whom Brehaignons were ryght sore doubtyng.

[1] "thai" (?). [2] MS. "Traquo." [3] *for* as. [4] See Note. [5] *Sic* in MS.

Esclauons Brehaignons put sore Abake,
And tham sore chased A-non to the ende.
But of luxemborught the duke on gan take,
He puttyng Away ther huge debate tende.
Off Brehaignons kyng to fyght[1] was bende,
With the Sarisins faught he in eche side,
Which his peple had put Abake that tide.

These men drove back the Brehaignons, and chased them into the town.

But the duke of Luxemburg came up, while the king of Brehaigne

But the kyng was noght put Abake only,
But he had ynow hys life to deffende,
Here And there caste doun, fighting ful manly,
On all for-smete, Another to grounde wende,
As A wyld boor deffendyd hym at ende.
Ryght As at bay stode thys manly good knight,
Full sore were thay hurte whom he Approche myght.

was fighting for *his life, like a wild boar at bay, smiting and casting down his foes.*

But with A shotte off A launcegay tho
Thys noble knyght[2] smetyn thorugh hys body
Full felonesly And cruelly also,
That to mortal deth fill doun sodenly,
Fro body went the soule ful heuily;
To our lord An hy commaunded was she,
For A worthy man certes was he.

But by a javelin this noble knight was smitten through the body,

and his soul was commended to God.

There vp ros the cry, As seith the scripture,
The Brehaignons wo sore wepte for pite;
Tho that myght, ther fled; but sarisins sure
Thay sued ny, attayning tho gan[3] fle.
There swerdes gan take, faste Aboute gan sle,
Fersly on tham went whom þat myght attayn,
Full faste cast thay doun, And many ther slayn.

[Fol. 44 *b.*]

The Brehaignons wept sore, and fled; but the Saracens pursued, reaching soon the flying troop,

and slaying them fiercely.

[1] MS. "fyght."
[2] MS. "kynght."
[3] MS. "gam."

The few who escaped came spurring to the town, and told the sad news;

Wherof Brehaignons braid and cried, 2122
And tho which might ther be escaping
Vnto the town come spored And hied,
Declaring thes nouelles of the kyng;

to the great grief of the slain king's fair daughter, Eglentine.

Wherof At hert had that gret noyng 2126
The kynges doughter, named Eglentine,
Whome all good beute gan fair enlumyne. 2128

Eglentine, thys kinges doughter fre, 2129
Off paynymes had gret fere And doubtance.
The peple ran to town And Cite,

The people ran fast back into the city for fear of the Saracens, when they saw their king dead. But the Saracens are overjoyed;

The sarisins moche doubted þat instance,
When the kyng saw dede, whylom of pusance; 2133
Wheroff the sarisins had gret ioy tho,
Tristyng[1] ther were had be ended And doo. 2135

and, making a great fire with bushes and wood, burnt the king's body before the gate.

Tho a full gret fire thay tende made And hade, 2136
With busshes And wod makyng it full hy,
Ful ny to þe gate thys said fire þat thai made,
Byforne hys peple the kyng brend truly.

Those within cry and grind their teeth.

Marred therof ben tho *with*in Fully, 2140
Crying And grinting sore *with* ther teeth tho,
But no remedy cowde thay shap therto, 2142

[Fol. 45.] But soon came Anthony, Raynold, and the king of Alsace towards Brehaigne, their basnets glittering like the bright sun.

For non other wyse ther myght it noght be. 2143
But tho cam Anthony And also Raynold,
Which to paynymes made sautes plente,
And of Ausoys the noble kyng hold.
To-Brehaignè-ward cam thes thre told, 2147
Ther bushinentes fayr resplendising,
As the bryghty[2] sune light and fayr shinyng. 2149

The Brehaignons had great need of succour,

A noble thyng was to behold and se 2150
To-Brehaignè-ward forth faste were passyng,
Which gret nede had to socour and surete,

[1] MS. "Criftyng." [2] *Sic* in MS.

For gretly thai were thaim ouerpressing;
The Brehaignons went out thaim Faste trussing, and were sore astonished,
Wheroff Brehaignè was Astoned sore, and defended themselves feebly.
And diffendyd thaim febly euermore. 2156

Off thys Eglentyne had gret discomforth, 2157 Eglentine would rather have been
She had more leuer had mortalite. dead.
"Als! dede is," said, "my fader, my comfort; She laments her father, and knows
Fader ne moder haue I noght, perde! not what she, an
here bide And dwell most, orpheline to se. 2161 orphan, will now do;
What now willt thou don, woful Eglentine?
To gret heuynesse off-fors moste thou incline;

For now I se here the destruccion 2164 for now she sees the destruction
Off all my regyon And Rewme roial. of all her realm.
Als! caytif! what shalt thou now don?
In what maner forme gouerne the now shall?
Thy contre shalt se put in exile all, 2168 The country
Distroed, robbed, peled, and more wurse, would be robbed, pillaged, and
By ille sarisins; god gife thaim his curse! 2170 worse, by evil Saracens.

I wote nere wat to do, neither what to say, 2171 [Fol. 45 b.]
Ne I may noght to it shappe remedy; She would have to deny our Lord,
Me moste here-After our lord to renay, and believe in Saracen customs.
And in sarisine lau beleue fully!"
Thys complained Eglentine heuily; 2175
For sarisins strong Asseilede faste certain Meanwhile they assailed the town
The cite And town, And strongly gan thaim payn furiously,

TO haue it, and take by assaute that hour. 2178 and thought to take it.
Such trowed it to dresse, which failled tho;
For in lytell whyle, thorugh goddys labour,
Er that pay[ny]mes trowid it to do,
A messengere cam the Brehaignons vnto, 2182 But soon came a messenger
Entred brehaignè without tarying, secretly into the town unto the
Ful coyly And preualy within entring, 2184 Brehaignons,

and bade them make another sally,

Then escried he ryght full hautanly,
"Now go ye forth, And well shall it appere,
Which that will diffend thys cite truly.

and look out and see the king of Alsace approaching, with Anthony and Raynold;

Diffend you now well, se your socour here,
Which comyng is you in ryght swifte manere.
Se ye noght her of Ausoys come the kyng,
Anthony And Raynold *with* hym doth bryng?

and not to talk of death, for the Poitevins were at hand,

Moche ther comyng is you vnto socour,
Ne haue ye no worde deth vnto, sothlesse.
For the noble Duke Anthony of honour,
And raynold hys brother to this place thaim dresse;

so well nourished with meat and wine as to astonish the Paynims.

With thaim peyteuyns many bryng expresse,
Which norished ben *with* good mete and wyne,
Paynyms thay will make to-stoniste *in*cline.

[Fol. 46.] When the Barons of Brehaigne heard this, they praise God.

The kyng of Ausoys thaim haue in company,
To socour And aid tho Af Brehaigne."
When the Barons it vnderstode truly,
Thay yildyng thankes to god *in* trenite.

Every man takes good heart, and the Saracens begin to quake,

Eche off tham diffended scharply to see,
Ther euery man good hert gan to take,
The sarisins it saw, ssore gan to quake,

wondering what news they had received.

Mvsyng what nouelles or comfort thay hade.
When thai perceiued tham to contune so,

But soon comes a messenger to them, saying,

"Se," on said, "A messyngere comyng sad;"
Whiche *with* full shil vois cried right loude tho,

"Lords, leave off your skirmishing and retreat,

"your escarmish, lordes, lete passe And goo.
Vn-to your loges make fair retrete Anon,
Withdraw, remeue hens time is that we dōne.

for behold the Christians fast approaching,

FOr cristyn peple comyng fast many se,
To comforth tho within, sumdele[1] fered,

[1] MS. "famdele."

Off Army peple Full many here bee,
(The feldes ouerall, lo! ben couered),
Which us cometh, by gret wreth stered."
Then thes paynymes wrethfully ther-thens
Whent, leuyng Anon ther stourdy uiolens.

by whom all the fields are covered over."

The Paynims thereupon retreat,

Thens to ther logges went thay retornyng,
And not-For-*þat* made clariners vp-blow;
And ther batailles Anon ordaynyng.
Off that other part Anthony so grow
Hys batail renged, comyng to be know;
When entreproched thys huge hostes to,
Sarisins strongly ther thaim doubted tho.

returning to their tents.

Preparations are made for battle on both sides, and the Saracens are struck with terror.

The cristin peple tho ran thaim vppon;
Persed And brokyng shildes were many;
Tho cristin went toward thaim enui[r]on,
The sarisins went tham to deffend withly;[1]
Ther A myghty stour men shold see to eye.
To off thaim hath ther cast don Raynold,
Meruelous strokes smote he as man bold;

[Fol. 46 *b*.]

Then were many shields pierced and broken;

there might be seen a mighty battle.

ANd ther Anthony hys foes caste dōn,
All peple hym drad And sore hym gan doute.
A paynym to smyte went he forth Anon,
hym not warented harnes ne helme Aboute;
For hys swerd entred hys hed thorugh-oute,
Which ther rent And cleffe dōn the theth[2] vn-to,
he gan fall to erth *with* gapyng throte tho.

Anthony smites a Paynim, whom neither helm nor harness guarded from the blow; for the sword clove his head to the teeth.

Tho cristin manly gan do at that day,
Euery forth went *with* strokes smyting.
Tho went lusignens escrying allway,
"lordys, Barons, Aforn here passyng,
Vppon the paynymes be ye wel fighting!"

Then went the Lusignans, crying out, "Lords and barons, fight well!"

[1] "wightly" (*!*). See l. 2260.

[2] *Sic* in MS.

The king of Cracow, in great wrath,

The kyng of Craquo[1] ful wrogth tho he was,
When hys peple saw such hurtes purchas, 2247

comes to the rescue, and smites down a Christian to the grass;

TO thaim socour hym efforced tho, 2248
With gret strength And myght his swerd gan enbrace,
hys swerd fershly shone, And by gret vertu, lo!
A cristin hath he caste dōn vppon the grace,
Al deth to ground laid throwen *in* the place. 2252

then he cries aloud, "O ye Christians,

After Craquo[1] hily cried And grad,
"O ye cristin, your dethe now here had; 2254

[Fol. 47] you shall all die!"

All shall ye dye, escape ye ne may, 2255
Forsoth here by me of-fors most ye dy."

But Raynold strained his brand of steel fiercely, and smote the king with such force that he rent his head to the teeth.

hys langage greuyd moche Raynold that day,
With spores smote faste his course[r] bigly,
With hand strained hys brande of stile fersly, 2259
And wightly went to smite the kyng Craquo,[1]
By such fors And strenght hed rent teth vnto.

To death fell the king;

Bustesly And rude the stroke gan discend, 2262
Raynold caste hym don, to deth the king fall;
Wherwith hys peple to discomfort wend,

and the Saracens stayed no longer, but turned their horses round

No lenger sogerned sarisins, gret ne small.
With ther coursers ther ways torned all; 2266
When thay perceiued and saw ther kyng slayn,
Thay thaim held tho All discomfite plain. 2268

and fled openly.

In the swift pursuit, all the Saracens are cut to pieces like flesh cut upon the stalls.

APertly And Openly torned to flight, 2269
But peiteuins tho pursute after made,
Vppon sarisins smote and bete dōn ryght,
Tham all to-chapped And kerue in pecis sad,
As men don the flesh vppon the stal had. 2273
Anthony, the full noble souerayn,
Off paynyms hath ryght manyon slain. 2275

[1] MS. "Traquo."

The sarisins thaim held for discomfight;
  he rent And tare don all he gan attain.
The kyng of Ausois, Also A good knight,
  He hym bare ful wel And nobilly certain.
  All the paynymes ther of trouth were slain;
  When ther perceiued the king Ausois bold
  The kyng of Craquo[1] standed and all cold,

And of painymes so full gret fusion,
  Ther he commaunded hys peple unto
That unto on hepe put shuld be echon.
  Ryght As he had sayd, so ther was it do.
  The paynyms hepid strongly An hye tho,
  In euery part put to was the fire,
  Ther paynymes were bruled and brend entire.

Off Sarsons[2] A man shold venge hym ryght so,
  For of verray trought of Craquo[1] the kynge
like made hys brother to Askis brend tho.
  Anthony And Raynold ther were logging
  In tentes reised which thei were finding;
  The peiteuins ther logged in-ly well,
  And sarisins disloged eueridelle.

The kyng [of] Ausois lefte[3] thes holy mightes,
  Vnto the town went he ther forth A-non,
With hym An hundred of noble knightis,
  Of moste wurthiest being enuiron,
  And moste hightiest goodly of person.
  Ther fair Eglentine comyng hym Agayn,
  What-so she gan do wel be-cam certayn;

HVmbly And swetly salute she the kyng,
  For hir uncle was he naturally;
The kyng gentilly hir ther embrasing,
  After hyr gan kysse ryght full curtoisly.

2276 Anthony rent and tare all he could attain to,
2280 and at last all the Paynims were slain.
2282
2283 [Fol. 47 b.]
The king of Alsace bids that all the dead bodies should be laid upon a heap,
2287 and burnt; and thus was it done.
2289
2290 It was in revenge for the way in which the king of Cracow had burnt his brother's body.
2294 The Poitevins lodge well in the enemy's tents.
2296
2297 The king of Alsace and 100 knights ride off to the town.
2301
Eglentine comes to meet them,
2303
2304 and salutes her uncle.

[1] MS. "Traquo." [2] MS. "Garfons." [3] MS. "lefte."

He assures his niece that her father's death is well avenged;

"Fair nece," said the kyng, "here I you affy
That your fadir Deth auenged is well;
Be ye noyht wroth, displease you no dell.

[Fol. 48]

YE haue sayn hys deth uenged *with* gret fors;
The king of Craquo[1] for hym is ther ded;
Off your fader ne haue mynde ne remors,
Thys said king Craquo[1] brende haue I in-ded.

and that she should now comfort herself, since her enemies were fully repaid all their wages,

Comfort your-self, that is wit and womanhed;
iff Any demage don haue in contre,
Off ther wages thay truly payed be.

and had failed utterly in their design;

NO more after this nedith noght to doute;
Thay trowed under fote put the contre,
Now haue thai failled of ther art all-oute;

so that no shame or reproach now attached to her.

And of shame no-thyng certes haue not ye,
Wherfor reproche or repref shold be.
I haue wonnen that nedith you thys houre,
Acquired haue ye worship and honoure."

She replies that her heart is sorrowful when she thinks upon her father's death.

"HA, sir," she said, "good lord souerain,
My gentile uncle, and my ful swet frend,
When I me bethenke on my fader slayn,
A-non my hert *with*in wepingly is tend."

"Was not he my brother?" replies her uncle;

"Was not he my brother?" said the kyng at end;
"hyt behouith us sorow to lete passe,
Pray we god on hym haue mercy and grace.

"we will perform the funeral rites to-morrow, and pray for his soul."

HIs funerall obseque to morn we do,
And for hys good soule to our lord pray we."
Ryght as he sayd, don was al thyng tho.

A thousand pounds of wax were made for the occasion.

A thousand pound of wax fourged and made she,
As for the morn to dōn the obseque,
At sodayn warnyng had thay such huge light,
Anthony And Raynolde both were ther ryght;

[1] MS. "Traquo."

Ynly will[1] was don that which shold be do. 2339 [Fol. 48 *b*.]
Moche the Brehaignons gan vnto behold
The habilite of thes compaynouns tho,
Thes said wurthy men, thes to brethren hold,[2]
That myght noght be wery, yonge ne olde, 2343
As thaim vnto see so sette verily,
Large, long, gret, strong, streight, wel thaught truly. 2345

Then began the Brehaignons to behold these two worthy brethren;

and none were ever weary of looking at them.

Ther Abasshed And stonde were many 2346
Off thys lyons hurt that thai gan behold,
Setten in the skin strangely, lo! ful hy
Off hir Anthony, brother to Raynold;
For the hurt to thaim Appered ther unfold, 2350
Wherof euery man basshed was samfayl,
Off gretnesse of it had thay gret meruail. 2352

Many were astonished at the mark upon Anthony's face,

as it was very plain to the sight and large.

NEuer to hym saw non like ne egall, 2353
Then after said tho of town And cite
That raynold was habill man *with*-all,
As to discomfite well shappen was he
A rewme or[3] empire of full large contre; 2357
Saf but that o eye had, thay gan complayn,
Al other membres commanded thay certain. 2359

They also thought Raynold was well-shapen for conquering kingdoms,

and commended him for everything but his lack of one eye.

LEnger nedith noght to declare ne tell 2360
his obseque dõn without doubte Any,
Worshipfully And honorably wel.
Then the kyng gan hold A parlement truly, 2364
Where had tho was A noble company,
Withe full wurthy men As of Brehaignè,
The king saing, "Barons, understande me, 2366

The king of Brehaigne being honourably buried,

the king of Alsace holds a council,

Hit you behouith rewarde and behold 2367 [Fol. 49]
ho shall doo gouerne And rule this contre,

and advises them to choose a new king.

[1] "well" (?). [2] "bold" (?). See note.
[3] MS. "of." See note.

And ho your king shold be know now ye shold,
For presently now *with*-out king ye be."

They reply that it is his business entirely,

Ther hym Answering, "good ryght is to se, 2371
But the werke therof fully doth partain
And all the labour in you hole and plain. 2373

as he is the next heir, if Eglentine should die.

FOr gif Eglentyne were ended And gōn, 2374
you to enherite shold fall the contre;
The purueaunce therof lith you uppon,

It is therefore for him to choose whom she shall marry.

Auaunce you now, for hys loue in trinite,
So that thys contre well purueyed be 2378
Off on, chosen by you, that Eglentyne
May[1] marie and gouerne us and our line." 2380

The king inquires whom they wish her to marry.

The kyng Answered, "to my parte you say, 2381
To whom behouith my nece to mary?
Or for whom[2] wold ye? you beseech All-way,
That ye me say your Auise fully."

They reply that they leave it entirely to him.

"Sir, at your deuise," the Barons said surely, 2385
"Ryght As ye will, so certes will we doo;
No knight will resceiue but at your plesire, lo!

He replies that in that case they shall have for a lord one who is a worthy and famous knight.

Al the werke therof we put you uppon." 2388
"Then in goddis name, sires, lete me do"—
(This Answered thys noble kyng Anon)—
"On shal ye haue gentile And curtois to,
A man of goodnesse and of honour also, 2392
Whom ye shall resceiue As unto your lorde,
Is hardy wurthi knight, good of recorde; 2394

[Fol. 49 b.]

He reminds them that two brothers, both noble kings (knights?),

NOn other I will certes to you take. 2395
Then to brothers haue, noble kynges to,
And An hye Duke," to thaim thys the kyng spake,
"In your grette neede you aid hath also;

[1] MS. "Many." [2] MS. "whon."

To thys place comyn ferre contrees fro; 2399 and one of them a duke, have saved their city.
Deliuerd hath your noble Cite
Fro the paynimes And all your contre." 2401

RAynold called forth by the kyng Anon, 2402
Sayng, "vnto you will I couenaunt hold."
The kyng *with* uois hye[1] said, hurd manyon, He therefore calls Raynold, and tells him he will perform the promise he made him,
"Come forth here! Appere! come forth, Raynold!
Approche, As come nerre, swete frend, As man hold.[2]
here-beforn I haue you be promysing that he would make him a king.
That of this contre make you wold A kyng. 2408

Y will not you lye, but to it consent, 2409
For A king ne shold lye[3] ne be gabbyng;
My nece Eglentine to wife shal ye hent Raynold is to have his niece and all the kingdom.
With all [the] rewme And that to it longing.
Will ye hir now take, the land diffending? 2413
Of hyr And hyrs you lorde shall I make,
And all longith hir ye As for to take." 2415

When sir Anthony All thys vnderstode, 2416 Sir Anthony thanks the king heartily,
he taried noght to Answere redy,
he hartly thankyng thys noble king good
That fair Eglentine Raynolde shold mary.
"Off your fre kyndenesse And curtesy 2420 and promises that Raynold shall defend the country well.
The contre shall diffende, ruling well the lande;
For werre[4] he can well, knightly is off hand."

When thes Barons thys Answere had fong, 2423 [Fol. 50] The barons praise Our Lord and Our Lady
To our lorde thankes yeldyng full hyly,
And to oure lady in thar hertes strong,

[1] MS. "hyr." Fr. text, "en hault." [2] "hold" (!).
[3] MS. "by." Fr. text, "mentir."
[4] Or "werie;" but "werre" is right.

when they perceive how strong and large a man Raynold is.

Ther thay perceued hym strong, large, And hy;
The lande to gouerne thought wold pesibilly. 2427
Thys kyng ordayned his nece Eglentine
All that pertain shold A quene of ray fine. 2429

Raynold and Eglentine, being finely arrayed, are married;

And Raynold like-wise put hym in Aray[1] 2430
As pertained to kinges hye corage.
The mariage don And finished that day
Beforne the syght of all the Baronage;

and the marriage-feast lasted fifteen days.

Thys fest ther roiall fourged by tho sage; 2434
Hit days fiftene endured largely,
Full noble gyftes ther geuen frely. 2436

Never were fairer presents given than were then given by Eglentine.

NEuer was yeuen more fairer thinges, 2437
Robes, coursers, iew[e]lles forth present.
Also ther had thes honorous kinges

There were 1000 men there from the country, besides the "townish" people.

Ioustes, tornementes full excellent
In presence of ladies courtois And gent. 2441
Presently ther had A thousand of contre,
Without tho townishe peple, vnto se. 2443

Raynold gained great honour in the tournaments,

But Raynold ther-thens bare the grete honour 2444
That of Brehaignons lord was tho present;
Ther saing al with O wis[2] þat hour,

and is greeted with loud acclaim on all sides.

"Lif, lif oure noble kinge reuerent!
For A man hym know vnto All entent! 2448
And blissed be he hym A-place gan bring!"
At feftene dais end cessed the festing. 2450

[[Fol. 50 *b*.]

PEpole toke ther leue homeward to repaire, 2451
The ladies And damycelles All,
Off whom there was had manyon And fayre.

Duke Anthony takes his leave,

The Duke Anthony hys leue toke in hall,
In-to way hym sette at that enteruall, 2455

[1] In the margin, *Raynold marr[ies] Eglentyne, & ys kynge of brek[taine]*.
[2] "with O vois" (?). MS. "with .O. wis."

Towarde luxembrough, he and his mayne,
Which were full noble And gentile to see. 2457

and returns home to Luxemburg.

And in Brehaignè gan to byde And dwell 2458
Raynold the hye kyng, whome gan to honoure
All the wide contre courtoisly And well,
And by hys noblesse be such gouernoure,
Eche man his dedes preised hugely that houre. 2462
In Frise made gret werre Rainold er he reste
At ortholegne off the grett conqueste, 2464

Raynold acquires great honour as king of Brehaigne,

and carries on a great war in Friesland,

BI hys strength Denmarke gan he to acquere; 2465
In his tyme regned As man pusantly;
Full goodly leuid hys lif here entire;
And As that man non here more wurthy
Was not A-thys-side the romayns truly. 2469
As off hym here no more declare att All,
Off the Duke Anthony talke & speke me shall;

and also conquers Denmark.

We leave him now, and return to Duke Anthony.

Anthony the Duke, And off Ausoys the kyng, 2472
Which were courtois, gentile, connyng, And sage.
Fro Brehaignè tho ensemble comyng,
After at luxemborugh toke ther hostage.
Ther on fro other parted of viage, 2476
At luxemborugh king Ausois not wold sogourn,
Al streight in-to hys contre gan retourn.[1] 2478

Anthony and the king of Alsace arrive at Luxemburg, where they part;

and the king of Alsace returns home.

Anthony with hys wife gan vnto remayn, 2479
For litill while had thai maried be.
Ful moche hir louing *with perfecte* hert plain,
In wil and dede hir loued hertly he,
As any man cowde A-this-side the se. 2483

[Fol. 51]
Anthony remains awhile with his wife, whom he loved heartily.

[1] Here follows the catchword—"Anthony *with* hys wyffe."

They had two children, one named Bertran,

hys wyfe by hym had to cheldren perfight,[1]
On named Bertran, which was A good knight;[2]

and the other Lochier; who freed the passes of Ardennes (?), built Givet (?),

The younger had to name lochier the gud; 2486
he delyuerd straytes all and gyed
As of dardane, which plente had wood,
Many A good knight[3] ther fortefied;

and made the bridge of Mezieres over the Meuse.

ywon all-ther-first ther he edified; 2490
Vppon meuse the noble brigge made
Off meisiere, after A-conqueste had 2492

MAny other places by hug prowesse; 2493
Of al gret noblesse thys said man tho was.

Anthony conquers the Earl of Friburg, and passes through Austria, where he conquers many a region.

Anthony wered *with* strong besinesse
The Erle of Faborugh,[4] conquest gate by gras;
Passyng Aritrige,[5] many richesse made purchas, 2497
And all put in-to hys subiecc*i*on,
Conqueryng ther many A regyon. 2499

Bertran, Anthony's eldest son, marries the king of Alsace's daughter, and succeeds to his kingdom.

After, Bertran the eldeste son became, 2500
Within litell whyile, ful gret And ryght manly;
To wyfe toke the doughter of Ausoys kyng of fame;
A full good knight was, gentile And wurthy,
Entrepreignant, coragious, and hardy,[6] 2504
And more often-tymes than I can you say;
kyng of Ausoys was after the kynges day; 2506

[Fol. 51 *b.*] Thus he and his brother

Hys[7] doughter maried, As beforn gan tell, 2507
Which lady tho was of all the contre.
Bertran ther regned and gouerned welle.

[1] MS. "prefight."
[2] In the margin *y^e elder Bertran, Anton[y] sons, & y^e younger loch[y][er]*.
[3] "brought" (?). [4] "Friborugh" (?). [5] "Autrige" (?).
[6] In the margin, *Bertran kynge of Ausoys*.
[7] MS. "Hhys."

Thes brethren to regned As men fre,
That by strenght & myght put vnder fote in fe
All tho which thaim made trouble or noysance.
Off thaim will I reste me here this instance.

put underfoot all that troubled and annoyed them.
We shall speak of them no more.

TO Melusine shall I retorn Again,
And my mater ayen taken shall bee,
how that Raymound hym gouerned certain.
Ther full excellently regned he,
In places fele, in many A contre,
By strenght of swerd conquered of corage;
For hys noblesse All Barons gan do hym homage.

We return to Melusine.

Raymond reigned excellently, and all did him homage.

GAffray *with* grette toth becam man full grette,
Ryght myghty, strong, fers, whight, & full pusaunt;
In werring A strong werriour ryght fet;[1]
Dayly his vertu preuyngly gan haunt.
For he conquered Guedon the huge Geaunt,
And by knightly strenght hym ther discomfight,
Which Geaunt wasted the contre don ryght,

Geoffrey with the great tooth became a full great man;

and conquered and discomfited the giant Guedon,

Every man strongly gan hym to redoute,
To Rochel toke sauegarde, for all hym drad;
he pateysed[2] the contre thorugh-oute,
As well in meddes As at endys had.
When Geffray understod thes nouelles sprad,
And *þat* hym called *with* gret toth tho,
He swere hys oth Again hym wold he go;

for fear of whom all men were taking refuge in Rochelle.

When Geoffrey heard of this, he swore he would go against him

And in hert thought well hym to discomfight,
To the swete plesire of kyng of glory
Which yeuith all tho that wyll victory ryght.
His fader Raymounde full wo and sory,
For the Geant he doubted heuily,

[Fol. 52]
and discomfit him.

But his father Raymond was woful and sorry,

[1] "fet" (?).

[2] MS. "paceyfed."

and in fear for Geoffrey's safety.

For that he was so horrible grete;
Off Geffray in mynde ful huge doubte he get.

Geoffrey arms, and departs with nine others.

GEffray *with* gret toth Armed hym full preste,
hym-selfenn the tenth went to that partè,
Passyng forth hys way *with*out any ryste,[1]
Here shal I hym leue, no more now said be;

I shall return now to Melusine, who had yet two more sons,

Retorn Againe shall to Melusine fre,
The swet, the courtois, the benigne also,
Which after thys bare wurthy children to,

Ryght As we find A litterall scripture,
On called Fromont, Another Tierry.

one called Fromont, the other Thierry.

For-soth fromont was A good creature,

Fromont was a great clerk, and loved religion,

An huge gret clerke ful of clergy,
The Abbey of malers louyd feruently;

so that he wished to become a monk

Callyng to god, louyng relygyon,
So that to hym cam of deuocion

in the Abbey of Maillezais;

IN the said abbey A monke hym yilding.
Fro thens departed *with*out resting plain,

and therefore ran to his father, and besought him to consent to his wearing the monk's habit.

Vnto hys fader faste he cam rennyng,
A-non hym ther made thys requeste certane,
Be-sought the uesture of Malers myght attain,
On monke habite A monke hym to make.
When Raymound hurd thys, wo was for hir[2] sake;

[Fol. 52 *b.*]

Raymond marvels greatly, and bids him regard Anthony and his other brethren, who are all noble knights.

HE merueled gretly, to fromont[3] saing,
"Fair sone, how is thys? A! good lord hy!
Wil ye A monke be nedis be-comyng?
Reward and behold your brother Anthony,
And all your bretherin being full knightly,
Which ben so noble knightes to se!
Vnto be A monke certes may noght be;

[1] *Sic;* for "refte." [2] "his" (*!*). [3] MS. "formont."

SO god be pleased, monke shall ye noght be. 2570
Another ordre to you yiff I shall,
A knyght will you mak of full hye degre
As your brethren ben named ryght roiall."
Fromont Answered to hys fader all 2574
That he neuer wold be in ordre of knight,
Neither armes bere, but serue god to ryght, 2576

He ought not to wish for the order of monkhood, but of knighthood.

But Fromont says he would never take on himself this order,

"Prayng to oure lorde, vnto hys hy empire, 2577
For you, my moder, and my bretherin all;
Vnto be A mo[n]ke I you here require,
No-thing so moche coueyte ne desire shall
As in maillers Abbay be *per*petual. 2581
That place or cite haue I noght in hate,
For ther wold I use all my lifes fate. 2583

and covets nothing so much as to remain in the abbey for ever,

and spend all his life there.

BEsech you and pray, cause me not it refuse; 2584
Cherefull fader myne, in you al the hold."
Raymounde saw wele herd was it excuse,
To Melusine sent A messinger bold
Which As for that tyme the beste gan unfolde; 2588
Then the messynger gan declare and tel
Al that Raymounde had told hir eueridell, 2590

Raymond sees it is hard to refuse, and therefore sends a message about it to Melusine,

"HOu Fromont A monke of maillers wold be. 2591
Hastily Raymound sent, for ioy of it had non,
To ende that for Fromont ordayn shold she,
If pleased wold be, A crowne his hed uppon,
And þat claustrall monke he shold be made on 2595
In faire maillers, that ministre roiall,
That lorde for to serue which is eternall." 2597

[Fol. 53]

to the end that she should make Fromont a claustral monk in the royal abbey of Maillezais.

The fair Melusine Answerde hym tho; 2598
"Off my part ye go, vnto my lord say,
At hys plesaunce all ther-of will I doo,
Me submitte vnto hys ordinaunce all-way;

Melusine sends back an answer that she always submits to her lord's command,

and will obey gladly.

At hys plesire be I will, noght say nay;
For whatsomeuer pleasith hys hynes,
hit liketh me wel, hou-so he it dresse."

The messenger, arriving next morning, finds Raymond ready dressed, and delivers Melusine's message.

Thens the messinger retorned anon,
No lenger sogorne in that place ne wold;
Fro thens retornyng vnto Raymonde gõn,
A-morn him found Al redy rayd to behold;
Al hir answere the messinger hym told.
Ful gret ioy of hert in hym gan surmount,
Anon Raymounde called after Fromount.

Raymond tells Fromont that Melusine has left the whole matter at his own disposal,

HE saide to Fromont, "thi fader vnderstande;
Sir, for the haue sent thy good moder vnto,
Iff it pleased hir For to be know, and
Where hir will were monke shold be, or no.
Where-of the charge lefte to me hath, lo!
With the cure and charge enfeffed hath me.
Wherfor, Fromont, behold And see ye,

and he will therefore permit him

[Fol. 68 b.]

either to go to the abbey of Maillezais, or to "Monk" minster, or to "Brough-dieu;"

Iff nedis ye will take thys said habite
In mallers Abbay your liffes space;
Or other ministre to your appetite,
As in Merkminístre, which is A faire place;
Or iff ye will at Brough-dieu by grace;
In that ye desire A monke for to be,
yo may full well in on of thes thre.

or that, if he wished to be a canon, he should be canon of Poitiers and also of Tours in Touraine, and of Saint Martin's,

FOrsoth if ye will be A Chanon,
Of peiters a Chanon certes shal ye be;
Enherite ye shall As moche As thre Anon;
Toures in tourayn, poscede it shal ye,
Seint[1] Martins with the Graunt esglise in fe;
All shall be dõn ryght At my deuyse,
And therof do make dedes in best wise,

[1] MS. "Seing."

And of our lady of Chartres also. 2633 and of Chartres also. Or he might go to Paris if he pleased.
yff ye wyll of trouth fro parys noght scape,
Be noght Abasshed in it for to goo,
With the Pope will be quented for A Iape,
That nothyng shal be which me shall escape. 2637 Afterwards he should have a bishopric, or, if he liked, two,
After A Bisshupriche if it lust to craue,
Anot[h]er Bisshupriche Als shal ye haue, 2639

BE it pareys, Bewuais, or Aras." 2640 whether of Paris, Beauvais, or Arras. But Fromont chooses to be simply a monk of Maillezais, and nothing else.
Fromont said, "shal I be A Chanon?
Nay, nay, but A monke, by our lordes gras,
Off Maillers it is myn entencion.
Other will I noght off wordly good non 2644
Neuer at no day, while lif may endure,
For that place haue I chosin to me sure." 2646

Thys Fromont outring hys Fader vnto, 2647 [Fol. 51]
"Then off goddis part," to hym said Raymounde, Raymond at last accedes,
"Sin it plesith you, it shal bene ryght soo.
And loke that For us your prayers in founte."
Fromont Anon Answered that stounde, 2651
"yff it please our lord, my power do shall." and Fromont promises to
longer *parlement* of it nedith noght at all, 2653 pray for him.

The habite he toke, clothed opinly, 2654 He therefore takes the habit,
The monkes ther shewid great gentilnesse;
With huge nobley clothed was to ey and is richly clothed,
For hys fader loue, Raymounde sothlesse;
And for Melusine his moders noblesse. 2658
All ther hole couent gret ioy made ther ryght, and gladly welcomed by the
And him chered in beste wise thei myght. 2660 whole convent.

By processe therof ful ill affter came. 2661 This was the source of all the evils that afterwards befell the family.
Ther-for wer thei all after disherite
By Gaffray *with* gret toth; After had gret grame,

Which in hert was in full dolorous plite;
For Geoffrey, in his wrath, set the abbey on fire, For therof he had A full gret dispite, 2665
Without tarying to Mallers cam he,
hit brende and sett Afire by his cruelte 2667

and burnt there 100 monks on a certain *Tuesday*, BOth in the monkes, Abbot, and Abbay; 2668
A hundred monkes *with*in brende he tho.
Thys mischefe ther had in A tewisday,
the day of Mars the god of battle. For Mars was the god longing bataill to,
Vail that vail might, the monkys brend so. 2672
That don, no lenger ther wold noght sogoūrn,
Fro thens he comyng, faste gan to retorn. 2674

[Fol. 54 b.] Off this here shall leue, speking of melusine. 2675
Meanwhile Melusine was at Vouvent city, At vavuant cite redily she was,
To sonne And winde puttyng hir robys fine,
Which newly were come by fortunat cas,
Neuer Aforn bonde to such seruice bas. 2679
whither Raymond came to visit her., Bi that Raymounde was comyn to þe porte,
And full gladly sette ther to take disporte, 2681

They see two messengers come, who bring letters from Anthony and Raynold. Ther thay saw come forth messingers to, 2682
Which fele letters brought *with* breffes many
Of Anthony hys part, A pusant man tho,
And of Raynold the suffisant kyng hy.
Raymond reads them, To Raymounde thai tuke thes letters hastily, 2686
he thaim resceiued And the wax gan breke,
The letters gan rede As humble man and meke.

and laughs for joy, and calls Melusine, With a feruent ioy hys hert gan laugh tho, 2689
Melusine Anon forth-*with* gan to call.
She hid hir right noght, Anon cam hym to,
"Thys letters behald," said he ouerall.
who thanks him, and rejoices with him, "Raymound, I you thanke, my lord principall." 2693
Then vnto Raymound fair Melusine said,
"Certes, this goth well at thys houred braid. 2695

I thorughly know all thes nouell tidinges
  Full good and fair ben vnto vs this hour,
Wherof thanke our lord the king of kinges,
  Which oure sones han put to such honour.
  Thre[1] of tham ben thorugh knightly laboure
    Kynges full myghty, And on A duke ful hy;
    yut god be thanked, haue we here full ny

and praises the King of kings, who had raised her sons to so high honour.

On off our sones monke in An Abbay,
  Which daily for vs besechith god an hy;
At mallers hath hys byding thys day,
  Wher god he praith to socour vs truly,
  And that so myght pray to hys plesance dayly,
    That neuer vs haue in obliuion;
    For assigned hath will our sones echon.

[Fol. 55] She rejoices also to think that one of her sons is in an abbey,

and prays God daily to be mindful of them.

Thay bene well taught, inly wise and sage;
  Foure of tham yut ben *with* vs here bydyng,
Which in thys house ben mery *in* corage.
  Oure lord of hys grace so thaim be theching,
  That hyly thai may in tyme be regning,
    To that shall thay noght faut no-thyng truly,
    So god thaim aide and our lady mary!"

Four of her sons are yet at home:

but they will want nothing, if God and our Lady Mary aid them.

The nouell streight Aboute enuironee
  And knowen ouerall in eche place and cite;
Whereof reioyed euery man to se,
  Fiftene dais were ny in suche delite,
  Making ryght gret ioy, biding the same plite,
    Where-for ther frendes feste wold merily;
    In continuaunce thought do it hertly.

The glad news soon spread throughout every city,

and a fifteen-days' feast is held in celebration of it.

SO it cam and fill in a scaturday,
  That Raymounde loste the fair melusine, [lo!]
As at other days don had alway,
  But noght enquered hou the dede gan goo;

It befell on the Saturday, that Raymond lost Melusine, as he had often done before on that day of the week.

[1] MS. "There."

To what place she went, or qwhat she wolde do.
yn absence but good neuer she ne thought,
But all that to hys plesaunce myght be wrought.

[Fol. 55 *b.*] But that day, his brother, the Earl of Forest, arrived at Vouvant,

THo it cam and fill As in that mornyng,
That hys brother, which tho Erle of foreste was,
For ther Fader dede long biforn being,
At vavuent that day riuage gan purchas.

the day being without wind and clear.

The thyme fair, *with*out wynde hye or bas,
The morni[*n*]g ryght fair shuwyng, inly clere,
Raymounde his brother saw com drawing nere;

Raymond received him brotherly;

HE him resceiued uerray brotherly;
But after it cam to gret mischef preste.[1]

and many barons and ladies came to the feast which was then being held.

Vnto this feste cam Barons full many,
Which notable were And ryght ful honeste,
Ther welcomyng the Erle of foreste,
Als of lades cam grett fusion,
Whos comyng was the festes encheson.

Then said the Earl to Raymond, "Bid your wife appear."

THen hym said the Erle of the wild foreste,
"Raymounde, fair brother, now me here entend,
lete your wife appere here at thys said feste."
Raymounde Answerd, As not wold condissend,

But Raymond says she shall appear the next day.

"To-morne shall hir se, chere brother And frend;"
Anon conueid to sitte att the table,
Thys fest plener And ryght delectable.

After the feast is over for that day,

AFter Anon As thai dined hade,
And fro the table reised up tho were,

the Earl draws Raymond aside,

The Erle of foreste Raymound by hand lad,
A litill drawing fro other apart there,
Thys gan he to say ther *in* this manere:—

[1] MS. "prifte."

"Raymounde, fair brother, said is *in* good feith;
ye be enchaunted, As the peple seith. 2758

and tells him that the people say he is bewitched,

I can noght say how ye may bere the shame. 2759
Men sayn ouerall, brother, I you say,
ye not so hardy (in wreth ne in game)
Of your wif enquere, certes, at no day,
(Which vnto you is gret diffame Alway), 2763
To what place she torn ne hoder wyll go,
Or in what manere hir gouerneth, lo! 2765

[Fol. 56]
and that he is never so hardy as to ask his wife *where she goes to* on the Saturday;

And what knowen ye what she doth *þat* day? 2766
Men sain ouerall, so god my soule saue,
That all disording is she All-way;
That day hir body Anothir man shall haue,
To you trayteresse, other so to craue; 2770
And som other sayn she is off the fayry.
Go thys day, brother, And know it veryly; 2772

also that it is said she is unfaithful to him on that day.

He therefore advises him to know the truth,

Putteth payn to haue off it knowleching; 2773
To go And enquere good is ye do so;
For hide shold noght she As fro you no-thing,
I say it yow now As my brother vnto,
Now do As ye seme beste vnto be do; 2777
I beleue she doth you shame And outrage."
Raymound blusshed, changing his corage, 2779

because she ought to hide nothing from him.

Raymond blushes for anger,

So malice And wroght, wiste noght what to say;
For wo And heuinesse full faste swatte he.
Anon went thens, hys swerd fet *þat* day;
Full well he knew where his wife made entre;
There he faste knakked where he had noght be; 2784
There A dore tho perceiued he certain
Off yre Aforn hym *with* hys eyes twain. 2786

and sweats for sorrow.

He seizes his sword, and hurries on till he sees before him a door of iron.

[Fol. 56 b.]

IN moche thyng thought, And after thought Anon,
That hys wife had do som misdede tho,
And towardes hym som wrong or treson.

Drawing his sword from the scabbard, he drove the point against the iron door till he at last pierced it.

Then drawing his sword the[1] scaberge fro,
The poynt gayn the dore put he ther-vnto,
So he shifte And smote here And ther so faste,
That the yren dore persed at the laste.

Alase! full ill labored was that day!
At the perced hole in beheld *with* eye

Looking through the hole thus made,

To know what ther was besied faste ay;
Certes ouersone know it shal surely,
And then in hert gret dole shall haue truely!

he perceived Melusine bathing,

At the hole beheld, perceyuing full welle
Melusine, hou she bathed euerydell,

her upper part white as snow,

UNto hir nauell shewing ther full white,
like As is the snow A faire branche vppon,

and her fashion most fair,

The body welle made, frike in ioly plite,
The visage pure, fresh, clenly hir person,
To properly speke off hir fac*c*ion,

but beneath she had a serpent's tail!

Neuer non fairer ne more reuerent;
But A taill had beneth of serpent!

It was great and horrible, barred with blue and silver.

GRet And orrible was it verily;
With siluer And Asure the tail burlid was,
Strongly the water ther bete, it flasshed hy.

Raymond, perceiving this, cried to God,

When that Raymound perceiued this cas,
Which neuer beforn to sight gan purchas
In such A state to bath, ther hym blissed faste,
Gretly doubted, cried to god in haste,

[Fol. 57] though he could scarcely utter a word. In order to stop the hole, he cut a little piece of cloth,

BUt noght-for-that so moche of drede had,
That vnnethes myght outre wurde ne say.
But to Ende the hole were stopped & faste made,
A litell cloute cute he *with*-out delay.

[1] MS. "ther;" Fr. text, "*du fourrel.*"

With wax melled, stopped the hole Alway,
That by it myght noght man perceiue no-thyng.
Fro thens departed he tho, faste going.

and fastened it in with wax.

Towarde hys brother thought he to repaire,
Dolorous of hert, full of wrath that stounde.
Hys brother the erle knew at hys retrair
That he better wo in hertte had profounde,
Trowing uerily that his wif had found.
"your wife, had she don gain you As men said,
In som dishoneste place where he[1] shold no braid?"

He returns to his brother, who, seeing him sad, asks him what he has discovered, and where he had found her.

Then Raymounde gan speke *with* vois full hautain,
And hym said, "therof ye lye vntrewly,
By your fals throte And youre teeth plain!
In An ill houre here ye entred in surely;
Fro my hous ye goo *with* [y]our felony;
Off my lady no more[2] speke ye for shame,
Sche is pure And clene Als *with*out diffame.

Raymond tells him he lies in his throat and in his teeth, and bids him depart; for that his lady is pure.

A more wurthier woman is ther non,
ye haue made me do such A manere thyng
Torn contrary will Again my person.
A-non part here; hens, foule rebaude being,
For, by my feith, full litill is failling
That presently here that I you not sle;
Forth depart you hens, by concell of me.

He tells him that, unless he departs, he will slay him; and that he advises him to go at once.

Cursed be the hour that euer heder came,
And that tho wurdes saide were Any wise!
Neuer toward me retorn noght for shame!"
Raymounde semede all witlese to deuise,
All merueled that gan it aduertise,[3]

[Fol. 57 *b.*]
He curses the hour in which his brother came, and seems all witless.

[1] "fhe" (?). [2] MS. "nomore."
[3] MS. "aduerfite," *a curious inversion.*

The Earl, sore amazed,

That to his brother so spake and saide.
The Erle, Abasshed And foule dismaide,

departs home, cursing the hour in which he thus spoke out.

There thens retournyng in-to his contre,
Full often crussing[1] the hour and the day
That thes wordes scapid or mouthed he.
hys brother perceued he haue shold ne may

He laments bitterly that he has made Raymond so wroth.

Neuer pees ne lufe for this gret affray;
More neuer ne[2] was woer at no stounde
Then off that he hade wrethed so Raymounde.

Afterwards Geoffrey came, and slew the Earl,

HE stroied And made exile the contre;
For when Gaffray *with* gret toth it knew,
Ryght deliuerly ther Ariued he,
Sette it Afire, the Erle gan sle ther trew

and gave away the country he thus gained to one of his brothers.

Full vilously *with* huge shame to vew;
After the contre yaffe of the Foreste
To on hys brother, so gete by conqueste;

Off the foreste Erle made hym entirely.
Off Gaffray *with* gret toth leue shall now present,

But to return to Raymond.

And retorn I shall to Raymounde fully,
Which *with* heuinesse sore hym doth torment.

He wept and wailed, and waxed pale, having no end of his grief.

He wepte, he wailed, wofully lament;
Wonder pale he waxe, wanting his colour,
For ende hade he none of this grett doloure.

[Fol. 58] 'Alas!" he cried, "there is no poorer man on earth than I am!

"Alas! alas!" thys ther saide Raymounde,
"A more purer man in the wordle ne is
Off verray trought then I am this stounde!

Alas! Melusine! I have lost you!

Alas! Melusine! this day haue doñ Amys,
That by my diffaute you haue I loste this!"
(For sorow therof so quaked and swat),
"Alas! shall I you leue, loue delicat,

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] "he" (?).

MI swet hert, my good, my loue, And my life? 2878
By the, full dolorous fortune,
Now shall I lese my ioyous thoughtes pensif,
Which me hast made such As I contune.
I shal, lo! caste me in som pitty hume. 2882
What shal I now doo, lord god glorius?
Neuer shal I lagh,[1] neither be ioyous 2884

Now shall I lose my joyous thoughts, and cast myself into some pit.

Never shall I laugh again!"

With that swete lady whom I loued so. 2885
She was my solas, my ioy in ech stede,
My plesaunce, my comfort, my delite to!"
Ther hym dispoilled, entring in his bed;
But slepe myght he noght when that he was led;
he sighed, soghed, wepte *with* teres many,
"lord, wat shal I doo, lord?" said, "lete me dy!

Concluding his lament, he undresses and goes to bed; but cannot sleep.

He sighs, and cries,

HA! swet Melusine, yf I you this lese, 2892
I shall go vnto som desert Cite,
hermite or recluse become, god to plese,
yn som forain place where non enchabite.[2]
ha! Melusine, my hertes Appetite, 2896
Fair lady, my hert, my loue, my plesaunce,
That you this shold lese by such ill mischaunce!"

"Ha! Melusine, if I lose thee, I shall go to some desert place.

Ha! Melusine! that I should thus lose you!"

The hier off his hede tere of with gret pine, 2899
With fist his brest smote, heuily gan mourn,
Full ofte wailled, by-weping Melusine;
In his bede turny[n]g, And efte gan retorn,
In on estat ne myght he noght sogourn; 2903
here on bakke laide, efte the bely vppon,
Torning And wendyng euer enuiron. 2905

[Fol. 58 *b.*]

He tears the hair off his head, smites his breast, and wails.

He turns from side to side on the bed.

Then in-to chambre Melusine made entre; 2906
When she was comyng, forth-with Anon
Swetly all naked hir dispoilled she,
Courteisly she went ther the bede vppon,

Melusine then returns, undresses, and lies beside him.

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] *Sic* in MS.

She embraces him, and finds his neck cold,

With Raymounde she lay in conclusion; 2910
She enbrasing hym, collyng amouresly,
Fynding his nekke cold *with* all the body 2912

as he was all uncovered.

A cause that he was All uncouered tho, 2913
And that by greuous beting And turnyng,
Full ill was he raid, plonged sor in wo.

Softly she whispers to him, "Are you feeling anguish?

In base wise Melusine ther hym sayng,
"Dolour or anguish be ye ought feling? 2917
An ouer pale colour haue ye to eye;

Tell me the truth, I pray.

Me say ye the trought, besech you hertly. 2919

Am I not your love? tell me all.

Alas! Am I noght your loue eueridell? 2920
Fro me shold ye noght hide no maner thing.
Say me how it is, hele you shal I welle,
For no wordly thyng not your-selfe hyndryng.

Confess if you feel any ill, and I will cure you."

Confesse ye me if Any il be feling, 2924
Delyuer you shall A-non openly,
All hole shall ye be here now presently." 2926

[Fol. 59] Hearing this, he rejoices, thinking she knows nothing.

When Raymound tho wourdes with eres gan here,
Reioyed merely, thought no-thyng she knew
Off all that dede which had do entire;

Yet she knew all, but would not speak of it, seeing his repentance.

yut knew she it wel, thow noght said of-new,
For he discouered noght (but kepe it trew) 2931
The dede vnto no *person* that instaunce,
And that therof he had uerray repentaunce 2933

Raymond says, "I have felt great heat:

A hundred tymes more then I can say. 2934
Raymound hir said, "gret hete haue I had
In maner of continuaunce alway.

and now the fever has changed to a shivering."

Now is this brennyng whereof Am Adred
Torned and changed, into coldnesse lad." 2938
"helth shall ye purchas," unto hym said she;
"Stoned ne basshed of no thyng be ye." 2940

She embraces and kisses him, and he feels at ease.

She embrased hym And swetly gan kisse, 2941
Where-*with* Raymound approched gret ease.

long tyme he regned in such state of blisse,
And such lif gan led, ech other gan please.
Off ther beyng here will I leue and cease, 2945 I must now leave them.
To declare and say make me will redy,
As of my samplere to procede plainly. 2947

Then this to my mater here retourne I. 2948
Gaffray with long toth gouerned hym so, Geoffrey goes to Guerrand to seek the giant,
That to Guerrande[1] Gaffray faste gan to hy,
Demaundyng the way the Geant vnto
Where he myght be founde, to fight *with* hym wold go; 2952
The Roche perceiued myghty and pusant, and at last sees the rock whereon
Wherto repaired thys cruel Geant, 2954 his castle is built.

CAlled Guedon,[2] that so orgulous was, 2955 [Fol. 59 *b*.] Geoffrey alights, arms himself, and again mounts,
Gret, thikke, longe, stronge, meruelous to se.
Gaffray fro his hors discended apas,
Armed hym A-non, lenger bode not he.
When Armed he was, to hors lepe a-ye, 2959
The geant doubted noght, A staf toke of stile, making fast to his saddle-bow a steel
Which at hys arson made faste for A-whyle. 2961 mace.

And sin After sesid his shild and shoke, 2962 He takes also his shield and his iron spear, and leaves his men,
Which besides it had shildes many.
After his spere of sharpe yren toke,
Sauyng goddys grace, gret thyng toke surely.
hys men commaunded vnto god an hy. 2966 commending them to God on high.
But for thare master wepte thay in *þat* place;
Thay trowed neuer se hym in liffes space. 2968

GEffray thaim said, "stil you, noght dismay; 2969 He bids them farewell, and departs alone,
I beleue I shal this Geaunt discomfight
By aid of god And hys moder this day."
Anon than Geffray parted fro thaim ryght,
Adieu tho thaim said, thens went Alone to fyght.

[1] MS. "Gueruande."
[2] MS. "Suedon;" see l. 3011.

ascending the mount to reach the castle.

The Roche passed he, goyng vp Anon
Vnto the castell, sette the mount vppon. 2975

He waits at the drawbridge, and in a shrill voice defies the giant.

Unto the brigge cam, *with* shil uois gan cry, 2976
"Where Art thou, fals traytour, where Art thow?
To deth shalt thou be cast by me truly,
Which in my contre And in my lande now
So long were haste had; to god I A-uow, 2980
Neuer here-hens shal I depert no day
Till uenquished or dede haue the I may." 2982

[Fol. 60] The giant, hearing him, rises and puts out his head,

On A donIon hid was this huge Geaunt, 2983
In the Galaries being ther *with*-in,
The uois hurd of hym noble and pusaunt,
hastily Anon vp rising gan to win;

showing his visage and his chin.

his hede put he out, uisage large and chin, 2987
(Which was All so gret As A bole his hede),
Gaffray *with* gret toth be-held hym in-ded; 2989

The giant thinks himself sorely disgraced that a single man should wish to fight him,

HOrrible gret was, A forwoxen grome, 2990
Such Another neuer had he sain;
Which his goddis swere that full hym come
Sore uilloined gan hym hold certain,
When a soule man lust *with* hym were plain, 2994

and at once arms himself,

And into hys hous to seke hym comyng.
lightly hym armed, Anon discendyng; 2996

taking a falchion of steel, three flails of iron, and three great sledge-hammers.

A Fauchon of stele went he unto take, 2997
Well grounde or whet, but tendre was it noght;
After flaelles thre[1] of yre toke for hys sake,
In hys bosom put thre gret slegges wrought;

He lowers the draw-bridge, and issues out.

The bridge Aualed, to issue out thought. 3001
Ful gret and large was formed of body;
When in his being mustred unto ey, 3003

[1] MS. "ther;" Fr. text, *trois*.

Fiftene fote long this Geaunt was expresse: 3004 He is fifteen feet long;
And when Gaffray nehed hym in-dede,
Strongly merueled of his huge gretnesse,
But yut for all that of hym noght gan drede, yet Geoffrey fears him not,
Neither fere had for gretnesse, lenght, ne brede, 3008 but defies him boldly.
But that Anon diffied hym boldly,
And towarde thys Geaunt drew hym lightly. 3010

"What art thou?" said Guedon, "trusse hens," [Fol. 60 b.]
said he. "Who art thou?" asks Guedon.
Hym he answered, "sir," said without blame,
"Gaffray with long toth so men callyn me; "I am Geoffrey with the long tooth."
At no day ne hour neuer hid my name;
Thine[1] hed come to haue, diffende þe for shame!"
"Caytiff," said[2] Guedon, "wat caste thou to do? "Wretch," says Guedon, "I will
The will sle[3] Anon with o soule stroke or to; 3017 slay thee with one sole stroke.

Hens ye now retorn, my fair sone," he saide, 3018 I pity you," says Guedon,
"Off the in my hert renneth gret pite, "and advise you, as a friend, to depart."
your yongly person seing at this braide,
And that ye er or[4] gret habilite;
Gaffray, go hens of frendlyhede," said he. 3022
hym Answered he, "foly, is no nay; But Geoffrey bids him rather pity
haue thou pite non but of thi life this day, 3024 his own life,

For without diffaute she shall ende Anon. 3025 which should soon end,
Fro keruing of my swerd here now diffend the; as he cannot escape.
In mortall deth dye shall here thi person;
Escape maiste thou noght in no wyse fro me."
Thys Geaunt noght told of hym in no degre, 3029
Gaffray cam faste contring the Geaunt then, Geoffrey advances to the encounter,
As moche And As faste As hys courser myght ren.

[1] MS. "Thime." [2] MS. "And." [3] MS. "fhe."
[4] "ar of" (?).

and overthrows the giant.

Now god hym socour! in breste ther hym sett,
Thys cruel Geant A fers stroke yaff he;
By hys wurthinesse so gan do and bette,
*With*out any demage he caste don to se.

The giant, astonished, rises up, and tells him his stroke shall be repaid.

All astoned of that aduersite,
Thys Geaunt rosse vp; "hast thou noght," he said,
"Take me such offering, it yild shall be this braide."

[Fol. 61] Being wrath at having been thus struck down by a single blow,

On fote hopte he up, malice and wroth was
That don to grounde so caste in that Ile
By a soule stroke of knyghtly manace.

he seizes his steel falchion,

Then he in hand toke hys fauchon of stile;
As Gaffray wold torn, sogernyng no whyle,

and cuts the legs off Geoffrey's horse.

The fauchon of stele, the Geant in hand,
Off Gaffray curser the legges trenchand.

The horse falls, Geoffrey leaps off,

The courser fill don, fro hors lepte[1] Gaffray,
No-thyng hym lette, Fro scaberge his swerd drew;
To the giant went *with* raundon gret that day,

and at a blow nearly severs the giant's left arm.

The sinistre Arme smote he vppon trew,
Ryght As belonged to knightly uertew,
hys fauchon he made to fall the hand fro,
That neuer After ned had non ther-to;

But Guedon, to end the fight, deals Geoffrey a blow on the helm with his flail,

FOr Gaffray such stroke sette, he failled noght;
In the hanche sour hurt grenously he was,
But to hym Guedon Approched ny, thought
So that mortall were ther hym gan purchas,
his flael ther toke myghtly A-place,

which almost fells him,

To Gaffray therof gaf on the helme hy,
All Astoned Almoste At ground truly.

Geoffrey runs and fetches his steel mace,

Into his scaberge the swerde put Gaffray,
To his courser ran, his staffe ther takyng,

[1] MS. "lepete;" but see l. 3070.

To thys Geant caste A huge stroke that day,
Stager And stomble made *with* hys sore striking;
hys Flael fro hand caused ther fleing. 3064
On off hys [s]legges[1] Guedon[2] toke in haste,
To Gaffray wightly And sharply it caste, 3066

and with it strikes the giant so that he stumbles and drops the flail.

Guedon seizes a sledge-hammer,

With the said stroke cast of myghty vertew 3067
Off Gaffray the stafe or axe gan attain,
Fro hys handes made to fle and remew.
This Giant lepte forth, the stafe toke certain;
To Gaffray noght had twixste hys handes twain,
But Gaffray his swerd gan to draw Anon,
And vppon the Arme it sett of Guedon;[3] 3073

[Fol. 61 *b.*]

and with it knocks Geoffrey's mace out of his hand,

and then picks it up.

Geoffrey draws his sword,

And so huge A stroke geuyng hym was tho, 3074
That quite clene the arme share off throughtly.
Gaffray full manlly ther Auenged so
Off Guedon[2] the Giant strong and myghty,
Where Arme, stafe, or Axe, done fill hym ryght ny.
Where-thorught for wo the saide Geant suatte,
For Anguissh And sorow lefte his Arme & bede.[4]

and shears Guedon's arm completely off.

Down fall all his weapons.

Full moche the Geant was Astoned tho, 3081
When off hys Armes on had loste of-new;
haused his swerd, trowing Gaffray smitte to;
But the stroke uoided And somwat withdrow,
A litell blenched enmyddes the medew, 3085
Vppon his legge smote *with* swerde wonderly,
A meruelous stroke gaffe, Ato carf[5] hys thy. 3087

The giant strikes at Geoffrey with his sword, but he slips aside,

and with a marvellous stroke cuts his foe's thigh right in two.

This Giant fill, crying his goddis aide; 3088
Gaffray A stroke gaffe tho his sculle vppon,
he offeryng so, the helme rent And foulle raide,

The giant falls.

Geoffrey cleaves his head to the teeth,

[1] MS. has "legges," a notable blunder.
[2] MS. "Gouedon." [3] MS. "Suedon."
[4] Indistinct. [5] MS. "craf;" but see l. 3092.

The helme cutte And rent till the teth Adon;
The swerde so cuttyng, the hede carf Anon. 3092

and, seizing his Saracen horn, blows it loudly.

After that hys horne sarisin toke he,
hyly it blowyng times to or thre. 3094

[Fol. 62] Geoffrey's men come up, and find the giant slain.

HIs peple the sounde full wel vnderstode, 3095
To hym hied, taried noght certain;
Enmyddes the medew founde where he stode,
Thys cruell Geaunt which þat he had slain.
When this meruelous Geant ther was sain, 3099

They marvel at his length and breadth.

Off his faccion Astoned thay were,
hys lenght, his brede was so ouermette there. 3101

The lords compliment Geoffrey highly,

TO Gaffray the lordes toke vnto say, 3102
"Off this Geaunt huge misgouernaunce
ye vnto thys man meued were thys day,
As hym to uenquish thoght in remembraunce,
Thys enemy discomfite this instaunce; 3106

and tell him he has done "an inly good deed."

Truly ye haue doñ An inly good ded."
Gaffray Answered ther, "faire lordes," sed, 3108

Geoffrey says he has but done his duty.

"HIt us behouid, were it wrong or ryght; 3109
For it putt abake I ne myght, parde;
My lif to diffend I shold, yff I myght;
And so haue I done, our lord preised be,
hym conquered haue here As ye may see." 3113

They enter the castle, which is well built and fai .

They entred there, to castell gan repare,
Which was well billed to sight, And full faire.

MEn all this knew thorugh that region, 3116
For-why shold we then speke therof more?
huge ioy and solas therof made and don,

Huge joy is made both by small and great,

Bothe tho gret and small gret ioy made therffor,
That the Geant was by Gaffray don bore, 3120

because the giant was discomfited and stone-dead.

So discomfite, standede, And all cold;
hug[e] ioy and gladnesse in contre tho hold. 3122

Off this lande made lorde he by this uiage,
Wherby manly had ended the werre tho.
Ther-thens to uavuent A man sent in message,
Which full courtois was, inly wise also;
Thys said messinger Raymounde said unto,
That by Gaffray the Giant fers and bold
Was descomfite and put to deth, he told.

[Fol. 62 *b.*] Geoffrey is made lord of that country.

A messenger tells the news to Raymond,

RAymounde laughed tho, hym preising faste there.
Melusine *with*out othir tarying
Made right good chere vnto the messinger;
When hym chered had *with* all maner thyng,
A ryche gifte hym gaffe; Raymounde tho writyng,
Peper And wexe toke to hys secretory,
Anon A letter conceued hastily,

who laughs; and Melusine gives the messenger a rich gift.

He next takes paper and wax to his secretary, and dictates a letter,

The tenure of which was well deuysed;
By Raymounde seled were thai in *þat* place;
So forth send by Raymounde, so auised,
Vnto Gaffray which in Guerrande tho wace,
"hou that Fromount his uesture gan purchace
At Maillers, And ther resceiued gan say,
And that A monke was in that saide Abbay;

which he seals and sends to Geoffrey in Guerrand,

telling him how Fromont had become a monk in the abbey of Maillezais,

Where that he wold use All his liffes space,
And for his frendes pray to god An hy,
For that it was an inly deuout place."
Alas! thes letters il hour wrought truly,
For thai torned to the contrary.
He therthorugh loste the fair Melusine,
Whom that he loued *with* parfite loue fine.[1]

where he would spend his life in prayer for his friends.

Alas! this letter was written in an evil hour, for thereby did Raymond lose Melusine!

NOw shall we leue at thys tyme the lyffe
Of Raymounde the swete And courtois only,

[Fol. 63] I shall leave the life of Raymond and Melusine,

[1] Here follows the catchword—"Now ſhall we leue at *þis* time."

Of Melusine als hys ful noble wyfe,
Which at þat hour was A woman worthy.
and speak of Geoffrey, who was now in Guerrand country, Of Gaffray *with* gret toth declare shal I; 3155
After thys I shall you outre and say;
In Guerrande contre tho was Gaffray, 3157

where he was royally feasted for killing the giant. All the contre hym fested roially 3158
For thys Geant sake that he distroid there:
Gret ioy ther had of peple ful many.
While he was there, came a messenger from Norbeland to him, and having found him *With* that cam to hym ther A messengere,
To gaffray comyng in humble manere, 3162
Fro Norbelande After Gaffray demaunding
Where þat he was; many him shewing, 3164

and presented his letters, he proceeds to tell of a giant who had come to Norbeland, To Gaffray *p*resented thes letters there. 3165
"My lord," he said, "for goddys hy mercy,
That it myght you ples me vnderstande here.
Vnto Norbeland is comyn truly
A man more gretter then other Any, 3169
savage, cruel, and dangerous, Which is A Geaunt, wonder meruelous,
Ouerthwart cruel and ryght perilous; 3171

and had brought war on all the country. He hath brought were [on] all our contre. 3172
He begs Geoffrey to help them speedily, as the nobles of the land have great trust in his might. Wherfor I am come to seke you thys hour,
Here requeryng you for all loue may be,
ye of Gentillesse wold be ther socour;
Tho of contre, the lordes of honore, 3176
In your *p*erson haue ryght gret affiaunce,
Wilnyng you to come hastly thys instaunce. 3178

[Fol. 63 b.] Urging him he adds that all the country will be given up to him, as he may see from the letters. So that ouer-lang ye mow noght tary; 3179
For you will thai yild all the hole contre,
Ther landes to hold of your estate hy.
For sothe your letters, if opened be,
ye may wel know the trouth And ueryte. 3183
The people trust wholly to him to destroy the giant. Thay haue caste ther loote certes you vppon,
Off thys strong Geaunt cause distrucc*i*on." 3185

GEffray the letters After breke and rayd, 3186
Fro[1] wurde unto wurd, And sithen hym said,
"Messinger, trouth is, no ly on you had;
By the holy crosse swere I you this braid,
That men cal Geffray *with* long toth displaid 3190
hens wold noght remeue for lande ne hauour,
But for the contre only to socour. 3192

On reading the letters, Geoffrey swears that he will go,—

but it is not for lands or possessions, but for the sake of helping the people,

FOr off the peple haue I gret pitte, 3193
For the good zele haue to cristine entyre,
Wherin I haue grette affinite:
Als honour And worship to acquire.
Off me the werre the Giaunt doth desire, 3197
Anon shall I go hym Assail quikly."
To thys forth-progresse Geffray made redy. 3199

on whom he has pity, because he has great zeal for Christianity.

Also he would win honour; therefore he prepares at once.

A messynger the men tyme gan discend 3200
Off hys fader part, forth-*with* hym taking
The letters, al which that he hym send.
Geffray thaim rad, And when he was knowing
That his brother was A monke hym yilding, 3204
leuer had hym be honged were As thef;
Wherof to hert had dole of gret myschef: 3206

Meanwhile a messenger from his father brings him letters to tell him that his brother has become a monk, at which he is angry and sad.

HOu-were-it that ioy of hys fader had, 3207
And of Melusine his moders welfaire,
Thay were hole and sounde, of *þat* was he glad.
When of hys brother Fromont hurd declare, 3210
That he monke was shorn, dole had And gret care;
Off the dispite hys witte gon And loste,
Vermail rede As blode, *with* wreth tende hys
goste; 3213

[Fol. 64]
He was pleased to have good news of his father and mother,

but he lost his wits at the disgrace of Fromont being a monk, and he grew as red as vermilion.

Off malice And wreth had in his body 3214
he uomed And swatte, A swine resembling;
Neuer man non hym beheld ueryly
But of huge drede ther he were tremblyng.

Foaming like a swine with rage, he made all afraid who came near him.

[1] MS. "For." Fr. text, "de mot en mot."

Then in his passion he exclaims, "These vile monks

"Ther tho ill," he sayd, "thys lechorus being,
Thes fals monkes, which full uicious be,
Thay haue now, by the holy trynite,

have surely enchanted my brother, to make him turn monk and have a shaven crown. But they shall suffer for it. The errand into Northumberland must be put off a while.

My brother Fromont haue enchanted sure,
A monke haue hym made, certes, in ther town.
To thaim might yut come som misauenture:
hym haue thay shorn *and* made to bere A crown;
In shall tham put into gret mischef down.
Of this other erande bide Awhile will I;
Thys monkes will se, long er that I dy.

I will go at once and burn up all these monks together."

He bids the messengers from Northumberland await his return, when he will go with them as he promised.

FErre of shall noght be or to that place go,
Thaim shall I brenne to-geders in A fire."
Tho messengers of norbelande said to:
"you commaunde al abide me here entire,
For shortly with you go wil at desire,
That cruell Geaunt As to discomfight,
So shall it be don As graunted haue ryght."

[Fol. 64 b.] They promise to guard his house in his absence, and to wait till his return.

Thai, which durst noght with-say hys hy renon,
hym Answered: "we will, lord honourous,
Sin it plesith you, it is good reson:
In your absence, schall warde and kepe þis hous,
Without departing, to be laborous
Till the tyme approche A-gane you shal se."
Geffray answered: "wele saide here haue ye;

He sends them away without further parley,

GO forth," said he, "with-out sayng-Again."
To hys peple said, "vnto hors ye goo;
I shall nothyng spare ualey ne montain,
Till that I come Maillers Abbay vnto."
Then Geffray hym put forth on hys way tho,
Thys fers, cruell, hardy, the Tewisday,
So rode that he ryued at the Abbay.

and summoning his people, rides with all speed till he reaches Maillezais Abbey on a Tuesday.

The monkes were in their chapitre-hous, 3249 He finds the monks in the chapter-house.
And Geffray Anon entred ther within:
When thes monkes knew thys man honorous,
To ryn him Again Alfaste gan begin,
As wel gret As small towar[d] hym gan wyn, 3253
All the hole couent ther hym saluting,
Full gret ioy thay had As of hys comyng. 3255 They are delighted at his coming.

Then to the abbot, which that balled was, 3256 But roughly and angrily he demands of the Lord Abbot why they have so foolishly made his brother leave chivalry and turn monk.
hath Gaffray spokyn rude and bustesly,
As A man chaufed[1] *with* yerfull manace.
"Ha! dan Abbot," toke hym to say an hy,
"Abbot, forwhy haue ye made folyly 3260
My brother A monke in thys said Abbay
To leue chiualry, takyng your ordre Ay? 3262

IN good feith, full is mused and thought, 3263 [Fol. 65] He threatens them all with death,
For your mortall deth ye tho gan purchace:
ye schal dy for your wykkydnesse wrought,
Both ye And all your couent in thys place." 3266
Then sore he grint And strayined his teeth apace. and grinding his teeth savagely, puts them into great dread.
All tho which were the Abbay within
Thai had gret drede, seing hym so begin. 3269

Thes monkes wepte, And sighed ful sore there 3270 They weep and sigh for fear,
Of the fereful drede which that time thai had.
Then dan Abbot of the hous gan answere, and the Lord Abbot declares it has all been done of Fromont's own free will.
"Sir, by me noght was it forth broght ne lad;
By hym-selfen was it, trow I shall ful sad; 3274
he so meued *with* good deuocion
As Entre into this religion. 3276

HEre Fromont may se ye, lo! personally, 3277 He may see Fromont, who, coming to his brother,
yff it like or please you hym demaunde, lo!"
Fromont thys hym said, "brother, verily

[1] MS. "chamfed. Fr. text, "eschauffez."

bears out the Abbot's account, and adds that he will be nothing but a monk.

By non is it wrought, but by my-selfe do:
A monke for to be, Am, And shall be to; 3281
Wher *with*in for you to our lord shal pray,
To other dedes attende wil no day, 3283

His father and mother, he says, had consented,

But only to god, to whom I am yild. 3284
hit pleased my fader, to hym acceptiff,
And to Melusine, my good moder milde:

and were glad that he should enter on this life, that they all might benefit by his prayers.

Full gladly thay wold I shold use my life
here As for to pray our lord celestif 3288
For thaim and for you in especiall,
That in paradise he vs do put all." 3290

[Fol. 65 *b*.] Geoffroy, almost mad with rage, replied to him sadly.

Geffray vnderstode Almoste in wode rage, 3291
Thaken[1] with A meruelous corage tho,
Moche ther resceiued to hym delefull langage.

Then departing, shut the doors, and savagely orders fuel to be collected,

Fro-thens deperted, the dores after drew to,
All tho within closid and shitte also, 3295
After send to fecche, of ferosite,
Straw And berres[2] wonder gret plente. 3297

which he has piled about the Abbey,

To all ilnesse do lust had and talent, 3298
Thys bruschet made put in-to on hepe,
What cause eche merueled, in ther entent.

and then sets it all on fire.

Fire hath he taken and put in therto;
That in litell while se shold not man, lo! 3302
For the smoky fume smortherting so was,
The Abbay it toke, sore gan it enbras. 3304

The Abbey, the Abbot, and a hundred monks, are consumed.

The fire so kindled thorugh all certainly, 3305
The monkes all betrapped and forshend,
That neuer on soule[3] scaped outwardly.
The Abbot And A hunderd monkes brend
On tew[i]sday, by fortune, so ther end: 3309

[1] "Taken." Fr. text, "Esprins."
[2] "breres" (?) Fr. "busche." [3] MS. "foule."

All that ther within wasted to huge grame,
To gret sorow And wo, vnto full huge shame;

And als the moste parte of thys said abbay 3312 Most of the building is destroyed,
By hym stroied, bruled and scorched tho:
Ther not lefte ne bode o soule man that[1] day, and not one soul escaped.
Thorughly brende it was to gret shame and wo.
When better remembred[2] hys diffaute, lo! 3316 Geoffrey, on coming to himself, laments what he has done,
With shill voce cried þat time hautaynly,
"Alas, caitife!" saide, "doñ haste folily, 3318

Which thys minstre undo and so brend." 3319 [Fol. 66]
his brother ofte bement dede so, noght in graue; the burning of the minster, and his brother unburied, and the Abbot.
After the Abbot And all the couent.
Foltish he was, For tho thaim might not haue,
Neuer for golde ne for hauour craue. 3323 For there was no getting them back again.
he thaim complained And waymented sore,
Off pite sighed, lamenting euermore. 3325

Fro-thens departed, on his coursere lepte, 3326 Leaving Mailleznis, he rode
He right noght sparyng ualey ne montayn,
In paraf[3]

and then upbraids himself,
What may me become or what do shall I? 3332

NE to what ende come, certes, know ne may 3333 that he is more worthy of damnation than any man,
Neuer man born fro Adam to thys hour
Ne war so well wurth to be dampned ay!
Wel shewith I am An ill fals traitour, even than Judas Iscariot,
I here more wurse then Iudas the synnour. 3337
Neuer shall I see, visage to visage, and shall be shut out of God's sight.
Off god our Fader semyng in corage. 3339

[1] MS. "thai." [2] MS. "remenbred." [3] "good" (?).

He prays for death.

MOrtall deth, now com bering me away!" 3340
Such discomforth had Gaffray in corage.
Forsoth so rode An easy pace that day,

In this sorry frame he reaches Guerrande, and finds the messenger waiting for him.

That to Guerrande came forth so in viage,
Full malice And wrogh[t] of thys huge damage 3344
Which that tyme had don, And sore gan complain.
The messingere lefte contred hym Again: 3346

[Fol. 66 b.] Geoffrey is pleased to see him,

WHen Geffray hym saw, in hert was full glade; 3347
Fro-thens departyd vnto vnderstande.
Of no creature demaund leue ne had.

and goes at once,

he ther-thens wende towarde norbelande,
Where-hens the messinger of the saide lande 3351

taking but ten retainers.

Which to Gaffray cam requiring hym then:
And off his maynee had he but ten. 3353

HE thought he wold noght ouer slow to be: 3354
Anon As he Approched the port there,

He was feasted by the people before he went on board.

Men hym made gret feste or shippe made entre;[1]
And off the contre the said messynger, 3357
[illegible] knight the way and manere.

The people bless them as they start,

The maryner thaim put in to
And at departson thaim blessed all tho.

and with a fair wind and good ship they go on their way.

The winde was good, the shippe welle sailled sche,
In a litill while ferre passed And goo,
A kennyng thaim was but A Jape vnto. 3365

I shall now leave Geoffrey and speak of Raymond.

Ryght thus of Gaffray shall rest and still me,
And declare And speke of Raymounde the fre.

He was living merrily at Vouvant with his wife, Melusine.

RAymounde at vauuent lad a mery[2] lif; 3368
Wher hym gan to hold, As long As he myght,

[1] MS. "entire." [2] MS. "amery."

With fayre Melusine hys full noble wyffe.
Thys gentill Raymonde was A courtois knyght.
At vauuent were both, os[1] reson was and ryght.
Anon had thay full dolorous noysaunce;
As at diner sate, at ther owñ plesaunce,

At dinner one day a great piece of ill news is brought them.

A ferrom thai saw com A messingere,
Which in humble wise thaim were saluting;
But hys colour changed sodainly there,
For thys cause that he the dede was doubting
Of that message behofull hym doing.
And Raymound to hym tho ther said anon:
"Gentill messingere, welcom to vs echon."

[Fol. 67]
Afar off they saw a messenger, who humbly saluted them; but in doubt about how to give his message, he changes colour.

Raymond bids him welcome.

Off noueles Anon gan hym to enquere;
Where-hens he cam; And fro what place þat day.
(Alas! outre moste noueles in strange manere,
Tham vnto declare wo is me alway;
For such tydinges And nouels shall say
Which ben full ill, ryght noght, full of yre,
And ryght hiduous, Any man to hyre.

They inquire his news.

(Alas! I must utter strange news, for which I am sad, for the message is right naught,

Where-thorugh Raymounde shall lese the company
Off faire Melusine, fro that for all-wais,
Neuer after *with* hys wife be truly:
Where she no point had off diffame no dais.)
Then the messinger spake *with*-out delais,
"Sir, vnderstande, my wordes and entent
To say behouith, wherof Am dolent;

owing to which Raymond shall lose his wife's company.)

Then he tells them

On of youre children take hath mortall."
"Which is he?" said Raymounde: "sir, Fromont it is."
"hou is he dede? good sir, say me all.

that one of their children, Fromont, is dead,

[1] *For* as; see Glossary.

and Raymond asks if he is interred in our Lady's Abbey at Maillezais.

Is noght the body bered of hys?
On his soule mercy the lord do of blis! 3400
Entered in churche is of our lady
In Abbay off Maillers full sollemply." 3402

[Fol. 67 *b*.] But the messenger replies that Fromont had not been buried,

Thys messinger said with shill vois hautain, 3403
"That blissed man neuer had sepulture;
Wilbelouid sir, this you say sertain,
Aforn all will declare the Auenture,

but burnt by Geoffrey in the Abbey.

hou Gaffray hym put to shameuous oppressure, 3407
Fired and byrnde, stroyng the Abbay
Off Maillers, for Fromont hys sake Alway, 3409

The abbot and monks were all scorched and burnt to ashes;

The Abbot And monkes conuentuall, 3410
That ther o soule man escapid noght,
But scorched and brend were to Askes small;
And hou the doures made faste As cowde be thought;

Geoffrey shut them in and burnt them, out of spite against Fromont.

For drede non durste fle, to-geders brende and brought, 3414
For the gret dispite which in hert he had[1]
Off Fromont, that *in* monkes wede was clade.'

Raymond, at the news, bathes his heart in sorrow,

When Raymound it knew, blissed *with* ryght hand,
In sorow And wo hys hert bathed he.

but sternly commands the messenger to be sure he is not lying.

yut Another tyme he gan to demand,
Commaunding hym straitly As myght be,
That he hym say the trouth and verite. 3421
"Se here," he said, "gret cruelte shewyng,
Is it this? ward the that thou ly no thing!" 3423

He replies that he saw it with his two eyes.

HE hym answerd, "sir, it is ryght this; 3424
I dare wel say this, so god me do aid;
With my eyes to saw it, soo haue I blis!"
When Raymounde it hurd, colour changed *þat* braid,

[1] MS. "hed."

For ende had he non in his dolour laid.
To hors lepe he tho *with*-out tarying,
In hert was ryght wo And full sore mornyng. — Raymond, in great dolour, leaps upon horseback,

IN pensif muses hym faste beseying,
He rest noght to ryde, so to Maillers cam. — [Fol. 68] and rides at once to Maillezais.
Such A pace rode, yut ther the fray finding,
Raymounde perceiued the gret lose[e][1] And shame.
Ech man complayned on Gaffray by name. — There he hears men complaining,
The Abbay saw brend And woxin desert, — and sees the abbey reduced
Which causid gret wo hym to haue at hert. — to a ruin.

HE beheld Aboute euery part sure,
Seyng the Abbot And monkes brend were;
Als seing the meruelous auenture,
"By god died in crosse," Raymound gan swere, — Much enraged,
That "Gaffray shold dye in cruell manere, — he swears that Geoffrey shall die in a cruel
yff atwixst his handis he hym haue myght, — manner, if he
He wold make hym ende, And shameuous deth dight!" — can but get hold of him.

There lepte vp Again hys coursere vppon, — Again he mounts
So inly malice, full of wrath and yre, — his horse, having
In shuch cAs broght, wiste not wat say ne don; — no wish to stay
To sogerñ At Maillers more wold not desire. — there,
Fro-thens departed, tornyng hole entire
hamwarde in iournay ryght full besily. — and rides fast
Al day ther he rode faste And spedfully, — homeward.

So the myghty strenght attained he was — He reaches the
Of vauuent castell, entred in and wend; — fort of Vouvant,
hys coursere As the wynde forth went apace.
When *with*in was, After gan discend; — and alights from
lenger wold he noght bide ne attend. — his horse.
In-to the chambre entred he Anon, — He enters his
The dores to hym drew And closyd echon. — chamber, and shuts the door.

[1] See l. 3608. Fr. text, "perte."

[Fol. 68 b.] Then he begins to lament and wail, saying, "Ah! Fortune! thy dealings are too manifest, thou art not secret enough.

There began he wonder waymenting; 3459
Complaynyng, wayling, And lamentyng to see.
"Ha!" he said, "Fortune, to riue art being;
Ne haste thou not be with me full preue.
Aboue All other haste[1] thou hated me! 3463
Alas! this for-whi hast thou me in hate?
To tech me were thou contrary þat date, 3465

When I put Earl Amery to death by moonlight, thou wert the cause.

When thou me madest that murther to do 3466
Off the noble Erle of peiters being,
Amery the good notable knyght tho;
I hym put to deth by the mone shynyng.
By the, lady Fortone, thou were it causing! 3470

Alas! he was a peerless man!

Alas! he was man in tyme full worthy!
Hys pere noght founde Athissid Rome truly! 3472

And next, thou madest me marry this infamous serpent;

After me made by thy will and uolente 3473
To take this woman of the Fayry,
This[2] here diffamed serpent vnto se;
I am not wronged[3] thow it bewayle surely.

and one of my ten children by her, a holy monk, is dead,

Then[4] fair children haue I had hir by! 3477
But on is dede, whereof Am I pensiffe,
Which was A monke leuyng holy life. 3479

and his brother slew him. Her children will do no good.

Ther now his brother hat[h] put hym deth to. 3480
I trow thes children which that she bare
In this worle ne shall no maner good do.
The begynnyng noght, of trouth to declare,

I could not have believed it, had I not seen her in the bath.

And, by the teres off uandosme hys fair, 3484
hit I to beleue is but fantesy,
Ne hade I hir sain in the bath only; 3486

[Fol. 69] I saw through the hole in the door that she

I not ferre fro thens, the trouth vn-to tell, 3487
By the litell hole of the dore gan se
Fro the hed adon vnto the nauell

[1] MS. "baste." [2] MS. "Thes." [3] "wrong" (?).
[4] "Ten." Fr. text, "dix."

A full fair and gent woman there was she;
But under was A serpent of verite,
A taill burled had of siluer and Asure,
Ther bete that all the water flasshed sure,

was a woman from her head to her middle, but beneath a serpent, with a tail striped with blue and gold.

Full grett hiduou[s]nesse to my hert made.
Neuer was ther man if hir gan to se
In the estat that I ther saw hir clad,
But that wold Anon Away fro hir fle;
For it was thing dredfull As myght be.
God me ward and kepe fro werk diabolike,
And stedfaste me hold in feith catholike!"

No man could have beheld her as I did, and not have fled for fear.

God keep me from diabolic works!"

FAir Melusine tho the dore gan unshit,
Well cowde it vnloke, in gan she repaire,
Also to the dore the key had of it.
Knyghtes, ladeis, damicelles full faire,
Squiers, yongmen, maydens debonair,
With Melusine ther entre made þat stounde
Into the chambre where Raymound was founde.

Melusine unlocks the door,

and brings with her into the chamber a company of squires and maidens.

In the saide chambre entred thai Anon.
Raymounde saw hys wife, marred was he tho.
Ther hauing no[1] point of colour hym vppon,
There be-gan of-new hys dolorous woo.
Off Raymounde And of hys fair loue also
Ther strange depa[r]tson approched full ny,
Ryght As ye shall hire declared shortly.

Raymond is much vexed at the sight of her, and begins to lament anew.

The moment of their parting was now nigh at hand.

Then Melusine said to Raymound hir housband,
"hauith not your hert so marred for wo,
For þat ye may noght amend at no stonde.
Men shold such sorow lightly lete slip and go.
yff Agayn our lord Gaffray haue mysdo,
And þat he hath distroid that faire place
Off Maillers by hys misdoing, percas

[Fol. 69 *b*.]

Melusine says to him, "Be not vexed.

Even though Geoffrey has thus sinned, and has destroyed the abbey,

[1] MS. "to." Fr. text, "neust point de couleur."

he may yet, perchance, make his peace with God by repentance, and suffer pain in the body;

Yut may he his pees Full wel do to make
Towardes our lord by grete repentance,
And for his trespas pennaunce may he take,
Therfor suffer pain in bodyly substaunce.

for God's mercy is at all times ready.

For goddis marce is[1] redy ech instance,
So in hym he haue good contrecion,
And efter veray pure confession.

For God willeth not the death of a sinner,

Off verray trouth my beleue is soo
That our lord god on hym will haue mercy,
For of the synner wold not deth shold go,

but that he should live to repent and to do good."

But louith better that lif shold truly,
To haue time And space, being here wordly,
To effecte And end that he shold repent
And to All goodnesse also to Assent."

Thys lady wisely And sagely gan to speke,
But Raymounde malice And full angry was;

But Raymond was spiteful and angry, and his reason awhile departed.

At hys hert gret noysaunce gan he steke.
Reson deperted tho fro hym apas.

Soon shall he say a word which he shall never retrieve.

Such A word shal say, repent can not purchas;
Neuer shall ne may, vnto þat he dy,
Conquere that he shall And moste lesse ther-by.

[Fol. 70] With fierce look, proudly wroth, he spake plainly his foolish thought, uttering aloud the fatal word,

Off A fers behold, orgulously wrought,
Als *with* the behold *of his eyes twain*,
And when that he had *A litell thought*,
his foley *thought spitfully spake plain*,
And afore all said he *with* uois *hautain*,
"ha! serpent! *thy line in lif no good shall doo!*

"Ha! SERPENT! Behold and see

Se here now A noble begynnyng, *lo!*

what Geoffrey thy son hath done! He hath scorched and burnt a hundred monks,

What Gaffray *with* long toth thy son hath doñ!
A hundred monkes scorched[2] and brend plain,
And after fro-thens made he departson.

[1] MS. "his." [2] MS. "scroched"; see l. 3678.

Where-of on was Fromont thi son certain, — of whom Fromont thy son was one.
The which to cherish euer was I fain! 3554
Alas! thes monkes slain hath thi son Gaffray. — But they died not all *cold*,
But thay died noght Al cold, I may fery,[1] 3556

Euery of thaim so gret An hed[2] had. 3557 — but every one was *hot* enough.
I haue ther be, I saw it verily,
Thaim al hath he brend, Gaffray thi sone made!" — Geoffrey, thy mad son, *burnt* them!"
Alas! the sorow don so disordinatly — Alas! the sorrow caused by that fatal word, which lost him Melusine!
Off that wurde which he *pro*nounced openly! 3561
For ther-in gan do gret ill and sin plain.
Melusine Anon loste, neuer saw Again. 3563

When Melusine hurd thys said wurde this stounde, — When Melusine heard that word, she swooned away,
After hir sustain forsoth she ne myght.
Zownyngly she fil wofully to grounde;
The sorow so gret, the hert fro hym-self ryght.
Well ny so half hour she lay, this swet wight, 3568 — and lay in that swoon a whole half-hour, prostrate and astonied.
Prostrat to the erth, stoned, so zownyng
For that heuy word he was ther outring. 3570

The barons ther cam, vp gan hir redrese 3571 — [Fol. 70 *b*.] The barons raised her up,
Goodly, without hurt or blecere Any.
Anon A knight Approched hir hinesse, — and a knight moistened her face with cold water.
hir visage moisted with fresh water goodly,
Trowing A fiftene times or twenty. 3575
By that resorted hir good hert Again, — She revives, and exclaims,
Vnto Raymound said soberly certain, 3577

Forsoth to hym spake full peteuously, 3578
"Alas, alas, alas, Raymounde, this day! — "Alas, Raymond! Ill for me that ever I saw thee!
Ill saw I the euery times any!
Ill saw I the beute of the, I say; — Wo is me that ever I saw thy beauty, thy array, thy virtuous conduct.
Ill saw I thi ful gracious Aray, 3582
Ill saw I the vppo[*n*] the Fontain,
Ill saw I thy vertuous demenyng playn,[3] 3584

[1] "say" (?). [2] "het" (?). Fr. text, "chault."
[3] MS. "playng."

Alas that ever I saw thy precious body,

Ill saw I thy werking amerous, 3585
Ille saw I thy precyous body,
Ille saw I thy iourne dolorous,

that ever I loved thee!

That *with* the was in loue Amourously!
Ille saw I thi fair contennaunce truly, 3589

Evil was the hour and season

Ille saw I thy gracious body gent,
Ille saw I the hour And mene season *present* 3591

wherein I first saw thy treason and falseness!

That the saw first, thi treson, thi falsnesse! 3592
Thy fals vntrew spech, thy huge cruelte,

Thine unmeasurable language has condemned me to eternal pain.

Thy fals tonges unmesurabelnesse,
Me put to paynes perdurabilite,
That frothens neuer shall I depart me, 3596
But full moche pain shal I suffre Alway,
For pain shall I haue vnto the laste day, 3598

[Fol. 71]

That it like or pleasse our lord soueran 3599
To come iuge And deme tho both quikke and dede!

Never shall you see my face again, O false, perjured traitor,

Neuer shal ye se my clere uisage plain,
Most fals traytour And fals forsworn in-ded,

murmurer, liar,

Replet *with* uices, full of murmerhed, 3603

betrayer, and false knight.

Fals amerous, fals lesingmonger ryght,
Fals betrayer, And in-ded A fals knyght! 3605

Thus hast thou caused us huge loss.

Full ill haste thow, lo! my couenaunt hold, 3606
That thow me promysed in the begynnyng;
Thou haste made us haue huge losce many-fold.

Yet I could forgive your seeing me in the bath, because you told it to no one.

yut myght I all this full wel be suffryng,
Off that in the bath me so were seyng, 3610
Acause ye ne it said no creature.
The fende knew it noght, the misauenture. 3612

Your revealing it has brought misfortune.

As son As made was reuelacioñ there, 3613
knawen was A-none For it shalt misfall;
Yf that my[1] body to the Abode here,

[1] MS. "by." Fr. text, "mon corps."

Thow sholdest perceiue ryght brefly *with*-all
All thy full fals periury disceiu[e]![1] 3617
yf truly ye had the couenaunt hold,
Vnto Mortall deth me to haue ye shold, 3619

Had you kept your covenant truly,

Ryght As A woman borñ here naturall, 3620
A feminine thyng, woman at al houres,
To end of my days here terrestriall.
By me[2] myghteste haue had huge socoures.
After the hy kyng, full off honoures, 3624
Wold haue borñ Away the soule of me,
When that Fro body departed were she, 3626

I should have been a woman at all hours,

and, at death, the King of Glory would have borne away my soul,

After beried in sacred sepulture, 3627
And *with* gret honour entered shold be.
Alas! my fortune now putt Away sure!
In payn, in wo, in tormentes cruelte
Till day of iugement to se. 3631
By thy-selfen disceiued art in all,
Thou art fro hinesse into lownesse fall. 3633

[Fol. 71 *b*.]

and I should have been buried with great honour.

Alas! I must now suffer pain till doomsday.

Knowith thys, to you shall come greuous pine, 3634
Ne neuer goodnesse shal resceiue certain;
All-way thy dedes shall go to decline,
Ne neuer shal be wrought ne made again,
And thi land shal be, After thi discesse plain, 3638
Parted in partes I beleue shal be,
Neuer to-geders hold in seueralte, 3640

Thou too shalt suffer pain,

thy great deeds shall decline,

and thy land, at thy death, shall be divided.

By A soule man neuer maintayned be; 3641
Many of your men shal fall, sir Raymounde,
Neuer it acquire As in certainte.
Som of thaim shall lese both ther land and ground.
By fin fors of werre *with* many A wound, 3645
Fro ther dwellyng full faste shall thay fle,
Neuer shall resorte A-gane to contre. 3647

Some of your posterity shall lose both land and ground,

and never return again home.

[1] See note. [2] MS. "my."

Remember thy sons, for I shall be with thee no more!"

REmembre thy sones, the beseche And pray, 3648
For I shal neuer hold the company,
To whome haue hert peteuous and tender ay,
I may no langer Abyde ne tary!"

Then she draws three barons aside, speaking to all sensibly in an under-tone.

Thre[1] of the Barons Apart drew hastily 3652
Off moste gretteste, sayng in wyse pesible
As woman full sage And ryght sensible; 3654

[Fol. 72] "Raymond, it behoves thee to beware of Horrible.

"RAymounde, understande, horrible thy sone gete
Do hym for to dy, neuer be he found.
Off it houith the to entremete,
Thre eyes shal bere he vppon the grounde.

If he live, war shall never cease, nor bread nor wine increase,

yff he life, werre neuer shall faill nostounde 3659
In all the contre off peiters to deuin,
Shall neuer encresse neithir brede ne win, 3661

for he shall lay waste all the country.

All the contre he shall waste, vnderstand, 3662
So that no-thyng encresse shal ne may.

He will destroy all I have made,

And all thes places that I gan do make,
Distroy And undo, certes, is no nay;

and bring his brethren to poverty.

And hys bretherin to porete put alway, 3666
All thãm, of trought, and all of the lyne,
Wherefor I you pray, lete hym dy *with* pine. 3668

Thy sorrow for Geoffrey's deed is needless;

THe dole that thou haste for Gaffray thy sone, 3669
That the monkes brende so disordinaitly,

it was a punishment upon the monks for their misdeeds.

knowith thys, that it was for punicion
Taken vppon tho of religion hy,
For ther misgouernaunce wroughten so dayly, 3673
Off our lordes part, for þat thai do wold
Many of thingys that they do ne shold, 3675

It is for that reason they are scorched, exiled, and destroyed.

NE ought of ryght ne of reson doo. 3676
In that place our lord example hath shewed.
Off goddis parte is thai ben scorched so,

[1] MS. "Ther;" but French text, "Trois."

All dede, exiled, And foule distroyde. — They have harmed themselves with lechery.
Many *with* lechery haue hym sore noyed;
Fals monkes, synners, holdyng at no day
Ther ordre ne lif of the said Abbay.

Iff your sone be dede with thaim outerly, — [Fol. 72 b.] If your son be dead with them, pity him not.
haue ye no routhe, ne of thaim neuer mo.
ye know what men sain moste, lo! comynly,
For A synner perish shall An hundred, lo! — A hundred men perish for one sinner's sake.
An hundered hath brend, nombred vs unto,
*With*out the Abbot which nombred is noght, — So here 100 died, besides the abbot.
Which maister is of thaim, As of reson ought,

Iff ther were cause, parcas he myght be.
Iff Gaffray tham haue so destroed all, — If Geoffrey have destroyed them, he may easily rebuild a fairer minster,
It may be by hym restored, parde,
A more fairer ministre fourge[1] and make shall
Then that which he hath caused so to fall.
This said Abbay full well may he restore — and place in it more monks than before.
With many mo monkes then were before.

Off trought so he will in ryght good manere, — There shall they pray for our lineage,
Which then shall be good peple verily,
Prayng for the line *with* myght and powere;
Which church he shall welle redyfy;
The place shall be to sight more plesantly, — and the place shall be fairer and better than before.
And more better then euer was before;
Thys Gaffray shall doo gret goodnesse euermore,

MOste specially whan he comyth to Age. — But, ere I go, I tell you one thing more.
But A thing I shall you declare truly,
Ar I me departe fro your compernage,
To ende that all therof haue memory — In order that men may remember me, they shall see me in the air.
Which after An hundred yere surely
That yut ben unbore shall hir speke of me;
Off trouth in the air thar men shall me see

[1] MS. "fourgee."

[Fol. 73] I shall be seen whenever the castle is about to change its master; if not in the air,

ABoute the castell off lusignen so,
Thre dais beforn in the same yere ryght
That the casstell shall change hir maister, lo!
yff in the air men not se me myght,
And that thay mow not perceiue me to sight,

on the earth, or by this fountain,

I shall me Appere vppon the erth playn,
Or at the leste besides this Fontain.

For, as the castle was baptized after my name,

KNow thys, Raymounde, for so shall it be,
Ass longe As thys said castell shall endure,
For with my name baptised was she
And such As it is devised I sure,

it may be considered as my goddaughter.

My goddoughter I may calle[1] hir in vre.
Fule wel may it say Aforn peple All,
And, for Melusine men me do to call,

LUsignen named, to name doth calange.
yut will I now say *with*out tarying,

Three days before the castle changes its lord,

When that of the lord shall come þe eschange,
Thre dais be-forne me shall be seyng;

I shall certainly appear.

Certainly I shall ther be appering.
But loste is now al my solas and ese,
Sin so behouith me it leue and lese;

Raymond, when first we loved, we had all joy and solace;

FOr now may it be in non other wise.
Raymounde, vnto you then at beginnyng,
When ye and I entreloued in louers gise,
Al maner plesance we were finding,
Joy And solas As loue And louer hauyng;

but now is our solace turned into vexation.

Alas! contrary now se thys instance,
Our solas torned into gret noysance,

[Fol. 73 *b.*] Now is our good fortune turned to mischance, and our surety is in doubt.

And in-to sorow transport our gladnesse,
Our huge uigour to feblesse this instance,
Our plesire into displesance expresse,
Our full good fortune into gret misc[h]ance,

[1] MS. "called."

Our vertuous goodnes into curced chance; 3743
In doubte is all our surete to deuise,
And our noble And blissed franchise 3745

Is full strangely changed into seruice, 3746 Our freedom is turned to service by perverse fortune,
By peruers fortune labored and founde,
Which on reisith, Anothir don brise,
But noght gain our lorde þat causyng me þis stound;
ys only by your dedes, sir Raymounde, 3750 and all owing to the jangling of your blabbing tongue.
Als by your labbyng tonges iongling,
ye shall lesse your loue for your large speking.

NOw more lenger here may I not to dwell, 3753 Now must I go.
Fair loue, me behouith hens As for to go.
your misdedis god perdon euerydell, God pardon you for being the cause of my suffering torment."
Whereof Agayne me ye haue so mysdo,
For by you shall suffer torment And woo, 3757
vnto the dredfull day of Iugement;—
And by the I was fro[1] sorow ex[e]mpte, 3759

And into yoy entred!—Alas! wo I Am, 3760 Such grief had Melusine that none that heard her could withhold from weeping.
For now Am I caste into dolorous woo,
Fro-whens[2] that I issewed and came!"
Such ful sory dole Melusine lad tho,
That body off humayn creature, lo! 3764
Which hir complaint hurd *with* huge sighes sore,
Ne shold withold fro weping euermore. 3766

Raymounde heuily wrang his handes twain, 3767 [Fol. 74] Raymond was so grieved at her words that he could say no word himself.
Such greuaunce toke tho, Almoste gan he dy,
So was he take *with* heuy wurdes plain,
That o soule wurde coude not bryng forth truly.
She hym Approched enbrasing swetly, 3771

[1] MS. "for." [2] MS. "For whens."

The two kiss each other sadly.

To-geders kyssing thes to-Amerous
In o torment ther were both dolorous. 3773

They both swoon away,

Fvl greuous Anguish in ther hertes loke, 3774
That for heuinesse both gan fall to grounde,
zowning ther full long A maner dethis stroke,
Without takyng breth or wynde any stounde.

and the barons trow they are both dead and cold.

The Barons trowing Melusine and Raymound 3778
That thes louers to were both dede and cold;
For long space And tyme such wise gan thai hold,

Recovering from the swoon, they sighed and wrang their hands.

And when fro zowning that thai came Agane, 3781
And that thai myght breth, to sigh be-gan sore,
To waile, to wepe, to sorely complain,
Ther handes wrange And strained euermore,
Non knew the sorow by thaim lade and bore. 3785

All the whole rout who see them weep.

Whereof all thay wepte standing ther Aboute
With teres many, All the ful hole route. 3787

Raymond entreats Melusine to pardon him,

And melusine, to whome was full greuous, 3788
Ryght piteously she releued tho.
Raymound hir praid, as man generous,
Ther knelyng, that she hym pardon wolde, lo!
Off hir courtesy, that he hade mysdo; 3792

but she says that this cannot be.

Which by gret mischefe don gain hir hath he.
Thys lady hym saide that it myght not bee, 3794

[Fol. 74 b.]

She bids him especially think of his son Raynold,

Hit please ne wold the king celestiall. 3795
"But, fair loue! I you here beseche and pray,
Thenke on your loue here terrestriall,
your sone Fromount in obliuy put ay,
And in Raynold loke ye thenke Alway, 3799

for that he should be Earl of Forest.

For of the foreste Erle shall he be, lo!
In all goodnesse thenke, And wel shall ye doo.

The Earl of Forest would soon die.

The Erle of foreste here long shall not hyde 3802
In this worlde here After my departson,

Also will thenke for Thierry prouyde, — He is also to provide for Thierry,
For yut shall he [1] doo thynges manyon.
At norish pappes yut is his person; 3806
Fro[2] partenay to Rochell the lande shall iustice, — who would afterwards rule the land from Partenay to Rochelle.
An inly good knight shall he be and wyse. 3808

ANd all which fro hym linially issew, 3809 — Also Thierry's lineage should be good knights, and long endure.
Shall be knightes good, hardy, and wurthy,
Full of gud corage and of all uertew,
And his linage shall longe endure truly.
Fair loue, know thys well, that noble Thierry 3813
Wurthy and hardy Also shall he be. — She asks Raymond to pray for her,
I shall thenke on you, swete loue, pray for me

All dais while lif in worle here haue ye. 3816 — for that she would aid him in all his needs.
Off me shall ye haue both ayde and comfort
In all your nedes of necessite.
Off aduersite en-gree[3] take the porte. — He must bear his adversity well.
Neuer in femine forme to you shall resorte, 3820
Neuer shall ye se Melusine truly, — She must now go.
That so was wont to hold you company!"[4] 3822

Innepee she lepte the fenestre vppon, 3823 — [Fol. 75] She then leaps upon the window,
Aboue beheld she uerdures flouresshing;
Without taking leue Away wold not gon, — but will not yet depart before she has bidden all farewell.
For the Barons, of whom after shall be speking,
Off lades, damycelles, knightes beyng, 3827
Squiers, And maydens, off all leue toke she,
For whome euery man wepte of pette. 3829

Afterwarde she said, "adieu! sir Raymounde, 3830 — "Adieu! Sir Raymond, my heart, my sovereign joy, my gentle jewel!
Whom I so loued *with* hert Fȳn And plain,
Neuer shall youe se at no day ne stounde.
Adieu, my hert! Adieu, my loue certain!

[1] MS. "ye." Fr. "Il fera."
[2] MS. "For." [3] MS. "engree."
[4] At the foot of this page are the catchwords, "innepee the lepte the."

Adieu, creature, my ioy souerain! 3834
Adieu, myn entire loue moste graçious!
Adieu, my gentile Iewell precious! 3836

Adieu! my sweet nurse, my grace,

Adieu, my swete norish And noriture! 3837
Adieu, my plesaunce And gladnesse worly!
Adieu, full meruelous swete creature!
Adieu, my grace! Adieu, my ioyes hy!
Adieu, what that in worle loue moste hertly! 3841

and noblest debonair youngling!

Adieu, the moste good! Adieu, the moste faire!
Adieu, the noblest yongling debonair! 3843

Adieu! my sugar-sweet sovereign lord!

Adieu, the beste! Adieu, swetteste All Aboue! 3844
Adieu, my gracyous spouce of recorde!
Adieu, I say, myn owne vertuous loue!
Adieu, suete housbonde by louis concord!

To God I commend you, to keep your sweet life.

Adieu, my sugret suete souerain lorde! 3848
Adieu commaunde, my ioy and boldnesse!
Adieu commaunde, your suete lif to drisse. 3850

[Fol. 75 *b.*]

Adieu, my solas And iewell roiall! 3851
Adieu commaunde all peple here, sothlese!

Adieu! Lusignan!

Adieu, lusignen, fourged fair in all;
Adieu, al that which may A lady plese!
Adieu, the gladnesse, mirthes ioy and ese! 3855

And adieu, sweet sounds of instruments!"

Adieu, the suete sound of ech Instrument!
Adieu, I say, disportes reuerent! 3857

Adieu, wurthieste! Adieu, *with* all honour! 3858
Adieu, my suete loue prented *in* hert sad!
Our lorde the aide And be thi concellour!"

Thus having said, she leapt out of the window, and so passed away.

With-out more spech A lepe ther she made,
(Seyng the Barons all that ther were had), 3862
Thorught A fenistre so passed and wend
When of hyr wurdes thys had made an ende. 3864

Thourgh the fenistre in such wise gan fle 3865
Melusine *with*out tariing Any.

In-to A serpent changed tho was she,
Of huge grettnesse and lenght was verily,
Wherof all were Astoned strongly;
With siluer and Asure ther burled was,
Thys fairy woman such tail gan purchas,

Which presently was become A serpent;
Whereof Raymound bement hir hugely.
Thre tymes the castell enuironee went;
At euery tour A ssounde yaf she hyly,
Wonder meruelous cast she vp A cry
Full strange vnto hire, And ryght piteuous,
Hyr cry full heuy, wonder dolorous.

Which I writte is trouth, therof ly no thyng.
She thens forth went, vnto the air gan fle.
Ther hir lost Raymound, "Alas!" lowde crying,
Ful moche complained And ther wailed he.
Hys heres[1] faste drew, sore hir bement, parde,
Cursing the houre that euer he was born,
Raymound, out fro wit for wo almoste lorn,

In[2] hy shill uois the Barons said before,
"Adieu, my lady, with heres yowlownesse![3]
Adieu, all debonerte for euermore!
Adieu, I say you, my fair suete maistresse!
Adieu, my ioy, my grace, And my richesse!
Adieu, my goodes and all my surete!
Adieu commaunde, all the disporte of me.

Adieu, my iewell! Adieu, my solas!
Adieu, you say, my lady preciouse!
Adieu, the fair whilom the prise gan purchas!
Adieu, my wife! Adieu, my trew spouse!
Adieu, my lady verray graciouse!
Adieu, I you say, my full doucet floure!
Adieu, my lady of full gret valoure!

She was at once changed wholly into a serpent,

striped with argent and azure.

Three times she went round the castle, uplifting a loud cry at every turn.

[Fol. 76]
This that I write is truth; I lie not.

Raymond tears his hair and curses his hour of birth.

"Adieu!" he cries, "my fair mistress, my joy, my goods, and my surety!

Adieu! my jewel, my sweet flower!

[1] MS. "heree." [2] MS. "Iln." [3] MS. "yow lowneſſe."

Adieu! fair rose, fair violet!

Adieu, suete throte of soundes clerenesse! 3900
Adieu, fair Rose! Adieu, violet[1] also!
Adieu, the tree of louers feithfulnesse!
Adieu, I say my gentile lady vnto.
Adieu, my glory! Adieu, my ioy, lo! 3904
Adieu, the fair that so hath loued me!
My goode days gon, shall I neuer you se." 3906

[Fol. 76 b.]

Ryght this Raymounde bewaled and bement 3907
his noble wife, for whom felt dolour,
Which thorugh the Air hir flight tho hent,
Wherefor he hath A sory hert þat houre.

What shall I now do? Never had man such sorrow!

"Alas!" Raymound said, "wat do shall or labour?
For certes I haue sorow ynow at hert,
Neuer man had at the full so smert. 3913

FOrwhy shold I noght be A plain man, 3914
yff I fele at hert noysaunce mondiall?
Hit to declare good reson if I can,

I myself made the ditch wherein I now fall;

For the diche haue made wheron now I fall.
Now Am I Acursed, to wo am made thrall, 3918

now am I sadder than any 'ghost' alive."

Now I am dolorous And full pensiffe
More then Any goste felt in his life." 3920

His barons comfort him,

But ther had he A noble company, 3921
Which full gentilly gan hym to comforth,
And many hym said And shewed hertly,
That thay hym wold gladly recomfort,

and bid him bear his burden softly.

That softly shold bere that dolorous port, 3925
Many examples to hym exort said,
Causyng sumwhat lesse hys sorow þat braid. 3927

A baron advises him

After hym said A sensible Baroñ, 3928
"Of your son horrible behouith, lo!

[1] MS. "violent."

To ordain As ordained to be don̄ — to slay Horrible, as Melusine suggested.
Melusine, when concell you gaffe vnto.
Anon þat men shold make hym to deth go,
Or perish he wold the contre and grounde."
"My lordes present," ther tham said Raymounde,

"YOu beseche And pray tary noght ne bide, — [Fol. 77] Raymond commands them to do so,
As therof do ye hir commaundment;
So he be dede, I charge not how no tyde."
"To plesire, And will do all your entent;"
Thay wold no lenger ther tary, but forth went. — and they depart to find him.
Raymound, which strongly wroth angry was
For thys sorowfull And mischeuous cas,

Wich that ceason conquered was and gett,
As A sory man thens gan he remew,
Into A chambre ther made he retret, — Raymond retreats into a chamber alone,
hit unshit entring, the dore after drew,
Ther lamentacion be-gan he of-new — and there renews his lamentation.
In this said chambre ther, all soule, alon̄.
No more of Raymound, but passe forth and gon̄,

Off the Barons hy say shall of contre.
Full sensible were, inly wyse and sage,
Orrible toke hy on Assent and gre, — The barons shut Horrible up in a cave,
In A caue hym shitte *with*-out othir damage,
Off moisty hay made bring to thys uiage, — fill the entrance with moist hay, and set fire to it,
The fire put *with*-in, so with fumy smoke
Was the caue Anon full As myght be stoke.

Then loste horrible both breth and power, — so that he was soon stifled.
Stifled he was Anon *with* smoky fume sure.
After thay hym put into A faire bere, — Then they put him into a fair bier, and buried him nobly.
Nobly beried, hauing sepulture.
The obsequie[1] don̄ And compleshed pure

[1] MS. "obfequire."

After the wurdes And noble doctrine,
As lored and thaught had good Melusine. 3962

[Fol. 77 *b.*] They then commend him to God,

Entered in church, non for hym can mournn, 3963
After vnto god thay hym commaundyng,

depart, and return to Raymond.

Fro-thens departed without other sogournn;
Again to Raymounde were thay retornyng,
Which dolorous wo At hert was feling, 3967
With eyes sore wepte he in mornyng plite,
A man can ne may hys sory dole write. 3969

Raymond again laments, saying,

MAny tymes ofte, "my swete loue," sayng, 3970
"The haue disceiued And betrayed, lo!

"It was all through my cousin that I became a forsworn man.

By the exort of vntrew man makyng,
Al this me hath made my cosin to doo.
I Am by hym fals And als forsworne to, 3974
Ful of vice am and of Iniury;
For ill chaunce me fell unfortunatly 3976

I was unfortunate at first, when I slew my sovereign lord;

At my firste gynnyng And commencement, 3977
When in the wode my souerain lord sly.

and, secondly, when I was false to my lady.

A gretter mischef neuer men gan hent,
And sithen when me sewed periury
Off that I had swornn to my fayr lady, 3981
That so loued, by whom good and honour had,
By whom I was susteyned and lord made; 3983

By whom all goodnes me cam suffisantly, 3984
By whom, vnder god, lif had and comforth.

False fortune's cruel envy has brought me to this, whereby I have lost all my riches,

But the Fals fortune, by cruel enuy,
Me hath brought to thys full sharpe & hard port,
Wherby[1] loste haue I all my hole disport, 3988
Where like-wise loste my mirth and gladnesse,
Wherby Also lost my hole rychesse; 3990

[1] MS. "Bherby."

O

Wherby loste haue I yoy of eternite; 3991 [Fol. 78] and eternal joy.
That is, Melusine the fair suete wyght,
Whom I loued wel, As myself, parde;
She allwais loued me *with* hert parfight, Melusine always loved me;
And the dede thereof shewid she to ryght. 3995
In time togeders we haue be ensemble, my heart trembles with pity.
Where-of of pete my hert doth trimble; 3997

When I bethenke the trouth and verite, 3998
Therof shold I well haue gret pite,
And so shall I haue all the lif of me,
Of whom holdeth he to non end shall go.
I luf better to dy for euermo 4002 I had rather die for evermore than suffer so grievous pain.
Then for to suffer so greuous A pain
vntill so be that ende shall attain. 4004

Full cruell pain I haue, but yut shall not end, 4005 My sorrow will never end till I die.
Ne yut shall not ende Al myn ille truly
Till I diffynid be, and fro[1] the worle wend.
Time is for I may no lenger fructefy
As in thys worle, neither edefy 4009
Thyng but that it goth vnto decline,
Rather or later to an endly fine. 4011

For Melusine, whom god do warde and kepe, 4012 For so Melusine told me."
Me ther said full well at hir departson,
Which causith my sorow in hert part and lepe."
Parcelly, As the heres of eyes don,
With teres makyng spraucles manyon, 4016
Ryght so is Raymound tormented full sore, Raymond is sore tormented.
Sore wepyng, teres making euermore 4018

For Melusine, the woman off Fary, 4019 [Fol. 78 *b.*] But Melusine came often by night into
Which thar-after cam full many A nyght

[1] MS. "for."

Thierry's chamber, and often dressed and fed him.

Into the chambre right full secrely[1]
Wher norished was Terry suetly to ryght,
That she Full ofte hym raid and dight,
Chaufed, milked, And rechaufed Again.
Ther many tymes by the norish sain,

She was often seen by the nurses,

But thay durste noght in no wise vp-rise,
Neither o soule wurde to outre or say,

who told Raymond of it, to his great joy.

But vnto ther lord told the maner wise,
Wherof Raymond had full huge ioy alway.
In hys hert said with softe vois that day,
"That yut Melusine hope and trust to haue;"
Full ill in hys breste such thoughtes gan craue.

VAnishede is she fro hys syght for ay,
Remedy non, gold, siluer, ne honour.

Thierry grew more in one month than other babes in four,

Thierry cherished Amendid Alway,
(Men merueled gretly off it that hour),
In a moneth more then other in four.

but it was due to his mother's nursing.

Hys swet moder on hym such wyse thought,
Norished *with* hir milke And forth full wel brought.

She was often, too, in his father's chamber.

OFte in his fader chambyr she was;
To norish no pappe like moders neuer-mo,
As beforn is said, ho many it purchas.

I must now leave speaking of Raymond,

here cesse I and leue now, ferther will not goo
Off wofull Raymounde And hys sones two,
here thys time not say vnto your presence,
But vnto declare will do my diligens

[Fol. 79] and tell you about Geoffroy. Remember that I am not lying.

Off Gaffray with long toth you outre And say.
Where I ly or no, god knowith An-hy;
I lerned it noght certes at no day;
A lier to be founde shame were outerly.

[1] MS. "fecerly."

Gaffray went noght ouer taryinly,
Thorugh the se went, ouer pase rowing,
By fors of people so forth ther failling.

Geoffrey sailed swiftly on,

HE tho ariued And taried noght
In norbelande, sesing both land and ground,
Where this Geant were procured and wrought.
And when Gaffray discended was þat stound,
The Baroñs bode noght, gain hym went hole & sound,
Grettest and wurthiest of the said contre,
Comyng to hym, *with*-out excused to be.

and reached Northumberland, where the giant made war.

The barons come to greet him,

The gret, the meene, the litell, soth to tell,
Approched And cam to hym, gret and small.
A gret Baron then, witty were and fell,
Ther hym rehersing the Geant dedes All,
Ther liberte loste, ther contre made thrall
With that fers Geant huge and comerous,
Horrible, myghty, strong, And orgulous.

both great and small.

A baron tells him how their country was enthralled by that fierce, huge, troublesome, and proud giant.

IN A iournay, to certefy you all,
An hundered knightes of this said contre
Distroed and slain, put to deth mortall.
So orgulous sette, full of cruelte,
Gret uengaunce gan do to the comynte;
As cursedly sly A thousand As on,
The st[r]engest mortal eschew wold hys person.

In one day he slew a hundred knights,

and could as soon slay a thousand as one.

GAffray Answered, "then is he a Fend,[1]
A dredful deuill full of cruelte.
But noght-for-that fro hym me will diffende,
By me sonly distroed shall he be.
hys byding-place shewith unto me,

[Fol. 70 b.]

Geoffrey answered, "Then is he a fiend, but nevertheless I will soon destroy him.

[1] MS. "affend."

I must find this soldier.

For non othir cause comyn Am this houre,
But only to fynde this said soudiour, 4081

He shall fare ill ere seven weeks pass.

Which so goth Aboute, you sore distrussând. 4082
This knoith uerily, ill shall he betide
Or wekes seuyn ben passed to comaunde.

Provide me a guide, that I may see him to discomfit him."

Do me vnto take here som maner gide,
To this place and stede me conuey to ride, 4086
So I may hym se for to discomfight."
As he desired, like gan to hym dight, 4088

Geoffrey takes a debonair guide,

A gide hym taken, knowing the contre, 4089
With all the places where-to gan repair,
Where this Geant was wont dwellyng to be,
hys habitacion And mancion fair.
Such A gide hym toke which was debonare, 4093

and commends himself to God.

After hym commaunde to our lordes grace.
Gaffray went thens, departing fro þat place. 4095

He and his guide at last spy the giant under a tree,

HE And hys gide Apace forth riding, 4096
Till that on full hy thai gan well Auise,
Both of tham faste ther coursers sporing;
Then ny approched, Aboute gan deuise.
Vnder A tre sate this Geant in strange wise; 4100

sitting on a marble stone.

On a marbre stone at that ceason satte;
The Gide for gret drede trembled and swatte. 4102

[Fol. 80] The guide is frightened. Geoffrey laughs at him, and says he has not been misled.

HE sore Abasshed, changing his colour. 4103
Gaffray it saw, and gan to laugh sad;
After in laughter saide to hys Gidour,
As for ryght noght drede and fere he[1] hade,
For thought should not mistriste god to be mislad.

The guide wishes to be off,

"Good be in pees," said to Gaffray the gide,
"Behofull is me to uoide and go wide. 4109

[1] MS. "the."

FOr all richesse and gold worly being,
More nerre wold approche noght this said mountain,
Ne lenger *with* you be here sogernyng,
Sin to you haue I shewed here certain
Grimold the Geant most meruelous plain.
Sir Gaffray," he said, "here this is no iape,
To god you commaunde, me will hens fast scape."

as he has shown him Grimold the giant; and he assures Geoffrey that remaining there is no jape.

Gaffray laughed faste, after to hym said,
For all loues desired and besought,
A litell while bide hertly hym praid,
That he wold behold what wise that thai fought.
"For in litell space knowlich shold be wrought
As ho of us to the better shold haue,
And at this iournay ho hym best can saue."

Geoffrey laughs, and asks him to remain and see the battle,

which will be soon decided.

This gide answered, "no charge of your bataill,
you gided haue to point, lenger will noght bide;
yff ye win, no part wil ne to myn auaill.
Fro[1] you will depart, Again wil I ride."
Gaffray therof laughed suetly that tide,
Then to the gide said, "now vnderstande me,
In thys place abide vnto that ye see

The guide says he does not care to see it.

Geoffrey laughs sweetly, and again begs him to wait till

Ho bering hym best and ho better haue;
That sain And don, torn my men vnto.
Without Any doubte yut may ye go saue,
Our Army dedes declare, all we doo,
And al my gouernaunce telling thaim also."
Then hym said the gide, "do shall your entent,
My lord, I am at your commaundement.

[Fol. 80 b.]

he sees who gets the best of it.

He can then return and tell the others.

The guide consents,

[1] MS. "For."

but declares he is in great dread,

DEliuerly to hym ye procede, 4138
Assured am noght, ne haue hert non bold.
Of verray trouth I haue such fere and drede
Of this horrible fende, Geant Grimold,
That almoste my herte faillith lif to hold, 4142
And if ye knew hym lik-wise As I doo,
Auised wold ye be or to hym wold goo." 4144

and that if Geoffrey knew the giant as well as he did, he would think twice about it.

But Geoffrey promises that the giant shall die.

GAffray answerd, "of hym haue ye no doute; 4145
Grimold here shal dy, no-while shall endure."
But yut Gaffray shall fynd hym stoute,
Ful strong was Grimold in werly scomfiture.
Our lord Gaffray gyf aid and[1] conforture. 4149
Nedfull was to hym at that ceason ryght
More then euer had Any other knight, 4151

Now our Lord aid him.

Which sword gan bere or garde *with* Any. 4152
For[2] A thousande or mo of contre
Grimold the Geant slain had he sowly.
Where-for peple had wonderly to se
huge heuinesse And gret iniquite. 4156
Neuer wurse man sain, truly to rehers,
For meruelous was in dedes diuers. 4158

Grimold had, singly, slain a thousand or more men.

Never was there a worse man seen.

[Fol. 81] Geoffrey mounts, leaves the valley, and rides up the mountain,

Then Gaffray hasted, A horsebacke ryding, 4159
The montain gan take, leuing the ualay,
Which that vppon was A fantain walling,
leuing the medew And the playnes ay.
Als the gide lefte ther in that place alway; 4163
God wold not þat ill Grimold shold hym doo,
Which so was to doubte in euery stour tho. 4165

leaving the guide below.

Grimold, perceiving Geoffroy,

GAffray on hym toke vp go the montain; 4166
Grimold perceiued it, moch gan he meruaill

[1] "werly" is repeated after "and." [2] MS. "Fo."

That O soule man greithed hym to attain,
As to that place come hym For to assaill,
Sayng hym wold hate without any faill. 4170
But when in musing A litell had be,
he said, "this worthy man cometh to me 4172

wonders how one sole man dare come to assail him,

but he thinks he must be coming to propose a peace.

HEre, As I beleue, for to trete A pees." 4173
The path went he up wonder bustesly.
"Off fine fors," thought he, "moste speke, not tonge lese,
Such on entreth vp, don shall hastily."
A huge leuer toke in handes plainly, 4177
To sight semyng noght no body humain.
hym *with* for to aide, this leuer shoke plain 4179

Grimold says he shall soon go down again.

Then he takes in his hands a huge lever,

In such maner wise As man A staf wold, 4180
Or A lytell body of sixe or sef[1] yere age,
And better then, I say, seff[2] tymes fold
As a *proper* staf to walk in viage.
For the which after his strenght & corage, 4184
Ryght noght is to syght *with*-say again,
But that the stafe[3] was more then Any sain, 4186

which he uses as a staff, or as a little child would a stick.

Without gainsaying, the staff was huge,

Which lightly ne wold to bow ne aply. 4187 [Fol. 81 *b.*]
yut it behouith that A staf ply shold
To the pley of such at som tyme truly,
When in his handes this stafe gan to hold.
Seing that Gaffray towarde hym come wold, 4191
In shill hautain uois toke hym lowde to cry,
"how comest thou now me As to diffy? 4193

and could not easily be bent.

Seeing Geoffrey coming, he cries aloud, "How comest thou here?

What art thou, say me, what gost thou to seke?
Off deth no warant neuer shalt thou haue."
Gaffray anon An Answere oute gan breke,

Thou shalt have no warrant from death."

[1] MS. "of fef." [2] MS. "feff." [3] MS. "ftafte."

Geoffrey answers, "Ribald, look that thou save thyself; I shall smite off thy head."

"Therof shall the werñ; Rebaude, loke the saue;
For to scomfite the souly I the craue.
Off thi hed shall smite; dy shalt thou by me
Mortally Anon, now here diffynde the,

The unto warant, certes, thou ne may."
Grymold, this hiring, to[ke][1] hym to laugh tho.
Ther hym said Grymold, "you beseche and pray,
Fair sir, saue my life, lete me on-lif go,
Taking this peple to ranson also!"

Grimold, hearing this, began to laugh, and ironically asks Geoffrey to spare his life.

But Geoffrey sternly replies,

Geffray vnderstode, "cherle!" said hastily,
"Scornest thou *with* me? certes thou shalt dy!

that he trusts to rend his head to the teeth.

HEre lo! shalt thou dy; I limite thi place,
Neuer Ranson take shall I to thy charge;
But doñ to the teeth the shall rent by grace."
Ther had was A place, inly gret And large.

Geoffrey braces on his shield, and shakes his spear, being no coward.

Gaffray that tyme, enbrasing shild and targe,
By malice And wreth his spere Faste he shoke,
his coursere spored, no fentise on hym toke,

[Fol. 82] Riding straight at the giant, he deals him such a blow that only his steel hauberk saved him.

FOr noble loos And prowesse to acquire.
With the Forhed plain gain hym went, & smote
Enmyddes the brest under the pappe with yre.
Such A stroke hym dalt ther vppon hys cote,
Ne had the hauberke smal mail be, god wote,
Als hys brest of stile, ille hym hade come sure;
For Grimold ther was at ille auenture.

Grimold fell on the ground,

NOght-for-that yut vppon the hard ground
Tombled Grimold enmeddes the mountain,

[1] Fr. text, "*si prent a rire.*"

hys legges reised up an-hy that stound, throwing up his legs.
Wher-*with* Grimold was strongly greued plain.
Full wightly tho releued hym sertain, 4226 But soon he got up again, while Geoffrey alights
In hys hert gan fele full dolorous woo.
That Gaffray this saw, ther discended tho 4228

That hys hors shold noght myscheuously sle, 4229 that his horse may not be killed under him.
As vnder hym to mortall deth noght cast.
Grimold the Geant, lenger bode noght he,
But vp hym Reised, Gaffray beheld faste[1]; Grimold looks at Geoffrey,
So but litell saw hym don to thraste, 4233 and in wonder asks his name.
Als in so litell body such uertew,
Ther hym demaunding, "what art thou? say trew,

That such a stroke me toke? neuer felt such on, 4236 He says he never threw his limbs up like that before,
My lemys so cast vp; yut know I noght the
Wherehens thou art, ne what is thy person.
But off the me uenge shamed shall I be; yet he is ashamed to revenge himself,
And yut, so I am; but yut, say thou me, 4240
What thou art me say, I the here require; and again asks his name.
No gentill knyght art but graunt my desire." 4242

GAffray Answerd to [t]hys baculere,[2] 4243 [Fol. 82 b.] Geoffrey answered this bachelor,
"My name wil not hide by ryght non engine;
Gaffray *with* the gret toth named am awhere,
In many contres know the name of myne;
For I Am Gaffray, sone to Melusine, 4247 "I am Geoffrey of Lusignan, Melusine's son."
Off lusignen borne of þat good lady,
And of lusignen, know thou wel, am I." 4249

When thys had spoken vnto hym Gaffray, 4250
The Geant hym said, "I know the full well; The giant says that he knows him now.
Full moch haue I hurd spokyn of the aday,
And of thy gret prowesse eueridell.

[1] MS. "fafte." [2] MS. "baiulere."

for that he had slain Guedon his cousin, for which he will now pay him off.

Guedon thou slyest, my cosyn, soth to tell, 4254
In guerrande lande; thy guerdon for to haue,
To this place ert come it to speke and craue. 4256

Hit shalt thou haue by fors of myghty were, 4257
For of that shall I here now take vengance."

The giant thought he was speaking truth, but he was nearer lying. Geoffrey tells him that desire of revenge will increase his hurt.

he trowed say trouth, but lied more nerre.
Gaffray hym said, "trowyng this instance,
Such supposse to uenge ther huge shame perschance,
Which ofte cressith hurt, men may wel it se,
In sondry places conceyued may be." 4263

The giant strikes at Geoffrey with his lever, but

Thys cruell Geant ne myght hym withhold 4264
When so hym saw scorn, his leuer haused hy,
Gaffray to smite trowyng tho he shold.

Geoffrey blenches,

Apart Gaffray uoided full warly,
Somwhat blent, the stroke so forth passyng by, 4268

and the lever makes a great hole in the rock.

With hym noght mette; the leuer doñ to ground
With-in the Roche made A grett depe trowe þat stounde; 4270

[Fol. 83] It tears the rock a foot deep.

For it throwen was wonder bustesly, 4271
And with such rudesse gan it to discend,
That A plain fote large the roche tare strangely.
Gaffray hys sword drew hym for to diffend,

Geoffrey lends the giant a stroke on the elbow.

On the elbow[1] the Geant smote at end, 4275
Such a stroke hym lent, to full huge maruell,
That of the hauberk brek many a maill; 4277

The grass round about becomes red.

Fvll litell fauted, fouled had noght be. 4278
The vermail blode doñ ryn wonderly,
The herbes Aboute becam[2] red to se.

The giant again raises his lever.

This fers Geant tho to Gaffray cam wightly,
With full malice yre And cruell enuy 4282

[1] MS. "ellow." [2] MS. "becan."

The gret leuer reised vp and hy brought;
Full heuy was, but it greuyd hym noght; 4284

GAffray thought smite, but he uoyded place. 4285
Ther the stroke fill don thro foote in-to grounde,
So in harde roche smote he ther apace;
Whereof the Geant was full wroth that stounde.
With that stroke his arme Astoned tho founde, 4289
And thys said leuer to-rent thorughly,
And Amidward broken outerly; 4291

Geoffrey again blenches, and the stroke tears the ground three feet deep,

so that the giant finds his arm stunned and his lever broken.

Wherof Gaffray thankes to godd yilding. 4292
Ther Gaffray hym smot *with* hys sword full faste,
Hys grett strenght And fors ther manly shewing,
An-hy hym smoth vppon the scul in haste,
The Geant *with* that stroke Almoste doñ caste; 4296
To whome *þat* stripe was greuous manyfold.
For sorow And wo An-hy hys hand gan hold, 4298

Then Geoffrey shows his strength,

and smites the giant a grievous stroke on the skull.

GAffray forthwith smote vppon the hed an-hy; 4299
Off that greuous stroke Gaffray greued sore.
The Geant his fuste lete to fle strongly;
Gaffray *with* his sword smote hym euermore,
To whom belonged fight in knightly lore, 4303
Vppon hys shuldre A stroke gaffe of meruell
That he rent and brak both hauberke & maill.

[Fol. 82 *b.*]

Next the giant smites Geoffrey on the head,

but Geoffrey returns him a marvellous stroke on the shoulder, which rends both haubork and mail.

Plain pawme of hande the swerde made entre; 4306
The sanguine blode doñ ran the belay,
Anon all made purpurat rede to se.
Thys Geant, of whom we declare and say,
hys goddys[1] corsed, hys goddys gan renay, 4310
Enlesse thei[2] wold gif hym Aid[3] or socour,
Both Margot, polin, Bernagant that houre, 4312

The giant, severely wounded,

curses his gods and abjures them, both Magot, Apolin, and Tervagaut.

[1] MS. "goodys." [2] MS. "ther." [3] MS. "And."

MAhounde, Iupiter, And als other mo; 4313
hym-selfen bement sorily expresse.
But for ryght noght was his gret waling tho;
But Gaffray at end his wil shal redresse,
Noght only anon but er þat he cesse, 4317
But yut shall he haue I-now anguisse grete,
Er the victory be conquere[d] and gette.[1] 4319

The Geant saw come towarde hym Gaffray, 4320
Adrad, afferd of hym was gretly.
Anon forth lepte, enbrasing hym alway,
Teryng, drawyng here and there besily,
As he which was takyn cursidly. 4324
Gaffray gripte he there faste by the raynes,
Ech of thaim both suffryng there hug paynes 4326

[Fol. 84]
That thay almost loste ther breth outerly. 4327
Strongly went Aboute, so fast hurteling;
Il to-geders went As were egally,
Such wyse hurteling, beting, and drawyng
That fro other sondred escaping. 4331
Atwixste thaim yeuen many strokis tho,
And Gaffray hym smote vppon the hanche so

Wyth A costile which in hys sleffe gan hold, 4334
that his Iesseron failed and breke to,
Thorewly passyng the costile-yre cold;
Hastily the blode lepte out and ran tho.
The Geant bakwarde lepyng Gaffray fro, 4338
Ther-thens spedfully takyng the montain.
Gaffray hasted after, hym to attain, 4340

TO take leue of hym, but faste he gan fle; 4341
In litell time and space ferre was he thens.
In A chine of the Roch made he entry,

But his great wailing was useless.

Geoffrey will conquer at last, but will have much trouble first.

The giant leaps at Geoffrey, and grips him fast by the reins,

and they wrestle together.

They hurtle, beat, and pull each other till they at last separate,

and then Geoffrey smites him on the haunch

with a knife which he held in his sleeve, piercing through his coat of mail.

The giant flees for his life.

The giant enters a chine of the rock,

[1] See line 3942.

For gret doubte had of Gaffrayes uiolens. being greatly afraid.
Gaffray sory that uoided was ther-hens,
Thys cruell Geant whom he so had loste, Geoffrey mourns that he has lost him,
To hys coursere cam, lepte vp, made no boste,

TO hys gide went, declaryng hym and told, but returns to his guide, and tells him all the story.
Fro worde to worde, All thar werke indede,
like As thay had doñ; And how this Geant bold
Thens into a caue[1] fled for fere and drede,
Within the quike roche for all hys manlyhed.
The gide vnto hym approched full ny, The guide marvels strongly,
Which there wondred and merueled strongly,

HOw that Gaffray had such hug hardinesse. [Fol. 84 *b.*]
Hys[2] helme wasted sore, rent And broken all, beholding how Geoffrey's helm was broken,
And hys hauberke disma[i]lled all expresse, and how full his hauberk was of holes.
In many places holes gret And small.
The gide said, "so god me aid eternall,
I perceiue full well And ryght certanly, He compliments Geoffrey.
That Gaffray is full of prowesse and hardy."

COmyng thay saw of peple gret fusion, Many nobles approach,
Many nobles *with* other of contre,
As sone As the dede vnderstode Anon,
Demaundyng suetly of Gaffray the fre and ask Geoffrey his name,
Wat was his name? and thaim declared he. and whence he came.
And after thay had demaunded hys name,
Then whens he was, off wat renon & fame,

And that to thaim wold the verray trouth say, One of the barons addresses him,
(For fain wold thay know, And he all tham told).
On of the Barons then said, "lord, you pray

[1] MS. "came," altered to "cauce." [2] MS. "hyis."

here vnderstandeth what you shall vnfold;

and tells him the giant will not return to fight him for any worldly wealth,

Be ye in certain, for all worly gold
Thys cruel Geant, (that god hym confound!)
Again you will noght retorn at no stound,

for that he knows he is predestined to die by Geoffrey's hand.

WEl knowen is hym he shuld nought escape
Fro your handes twain, yf he were in hold;
That his mortall deth labour wold and shape,
For so is hym predestinat[1] of old."

Geoffrey declares he will never depart till he finds him.

"By the Trynite," said Gaffray the bold,
"Fro contre shall I neuer, lo! departe
Till that I hym finde by som maner art."

[Fol. 85] One of the barons tells him that the mountain is enchanted,

"My lorde," said on of thaim, "beth noght in doute;
This montain wheron this Geant is truly
Full of the fairy is it all aboute.

and that the noble Helmas, king of Albany, was enclosed therein with his three daughters,

The noble helmas, king of Albany,
With hys doughtres thre ther was verily
Enclosed *with*-in, nawhere myght issew,
By such werkes wroughten incongrew,

because he had wilfully beheld their mother in child-bed,

FOr that there moder, the lady presine,
lying in gesian wilfully had sain;
Which hym diffended that by non engine,
Vppon this diffence that she hym made plain.

after distinctly promising he would not do so.

Noght-withstandyng went to se hir dedes solain,
Which therof with hir made had couenaunt
Goyng ne comyng to hir wold noght haunt,

She had at that time three fair daughters.

As toward hyr whyle in gesian lay;
Wher if so gan do, at end mischef shold.
With doughtres fair in lay she that day,

This fair lady's name was Presine,

Thys ioly lady, presine, to behold,
Doughtres thre had childed and vnfold.

[1] MS. "perdeftinat."

helmas forsworn, periured, and comerd to,
The couenaunt hold *with* presine made tho 4403
and Helmas had made her the above promise;

FOr-soth he failled; wherthorugh he lost 4404
Presine hys lady, As after shall hyre;
but he failed to keep it,
hyt declare And[1] tell shall my wersom gost.
With thes doughters thre he closed entire,
For ther moder lost, the soth to acquire. 4408
In this hy montain shitte up were thay tho,
Neuer was knowen to what place were goo. 4410
and he and his three daughters were enclosed in the mountain.

FOr-sothe helmas neuer issued oute; 4411
Ther were thay shitte vp fro *þat* heder-to.
[Fol. 85 *b.*]
Ever since a huge giant had been their warden,
But in this montain, *with*out any doute,
hath euer sith be an hug Geant, loo!
Wardain, *with* meruelous ouercomyng so 4415
That men ne durst noght it to approche ny.
Tyll your comyng now no man sain truly, 4417
and (till Geoffrey's coming) there had never been a man

BUt that this Geant put to deth mortall; 4418
So was he myghty and meruelous stronge.
whom the giant had not slain when they fought together.
This contre hath he put to mischef all,
Our kyng which we hild moste chefe vs Among
litell hath fro hym deffended our wrong. 4422
To grimold vs hath of Fors made yilding,
Euermore sithen that helmas our king 4424
All of them had been forced to yield to Grimold the giant.

INto such felowship was put and caste. 4425
Thys Grymold is the fifte Geant found,
The sixte, or the sefth of thaim hath be last,
Wasting thys contre both the lande and ground.
To All men making werre full habound 4429
Vnto the time of your blessed comyng,
The which ben welcome to vs here beyng." 4431
Grimold was the fifth, the sixth, or perhaps the seventh of these wardens who had made war abound to all men.

[1] MS. "Ant."

When Geoffrey heard the news,

When that Gaffray hurd thes new nouels told,
Full good and fair bene thes tydinges truly.

he took an oath that he would die as a recreant or else discomfit the giant.

Ther A gret oth made As man inly bold,
Aforn thaim present to all openly,
That he wold be dede ful recreantly
Or discomfite wold this cruell Geant;
He doubted no-thyng, the man so pusant.

[Fol. 86] Next day Geoffrey leapt on his courser,

The night passed, the fair day appering,
Aforne thes Barons full twenty and mo
Gaffray wightly on hys coursere leping,
The Geant neuer doubted for no wo.

and went up the mountain spurring him nimbly.

leue toke, after went vp the montain tho;
Full gret pain he had to go vp an-hy;
Hys coursere sporing that ceason wightly,

Perceiving the hole in the rock where the giant entered,

That to the Roche cam, so spored and smote.
Tournyng enuyron, the hole perceyuinge,
Auised and knew, well gan it to note
That thys huge Geant ther had made entring.

he descended and looked in;

Fro hys coursere doñ Anon ther leping,
A-foote discended, in-warde gan behold.
But to see *with*in ne myght noght be[1] told;

but saw no more than he would in an oven. "I wonder," says he, "how he got in, seeing he is so wondrously 'corporal,' much more than I am.

NO thyng he saw more then in a ouen he.
Gaffray tho said, "Astoned am in all
Wherby the Geant now here passed be,
Sin þat gret thikke is, wonder corporall,
Moche more then I am fourged personall.
I knaw well that here or there entre made,
Noght that way, but this, ran he full sad.

See here the cave.

SE here now the place where he made entre,
Se here now the caue, *with*out Any doute,
Where thys Geant entred in to se;

[1] MS. "he."

Thys is the gret Roche openly all-oute,
Where grene grasse hath noñ growing there Aboute.
The caue was hewin *with*in large and brode
So As he myght ren *with*out any bode. 4466

This is the great rock wherein the cave is hewn,
and it is big enough inside.

FOr he was full huge, moche gretter then I ame. 4467
But, so iesu crist me warde fro noisaunce,
Whatsomeuer approch me of grame,
Me wil not withold by no gouernaunce
But hym here *with*in will seke þis instaunce." 4471

[Fol. 86 b.]

Whatever happens, I will seek him inside."

Entre made he tho ther in-to the grounde,
For-soth ther *with*in thought seke hym that stounde. 4473

So he enters the cave.

Iff that he be there, truly shall hym fynd. 4474
The spere lete doñ, ren the hed, be-forn lete goo;
After ny sewed, derkly, As man blynd.
Put hys feet before, noght drad, in went tho,
Shittyng vp hys mouth *with* hys teeth also. 4478

Letting down his spear, he pushes the spear-head before him, and follows it, clenching his teeth.

Adon the spere lowe analed he,
Till he cam vnto the botme and entre. 4480

Thus came he to the bottom.

When at the botme was, hee gan take hys spere;
Off An herd wode was, breke[1] wold not sothlesse;
Man better timbre neuer saw nawhere,
For broken wold, ne had be good expresse;
Inly good it was, to no breche gan dresse. 4485

His spear being of a hard wood, such as could not be broken,

Ny the hed the spere gan he take full prest,
And forth went apas, lenger wold not rest. 4487

he seizes it near the head, and goes on,

[1] MS. "bbreke."

After, Aferrome saw he hug clernesse, 4488
When a litell while forth ther he had go.
pushing it always before him, testing the way. The spere euermore Aforne hym gan dresse
In tastyng the way, vntill that he tho
Ariued and cam A fair place vnto, 4492
At last he arrives at a fair chamber. Where A chambre founde full fair wroght & well,
There fourged and made was it of nouell.[1] 4494

[Fol. 87] She myght in no wise, lo! more fairer be. 4495
In ryght side And lifte wrought by good auise;
It was carved in the rock, with no place of egress, Coruen in the roche full freshly was she;
But o going oute perceiue myght no wise.
Ryght fair it was And gentile to deuise, 4499
and was full of all kinds of riches. The rychesse gret prise, hard to attain,
That in this chambre had was tho and sain. 4501

It was adorned with pure gold and rich jewels. She[2] All betan was with fine pured gold 4502
Full of riche perrey, made[3] to gret maistry.
In the midst was a tomb, supported on six pillars of fine gold. Enmyddes A tombe of this chambre told.
Thys tombe sette vppon sixe pilours hy
Off fyne masse gold, *with* perles many, 4506
A man shold not finde nawhere more fine;
Precyous rich were, of huge medicine. 4508

Above it was a king, well formed of chalcedony. Above was had A knightly armed kyng, 4509
Off cassedony will formed and made.
Vppon this said tombe was he ther ligging,
Resplendising fair in this chambre sprad.
and beside him a fair lady of alabaster. Ioynant ny ther-to A fair lady had, 4513
Being in estat (who beheld with ey)
Off Alabastre was this noble lady. 4515

[1] Here follows the catchword—"she myght in no wise."
[2] MS. "Sfhe." [3] MS. "perreymade."

TO constantinoble fro-thens is no faill, 4516
Ne myght ymage finde *with* it to compare.
Off this full strange sight Gaffray gan meruell,
An huge tablet this fair lady bar
In hir handes twain all this to declare, 4520
Resembling to be fourged all of-new.
In this tablet wrete As here shall ensew. 4522

Geoffrey marvels at this, but observes a tablet which the lady bare in her hands, on which was written the following:

"Her[1] light sir helmas, the full noble king, 4523
Which me hath loste by hys gret deray
Wherof I was And had huge estonyng.
Thys noble kyng was full Amerous ay;
Couenaunt me had, er spoused were Alway, 4527
That neuer day, whiles he gan endure,
The time that I in Gesian ly sure, 4529

[Fol. 87 *b.*]
"Here lieth Sir Helmas the king, who promised me ere we were wedded that, whilst I lay in child-bed,

HE shuld noght enquere by no maner way 4530
Off my dedes, neither no wise me se,
Towardes me noght come ne go no day,
Till ceason And time I reised shold be.
Tho it fel and cam, of my belay thre 4534
Full faire doughtres had in this same yere,
Which right gracyous And full hable were. 4536

he would never inquire about me, nor see me, till I was recovered.
Then it befell that I had three fair daughters at once,

HElmas so gan do that he me gan se 4537
In such wise As I in my childbed lay.
Anon ther fro hym I uanished me,
Such wise departed and thens fly my way;
Neuer knew what part went I my iournay; 4541
And my doughtres thre forth *with* me lad,
Al thaim norished vnto gret age had, 4543

and Helmas contrived to see me;
whereupon I vanished and took my daughters with me,
and brought them up.

FVll well amended And right well gan growe. 4544
With my mylke tham fed, and milked all thre;
After thaim told, when fiftene yeres gan owe,

When they were fifteen years old, I told them how

[1] MS. "Hher."

I had lost their father.

The maner how I loste ther fader fre.
In[1] Aueblon the fairy contre, 4548

The eldest, Melusine, was very vexed about it.

The eldeste of birth, maried she was,
Melusine called in euery plas. 4550

[Fol. 88 *being lost, its place is here supplied from the French text, beginning on* Fol. 103 *b.*]

[A ses deulx seurs, selon Raison,
Compterent toute la chaison,
Et dirent moy, *que* suis leur mere,
Me vouldroient vengier de le*ur* pere.
Les trois filles furent daccort
De Iecter sur leur pere vng sort,
Pour me vengier du *grant* meffait
Que p*ar* folie eust vers moy fait.
A ce toutes segsentirent,[2]
Et dedens le mont enclouirent
Helmas, qui leur pere estoit,
Et qui menty sa foy auoit.
Quant Il fut mort, Ie lenterray
Soubz ceste tombe, & enserray,
Et fiz ceste tombe ainsi faire,
Ainsi figurer & pourtra[i]re ;
Dess*us* fiz mectre ma semblance,
Affin quil en fust Ramembra*n*ce
A cellui qui le tableau lyroit ;
Car ceans homme nentreroit,
Sil nestoit de la lignie
En avolon et en fairie
De mes trois filles, dont pourrez
Oyr parler q*uant* vous vouldrez.
Les geans a garder commis,
De celle heure q*ue* cy la mis,
Que nul entrast en ce passaige
Sil nestoit yssu du lignaige.
Ie ordonnay dons a mes filles

[With her two sisters, as was right,
they talked over every circumstance,
and told me, who was their mother,
they wished to avenge me on their father.
The three daughters agreed
to bring a fate upon their father,
to avenge me of the great misdeed
that he had foolishly done against me.
To this they all assented,
and enclosed within the mountain
Helmas, who was their father,
and who had broken his promise.
When he died, I buried him
beneath this tomb, and enclosed him there,
and caused this tomb to be thus made,
thus sculptured and painted.
Thereon I caused my likeness to be put
that there might be remembrance of it
in him who should read the tablet.
For never should man enter here
except he were of the lineage
(in Avalon and the fairy-country)
of my three daughters, of whom
you may hear tell when you will.
I bade the giants to watch,
from the hour I set them there,
that none should enter by this passage
except he were sprung of our line.
I provided gifts for my daughters,

[1] In the margin, "*Aueblon yf*e *fayre contre.*" [2] faffentirent (?).

Qui gentes furent & abilles ;	who were beautiful and fair:
A mellusine la maisnee,	to Melusine, the eldest,
Qui moult estoit saige & sence,	who was very wise and prudent,
Ie luy donne don a sa vie,	I give her a gift for life
Depar lordre de faerie,	(according to the order of fairies),
Tant *que* le siecle dureroit,	that, as long as her life lasted,
Le sempmedi *ser*pent seroit :	she should be a serpent every Saturday ;
Et qui la vouldroit espous*er*,	and, whoever would marry her,
Delle ne deuoit address*er*	must not approach her
Ce Iour, mais soy garder *moul*t bien,	on that day, but take good heed,
Quelle part quel fust, sur toute Rien ;	wherever he was, and in every thing.
Que en cil estoit ne la veist,	He must not see what she then was,
Ne qua nulluy ne le dist.	nor tell anybody of it.
Et qui celle Regle suiroit,	And, whoever followed this rule,
Mellusine toudis vinroit	to him would Melusine always come
Ainsi comme femme mortelle,	just like a mortal woman,
Et poure femme naturelle ;	as women naturally do.
Puis mouroit naturelment,	Then should she die naturally,
Comme les autres proprement.	and as others usually do.
Melior, la fille moyenne,	To Melior, the second daughter,
Qui tant fut belle crestien*ne*,	who was so fair a creature,
Vng don lui donne de faerie,	I give a fairy-gift,
Bien est Raison q*ue* le vous die.	and 'tis well that I should tell you what.
En vng chasteau fort & massis,	In a castle strong and massive,
Qui en armenye est assis,	which is situate in Armenia,
Voire, en *gran*t la armenye,	(in great Armenia, verily,)
Ie luy ordonnay q*ue* sa vie	I bade her that, during her life,
Tendroit leans vng espriuer ;]	she should keep a sparrow-hawk there ;

[Fol. 89]

Where it shall behoue nightes to wacche thre 4607
As ho which off hir demaunde A yifte wold,
And what he desire I-graunted shall be ;
The firste demaunde demaundith ther haue shold.
But not hir body desire haue ne holde ; 4611
Off it Melior loke he noght require,
Neither by no meene hir not desire. 4613

Whoever wishes to ask a boon of her must watch there three nights, and he shall have it;

but he must not ask for *herself*.

But if he yield to somnolency, he shall be her prisoner for ever.

NO knight wake ne shold but of hye birth were;
And ho-so do slepe in tho nightes thre
(Wher lytell or moche) in sampnolence there,
Alway perpetuall there abide shall he
In the paleis with melior the fre 4618
Such is the gift I give her.
As prisonere in prison alway:
Such gifte I hir giffe As this tyme dysplay. 4620

Palestine, the youngest, shall have this destiny:

PAlatine[1] the yongeste suster tho was, 4621
So named and called was at that day;
To whom I desteined to purchas
Such A maner gyfte As I you shall say:
she shall dwell in a very high mountain, where men's hearts fail them,
That in coinqs[2] the hy montain ay, 4625
Where failled hert haue men full many,
Ensuffering full ofte ryght gret misery, 4627

and shall there guard her father's treasure, till a knight of our lineage comes and takes it by force,

THer to warde and kepe hir faders tresoure; 4628
Enduryng hir life, in that place to be,
Till som approche and come, of linage our,
To that hy montain by fors and strenght he
and afterwards conquers Palestine, the land of promise.
To ascende an-hye Aboue the hill to see, 4632
The tresour caste oute, and after shall conquere
The lande of promission by hys powere. 4634

[Fol. 89 *b.*] This mountain is situated in Arragon.

THo was the monte of whom we speke and say 4635
Sette in Arrigon of trouth verily,[3]
Which that is a thing knowen well be may.
This presine to hyr doughters thre surely,
Thus Presine avenged herself on her three daughters,
Which were full hable and ryght faire to ey, 4639
On thaim the moder auenged that brayd,
By the maner that Aboue is saide, 4641

[1] The *A* being indistinct, it looks like "Prllatine;" see l. 5049.
[2] Very indistinct.
[3] In the margin—*Palestine yn a castell yn aragon.*

FOr ther fader helmas king of renon,
That thay enclosyd by ther wrong derain
With-in the montain ther of Aualon;
For by my faith I loued *þat* souerain,
how-be-it *þat* he misdede me Again;
Off feith and of trouth I loued hym hertly
With all the sprites of my body." 4642 4646 4648

Because they shut up their father Helmas in the mountain in Avalon.

For I (Presine) loved him heartily though he sinned against me."

Ryght thus was And went the scripture saing;
And when Gaffray, uaillant man and wurthy,
Had radde thys tablet, he moch meruelling;
But yut he knew noght uerray certainly,
But santred and doubted uerryly
Wher on was or no of this saide linage.
Fro-thens went Gaffray *with* full fers corage, 4649 4653 4655

Such was the writing on the tablet.

After reading it Geoffrey greatly wondered whether he was of Presine's lineage or not.

Inly faste cerching als both low and hy,
Where that Grimold in Any place finde myght;
So thens departed passyng ouer lightly.
Al the wais toke and sought thys huge wight,
Grimold myght not fynde ne of hym haue syght.
Streight Aforn hym A fair feld gan behold,
Ther perceyuyng A square tour, A strong hold. 4656 4663

Passing thence he searches for Grimold everywhere,

and at last sees a fair field with a tower in it.

The gate saw open, the barreres[1] undo;
Into the hous Gaffray went Anon,
Stifly And bigly his spere holdyng tho.
In a gret latise be-held manyon,
Al prisoneres where in warde thai echon.
Of hym wondred And merueled strongly,
And on of thaim said, "go hens ful quikly! 4670

[Fol. 90]

The gate being open he enters and sees a number of prisoners behind a great lattice;

they warn him off,

I Concell you," said, "depart hens Anon
That this huge Geant in no wise you se;

lest the giant should destroy him.

[1] MS. "barrores."

Or in-to som hole go, uoyding his person,
Or *with* the Geant distroed shall ye be!"

But he laughs, and asks where the giant can be found,

Gaffray laughed; after demaunded he, 4674
Which on his necke bare A spere full grete,
Iff that the Geant he myght funde or gette, 4676

for he is come to fight him. One of the prisoners again warns him to go,

With hym thought to fight, hys purpos uerily. 4677
On of thaim hym said, "se hym shall Anon,
And I beleue ye will it sore aby
iff he you se, for strong is of person;
To deth will you put forsothe er ye gon." 4681

but Geoffrey tells him not to fear,

Gaffray to hym said, "my ryght full suete frende,
haue ye no drede but of your-selfe at end; 4683

as he can fight the giant alone.

Alone shall I bere the strokes And dedes, 4684
For Alone I haue take this enterprise."

Just then the giant came up, and, perceiving Geoffrey, fled into a chamber hastily,

yn the same moment, places, and stede
Gaffray *with* long toth the Geant gan auise,
That iuged was to deth, wel gan aduertise. 4688
he strongly ther fled As he myght goodly,
A chambre perceiued, in went rabbishly, 4690

[Fol. 90 b.] and drew the door after him.

The dore after drew; Gaffray gan it sse, 4691
After sped Apace, yrously being;

But Geoffrey follows, and bursts the door open with a kick, and enters.

Smiting hastyli, the dore gan vp fle,
With þat stroke the dorn[1] Anon unbarring;
Withe the sole of fote was he tho smiting. 4695
Into chambre-floure the doure made fle lightly;
For all barred was, entred he wightly. 4697

The giant smites Geoffrey with a mallet, and would have slain him, but for his helmet.

A [s]quare maillet the Geant gan hold; 4698
Vppon Gaffray hed ther-*with* yaf wightly.
With that stroke he was stoned manyfold;
Ne had hys helmet[2] be full strong and myghty,

[1] "dore" (?). [2] MS. "helyet." Fr. text, *heaulme*.

Gaffray had he slain, so caused to dy.
And yut not-for-that Gaffray tombled there.
Anon releuing in wighty manere,

Geoffrey falls, but rises again,

THen hym saide Gaffray, "of the haue full fair,
But Anon I shall yilde it unto the,
With my swerde the teere, not will make retrair."
Gaffray drew hys sword, harde well ground to se,
Withe the bakke went, so harde the Geant smote he,
Gaffray his good sword so put thorugh hym tho,
Thorugh the breste the crosse was it unto;

and says, "I received then a fair stroke, and now I will repay it."

Drawing back he lunges at him, driving the sword through him up to the hilt.

Fro part in-to part hym *perced* ouer all.
The Geant to grounde our-torned tho,
Which so ofte had made many men full thrall.
No-thyng was he wurth, right noght myght he do,
Where cursedly had don *with* his maillet soo.
A meruelus cry vp he cast *þat* stound,
All the toure souned when he fill to ground.

Then fell the giant who had so often made men thralls.

He cast up a marvellous cry, and all the tower sounded.

THys Geant tho fall to mortal deth colde
With that mighty stroke Gaffray hym yeuyng.
Gaffray drew hys swerde ther oute fro Grimold,
Into hys scaberge Again hym puttyng.
Ther ryght no lenger wold he be byding,
To the prisoneres fro-thens Anon went,
And to demaunde thaim was full diligent

[Fol. 91]

Then Geoffrey drew his sword out of Grimold, and put it in the scabbard.

Then he went to the prisoners,

IF of Norbelande thei were As was told,
And what maner thyng gain hym hade misdo,
And wherfor in preson he tham gan hold.
Anon on said, "for trewage was it tho
That the gret Geant yeuen had vnto;

and asked if they came from Northumberland, and why they were in prison.

They said it was because they had not paid the giant

the tribute they owed him.

The which, sir, is noght yut hym paid no wyse,
Wherfor this now bide All his tirandise." 4732

"Rejoice then," said Geoffrey, "for ye are struck out of his papers,

GAffray Answered, "ioyous And glad be, 4733
Now Full merily demene you Amonge,
For of his paupires strike oute plain be ye!

and I have acquitted you of your tribute by killing him."

Here hym haue I slain And put to dethe stronge;
Neuer shall he you At no day do wrong. 4737
Of trouth mortall deth haue I put hym to,
your trewage haue I now here aquitte so." 4739

Then they were glad and asked Geoffrey to let them out.

WHen thes nouels hurde, ioyous therof were; 4740
Gaffray thay besought thaim deliuer oute.
He Answering said, "do shall my powere."

So Geoffrey searched till he found the keys, and coming to the 200 prisoners,

Tho cerched, enquered, And went Aboute,
Till the keys Founde *with*-out any doute. 4744
And when he thaim had resorted Again,
Where too hundert were And mo in certain, 4746

'[Fol. 91 *b.*] undid the lattice, and gave them leave to go.

THe lateis unshitte where-in prisoned were, 4747
Presently thaim al gaf he leue to go.
Fro-thens issued thay *with* gladsom chere,
That nouelles pleased and greed well to
That escape shold thys painfull prison fro. 4751

Geoffroy leads them to the chamber where lies the giant.

Into the chambre Gaffray tho thaim lade
To se this Geant dede and cold ther had. 4753

All wonder how Geoffrey could kill this monster, of so "unfitting" a stature.

EUery man hym blissed of Gaffray, 4754
Ther meruellyng gretly of this auenture,
Hym to haue in such herdinesse Alway
To assail such A hiduous creature
Off so wonderfull unfittyng stature, 4758
Thys gret monstre, huge, large, and cruell,
Which so meruelous was, felenous and fell. 4760

They all said they had never seen such a man

EUery man blissid, euery man said 4761
That neuer such a man ther dais gan se.

To thaim saing Gaffray, "hire me now þis braide,
Here now ye Barons acquitail haue by me;
Vnto this Geant no more owe shall ye.
Full moch good hath *with*in thys dongon;
Barons, you it yeue into your bandone,

in all their days.
Geoffrey tells them they now owe the giant nothing,

And all that is here you it gyffe frely,
Both gold and hauour here, all that his wace.
hit reioys and take, for noght haue will I;
here you will commaunde to our lordes grace,
Take all þat here is in this tour and place.
To tary or byde certes will noght here,
To labour will go in place ellyswhere;

but that they may carry away all the treasures they can find, for he would have nothing for himself.

Lenger will noght bide, dwelle, ne tary."
"your mercy and grace," thai to hym gan say,
"So it myght you please off your courtessy,
Euery of us you beseke and pray
Wherby ye come in to say us your way,
Where for the Geant non durste make entre,
That dede and recreant here lith now may see."

[Fol. 92]
They thank him greatly,
and ask him how he came there, where no one dared come for the giant.

Thero Gaffray thaim declared all and told.
When thay had hym hurde, on said hym vnto,
"Neuer fro this Roche issued man so bold
Excepte this Geant ligging ded here, lo!
And his cruell antecessoures also,
By whom to greuous torment put we be;
Exiled and wasted haue thai our contre,

Geoffrey tells them,
and they all say that no man so bold ever issued from the rock, except the giant and his antecessors,

Both tho gret and small haue thay had in hate;
Distroed also all that thai finde might,

who had slain 400 knights.

Foure houndred haue slain, preuyng weĺ þis date.
Now our sorow ye haue vnto an ende dight,
They said too that they would accompany him till he found his own people. And Als put to end the fary work ryght.
With you shall retorn, going vppon way,
Till that your peple approche and fynde may."

Then they set the giant's body up upon a cart, THes Barouns thaim made tho full redy
To put this Geant ther a carte uppon;
An-hy hym dressed As for to cary,
Neuer saw man to sightes uision
So gret As was this Geant enuiron,
to which it was fast bound and attached. Euery man blessed that hym gan se;
Well bounde and tacked to that carte was he.

[Fol. 92 b.] Wherever they went all men marvelled at the monster, Thorugh the contre went, hym carying;
Wherouer thai rode and passid full faste.
Of this said monstre al men merueling,
Wherof the peple Abasshed and agast.
and blessed the hour when Geoffrey came there. Forsoth euery man blissed thaim in haste
The hour that Gaffray ariued at þat coste,
That thaim deliuerd of this cursed goste.

They would gladly have made Geoffrey their king, GAffray conueed to his peple that houre,
huge honour and gold hym ther presenting;
And full humbly gan do hym ther honour,
So As for ther lorde thai hym holding,
For passed And dede was their noble king.
but he would in no wise longer sojourn there. But he wold no wise lenger ther sogourñ,
But to lusignen wold he tho retourñ.

Then he leapt upon his courser, Off ther huge honour wold he take no-thyng,
Retourñ wold ther-thens without bode any.
Gaffray, which no man[1] neuer was doubtyng,
Vppon his coursere anon lepte lightly
As he which was both doubty and wurthy.

[1] MS. "noman."

"Adieu," tho he said, "Adieu you commaund,
ye noble Barons present of Norbeland,

and bade the barons adieu.

TO you leue the warde of this contre."
Fro-thens deperted, semyng ther to longe,
With hym his peple ridyng As shold be.
Ther rode A gret stour, waloping ful stronge,
Till to se cam; A barge gan he to fonge,
Desiryng to se his fader of blode,
And Melusine his gentile moder goode.

Then he and his people galloped fast till they came to the sea.

There he took ship, desiring to see his father and Melusine.

HE taried noght, sailled And rowed soo,
That he approched Guerrand tho full ny;
The winde was good, he strongly sailled tho,
That in litell while to port cam surely.
And when Gaffray had hauyn ueryly,
Anon A-land he descended ryght,
And ther Ariued certes *þat* same night.

[Fol. 93]
The wind was good and he soon came to port.

Then he disembarked and arrived at Lusignan that same night.

ALl the wordle anon wenten hym Again,
Men, wemen, children, of ech side moste and leste;
The Barons fested this hy souerain,
hys fader Raymounde vnto hym cam preste.
Gaffray hym salute As man moste vmbleste,
Wightly Anon hym Gaffray gan enbrace,
Neuer at more ease of hert he ne wace;

All the world came to meet him, and Raymond with the rest.

Geoffrey salutes him humbly, embraces and kisses him.

HIs uisage and mouth ther gan he to kisse.
Into a chambre both thai made entre,
Wherof many thinges spake thai, I-wisse,
Many tales told ther Gaffray the fre,
And Raymound to hym that in mynde wold be
hou hys moder lost he had and lete.
With malicious wreth Gaffray gan suete;

Then they entered a chamber and talked together.

Geoffrey told his father many tales, and next he is told how he had caused the loss of his mother.

He knew it was for his sin in burning the abbey of Maillezais.

Well Auised hym it was for his syne[t] 4852
That his fader had wrethed heuyly so,
By monkes he hade stroyed maillers yn;
With flammes of fire thaim bruled and brend to,
An hundred ther were in that minstre tho. 4856

Then he remembers the tablet he saw in the mountain of Avalon,

Then on the tablet hys thought & mynde gan draw,
Which in the montain of Aualon saw, 4858

[Fol. 93 b.] upon the tomb of king Helmas.

Fro wurde to wurde al therughly in hert be[1] rad 4859
Vppon the tombe of noble king helmas.

Then he knew that Melusine must be Helmas' daughter.

Tho knew he Full well where melusine was hade
Doughter to the kyng which lay in þat place,
And that helmas, this noble kyng, wace 4863
Fader to Melusine his moder good;
Where-vppon he thought long while he ther stoode.

When he knew that Raymond had been tempted by the earl of Forest,

When he vnderstode, knowing it clerely, 4866
hou that[2] Raymounde his noble fader tho
By erle of foreste his brother naturally
Toward Melusine had made diffautte so,

he sware an oath that he would go and kill him.

With An hautain uois Gaffray said, wold go, 4870
(Wher-to he swere full fast his gret oth),
That shortly he wold distroy hym for soth. 4872

Away he goes with ten chosen knights,

SO fro-thens *with* wreth Gaffray partid then, 4873
his fader[3] his parte went right heuily,
With full wurthy noble knightes ten,
Stronge, hable, and light, men sad and myghty,

who were worth twenty others, and the result was this:

Tho ten wurth well other knightes twenty; 4877
here you shal declare by fortone hou gan fal.
Gaffray so strongly ther rode forth *with*-all, 4879

[1] "he" (?). [2] MS. "thai." [3] MS. "brother;" Fr. text, *pere*.

SO on way faste sped, so forth low and hy,
That he approched the erledome vnto
Off the forest, where was this Erle wurthy,
Which in a castell abiding[1] was tho.
Gaffray to that parte drew hym fast to goo
Where the Erle shold haue ill hansell anon,
In-to thys said strenght entred his person,

they rode till they came to the castle where the earl was;

then Geoffrey entered that fort

WIthin he entred vnware sodenly,
Off no creature perceiued at all.
With full yrous wreth Gaffray meued hy,
He salute non, ne spake to gret ne small,
But discended doñ A-forn the gret hall,
The grees Ascended, many to accounte,
hys uncle the Erle ther, named Fromounte,[2]

[Fol. 94] suddenly and unperceived.

Moved with wrath he neither saluted any nor spake,

but ascended the steps of the great hall,

ENmyddes his peple hym ther gan find,
Which were full noble And ryght gentile to,
Wice, sage, And wele taught As any to mynde.
Gaffray As wode man drawing his swerd tho,
Ther crying, "traitor, thy lif lost And goo!
By thy neclygens my moder haue loste!"
Thys Erle it hurde, his blode gon almoste,

and found his uncle Fromont there amongst his people.

Drawing his sword, he declares him a traitor,

HIs mortall deth saw; being in such fray,
Gaffray he doubted in hert that instaunce,
Knowyng well by hym tho wurdes gan say
Wherof Gaffray had to hert such noysaunce.
Fro-thens he fly *with* huge comeraunce.
Neuer-for-neuer stode he in such drede,
The tour entred, the dore founde ope in dede,

and terrified his uncle, who fled away in great trouble.

Never had he been so frightened; he entered the tower

THe grees Ascended ryght so As he myght;
But so gan noght do As his hert tho wold;
For After hasted Gaffray As man wight,

and ascended the steps. But Geoffrey hastened after him,

[1] MS. "obiding."
[2] In the margin—*geffre kyld hus e[nkul]* *erle of forcste.*

pursuing him so fast that the earl had to flee alone;

Which pursued hym, chausing to that hold,
Strongly hym sewed And sharply manyfold,
Openly after other gan to fle;
With hym had the Erle non of hys mayne

[Fol. 91 *b.*] for all ran down the steps as if they were mad;

As man that so was gentile ne so goode
Which *with* hym fro-thens in no wyse wold go;
The grees descended, fered as were woode,
Eche hym-selfe to saue in best wise cowd tho,
Ther liffes to saue Gaffray criing vnto.

being greatly afraid of being caught.

For fere of taking full faste thay fle,
Thay sore doubted lest taking shold be.

GAffray fly After thys Erle hastily,
Swerying that he shold dy ther *with* gret shame.

Thus the earl ran up into the tower and got to the top as soon as he could. Geoffrey sware that he would not spare him.

The Erle Ascended into this tour quickly,
As sone As he myght to hiest stage came.
Gaffray swere his oth, for linage ne fame,
Wold spare hym to slay, lif take fro his gost,
Syn his moder good by hym so hath loste.

In extreme terror the earl leapt up to a window and,

FOr drede the Erle swatte And sore trembled tho
When that he saw, brefly vnto say,
That by no men[e] myght ferther passe ne go.
At A fenestre lepte in that affray
Vppon the hedde, failling foote that day;

missing his footing, fell on his head upon the rock.

Fro that place glint þat full hy tho was,
Don vppon the Roch A fall gan purchas.

Thus this earl of Forest died by his own folly,

In that point was he mis[e]heuosly dede
With dolorous wo And full heuy shame,
Thys Erle of foreste in said place and stede.
Alas! by hys owne gret folay it came,

hys peple[1] hauyng hug sorow and grame.
The body Gaffray made vnto entere;
After do made cryes in ech stede awhere,

and Geoffrey caused his body to be buried,

As vnto the Erle beforn had thay do,
To Raymounde his brother in like wise homage,
All enheritors of the contre tho.
And As thaim had said Gaffray the sage,
Euery accorded vnto his langage.
Ther Gaffray wold noght lenger to sogourñ,
To-ward lusignen faste gan he retourñ,

[Fol. 95] and proclaimed his own brother Raymond the lord of Forest.

This done, he returned to Lusignan,

In shorte and bref tyme parted fro that place.
Vnto lusignen entred, fast ridyng,
Where his gud fader tho dolorous was,
Which full heuily was ther waymenting
For that noght unknow, (full sor lamenting),
How hys brother distroyed was þat day;
Raymound said, "of it gret dolour haue may,

and soon came to his father, who was sore lamenting the earl's death.

Raymond exclaims,

An my wife haue lost, exile my contre,
By my cruell sin And my wicked vice;
Iesu crist, my soull warde and kepe to the,
Fro[2] thys worle me will put by good auice,
Neuer seke no-thyng to conquere franchise.
To confesse my syn wandre shall and goo,
With good hert shall say the hole Postell to

"All is due to my sin and vice;

I will quit the world and its fame,
and make a pilgrimage to the holy Apostle at Rome,

Off Rome, that lyon men do name and call,
After, so god will, chese shall my dwellyng,
Recluse and shit vp in strange contre shall,
In which stede will not be know for no thyng.
In that place shall I my life be using
In deuoute prayers And in orison,
All vnto acquire my sauacion."

whom men call Leo.

I will then become a recluse in a strange country,

and spend my life in prayer."

[1] MS. "pepll." [2] MS. "For."

[Fol. 95 b.] Geoffrey, alighting from horseback, tarried not at the dismounting stone,

Ryght As Raymounde hym sore complayned, [lo!]
In plaintes, wepinges, he bathed was;
And when that Gaffray was descendid tho,
At the perron longe bode not in þat place,
At castell finding hys fader by grace. 4975

but sought his father and craved his pardon,

But hys moder noght founde, ne saw *with* ey,
Wherefor to hys fader cried mercy, 4977

bitterly repenting his wickedness.

With hert sore contrite therof repenting 4978
Off that he had don so moche wickednesse.
On knees mercy ther hym faste crying,
Raymounde sore wepte *with* eyes bitternesse:

"It needs not," said Raymond, "to mourn longer: you cannot bring your mother back again,

"Hyt nedith noght," said, "more haue pensifnesse,
I know well that ye by no mene this day
your moder recouer certes ye ne may. 4984

nor can I restore the dead to life.

I can noght," he said, "werke ne labour soo 4985
As tho mortall ded ther lif to surrend.

You must rebuild the abbey which you burnt in your folly."

The Abbay and mynstre fourge and make most, lo!
Which fair place ye haue distroid and shend.
An hundred monkes *with*-in also brend 4989
By your meruelous And wondre corage,
As by your folay and full gret outrage." 4991

Geoffrey promises to do so.

GAffray Answerd, "sire, I shall it doo 4992
Within ryght bref tyme, so our lord please may."
Then Raymound hym hild in hert content tho;

Raymond says, "It should be built up so as to be fairer than before;

"More fairer shall be then Aforn was ay;"
Raymound hym said, "appere will it alway 4996
That which ye will do men full well shall se,
Perceyued to ey, knowen well will bee. 4998

[Fol. 96] but I must leave you now,

HEre will you leue, to good ende come may. 4999
A litell way me moste go in pilgrimage,

Which promysed haue god aforn this day, — for I go on a pilgrimage.
Put ther-to haue þoth hert, wyll, and corage,
My contre you shall leue, warde it as the sage; 5003 — You shall guard the country and take care of your youngest brother.
Non other will I of it haue the garde.
your yongest broder wyll loke þat ye warde, 5005

PArtenay hym gif *with* thes castelles echon 5006 — Give him Parthenay, Vouvant, Aiglon, and Mervent,
Off vavuent, Ayglon, And also Meruent,
He thaim to hold in hys subiecc*i*on
In pees *with*out contradiccion hent; — and all the country as far as Rochelle;
Anon to Rochel[1] my wife wold so went. 5010
For gretly of hym she gan speke and say, — for so Melusine gave direction."
That contre he shold iustice alway. 5012

IHym make my proper enheritour, 5013
For yut shall he be wurthy terrenly."
Gaffray Answered, "I grant to will your, — Geoffrey promises to do so,
Alway your plesur shall I do surely,
Full well shall I warde my brother Thierry; 5017 — and tells his father he need not fear its not being done.
In that doubte ye noght, in no maner point,
Sin ye me commaunde, gree to such a ioynt." 5019

RAymounde his ui[a]ge Full faste made redy, 5020 — Raymond, all being made ready for his journey, sets off.
When he redy was, taried ne reste;
Of uitaill and wyn toke sufficiantly,[2]
Al hys peple commaunded to god prest.
At the departson sughed sore in breste. 5024
Hys leue gan he take *with* amyable loue fine, — He takes leave of his people and goes to Rome.
Towarde Rome hys way hild he streight As lyne.

GAffray and Thierry suettly on the way 5027 — [Fol. 96 *b*.] Geoffrey and Thierry go with their father; and, on the road, Geoffrey relates
long space and tyme thare fader conueing;
In ther forth-progresse told and said Gaffray,
hou that good helmas the full noble kyng

[1] MS. "Rachel." [2] MS. "fufficiantily."

how he found good king Helmas within the rock,

Within the Roch founde, wher non durst be commyng
Enlesse he were strong, wurthy, wyse, and sage,
And that issued oute of hys linage; 5033

and how he had seen Helmas' tomb,

TOlde where the tombe was pight and sette truly
Vppon thes riche and gret pilours of gold;

and Presine's image in alabaster,

Of presine told he also veryly,
Hou she portraed was in being, told;
At foote of helmas tombe hir figure vnfold 5038

and the tablet which her hand held.

Of Alebastre compassed and made;
And of the tablet that she hild and had; 5040

ANd then all that hurde Aboue haue ye. 5041
Raymounde reioyed hys wife doughter was

Raymond rejoiced to hear Melusine was of such high descent,

Off syre helmas, king which Gaffray gan se,
And of presine, the courtois, full of grace;

and seemed in his joy a foot taller.

For gladnes A foote[1] in hithe gan purchace. 5045

Afterwards Geoffrey tells about Presine's gifts

After declaryng went by witty engine
All the gyfftes that ther gaf presine 5047

to Melior, Melusine, and Palatine,

UNto Melior and to Melusine, 5048
And to palatine, wemen of fayree;[2]

and how Presine loved Helmas dearly.

And, As men Affermeth by scripture fine,
That Aboue all helmas louid hyly
Presine, aboue wreto verray perfectly. 5052

Raymond again rejoices.

When that Gaffray had All thes thynges said,
Raymounde hertly glade reioyng that braide, 5054

[Fol. 97]

Thus his two sons brought him on his way,

THat Gaffray gan hire voluntarily. 5055
After thes sones too hym conueyng,
With hym vppon way went full merily.

and bring him at night to his lodging.

At nyght when thai cam vnto ther loging,
Hys sones of hym the morñ leue taking, 5059

[1] MS. "Afoote." [2] MS. "fayrer."

To-geders kissed at the parting leue,
And so the mornyng departed in breue. 5061

Next morn they take their leave,

RAymounde ther Fader sped hym on hys way; 5062
Ther no creature but watry teeres shad;
The Fader wepte, the sones Als that day,
Euery of thaim in misery had,
Raymound thens went; Gaffray Terry with hym lad, 5066
Thay retorned to Approche ther home,
And the Fader went streight forth vnto Rome.

and there was great weeping on both sides.

Then Geoffrey and Thierry went back;

and Raymond went on to Rome.

Ryght thys departed ther wais thes thre, 5069
Ther-thens to lusignen went Gaffray.[1]
To partenay went Terry that contre,
yonge, lusty, ioly, inly fresh And gay,
Hardy, myghty, fers, entrepreignant ay, 5073
To ladies swete was amyable,
huge of body, wel formed As man able. 5075

Geoffrey went to Lusignan, and Thierry to Partenay.
A description of Thierry.

MAny were ther noght with hym to compare, 5076
For he was An in beuteuous fair knyght;
Strong, myghty, wourthy, And light to declare,
And off All peplle douted was he ryght;
Neuer put A-bake, manly was of myght; 5080
A notable man was he of corage,
A good werriour, subtile, wise, And sage. 5082

The good qualities of Thierry are here enumerated.

DOubted of all, wher by[2] fors, were, or wit, 5083
Euery man obbeid hym lowly
In all hys marches, where wrong or ryght were it.

[Fol. 97 *b.*]

In noble Bretain gan he to mary,[3]
Affyed and sured to A gret lady, 5087
Which discended was of ryght hy lynage,
And als she hauyng full huge heritage. 5089

Thierry married a lady of high degree, who came from Britain, and who was very wealthy.

[1] In the margin—*geffrey lord of lusygnen & terry lord of partenay.*]
[2] MS. "wherby."
[3] In the margin—*terre maryd a lady of britayn.*

From Thierry descended the line of Parthenay,

a line which is still distinguished for virtue,

TErry seignoried A full large contre,
Hattyd of no man; of hym gan issew
Of pertenay the lyne of verite,
As in this history doth to ensew,
Which hyly regneth yut in huge vertew;
God wold such heires of tham shold come
That the line noght faill to the day of dome!

according to Melusine's prediction.

Ryght As declared And sayd Melusine
That the said line shold haue long endurance,
And that thay shold do good dedes and fine;
And so haue thay done wel to rememberaunce
In many placis, wherof reste I this instaunce;

It were tedious to relate all their great deeds.

Ouer long wold be to declare and tell,
Ther wurthy dedes vnto say or spell.

Geoffrey sent everywhere for masons,

GAffray tho made Aboute for to sende,
Masons of iche sid come *with*-out delay;
He rought noght what theron shold dispend,

who rebuilt the abbey of Maillezais which he had burnt.

For in thought wold restore the Abbay
Off Maillers, that was brend þat oder day.
Off euery part masons ther comyng,
Ther wages well paid, content þaim holdyng.

[Fol. 98]
It was rebuilt so as to be fairer than before:

FOurged and made was in A somer tide
More fairer then euer it was before,
Off whom men speken, talking large and wide,

so that men marvelled, and said that Geoffrey had become a monk after all!

Hym ofte mocking And saing euermore,
"Gaffrey is become A monke for all hys lore,
Neuer trowed man for to se that houre
A wolfe to become An herdly pastour!"

I return to Raymond, who confessed all his sins

I leue shall Gaffray; of hys fader say,
Which to Rome to the holy fader came
Hys confession to declare alway;

In conclusion spared for no shame,
Neuer no-thyng hid, but all gan proclame.
The holy fader wondred on that he told,
Off tho merueles that ther gan vnfold.[1]

in full to the pope,
who wondered at the strange things he told him,

Wherefor shold I hold long tale this instaunce?
For his synnes gaff penaunce full sharpely.
Raymound ther it toke to right gret plesaunce,
Promittyng he wold do it full gladly
Or he entre wold in peyters suerly.
To hys holy fader said *with* all his hert,
And that thens wold go in-to som desert,

and appointed Raymond a penance,
which he promised to perform before returning to Poitiers.

SO in wild exile all hys lif using
For fair Melusine his loue, wife, and spouse,
In many somers And winters being,
Which that he hath lost by dedes shameuous,
And serpent become wondre hiduous:
Sayng, neuer wold hir put in oblyuy
Ne in that contre neuer entre surely,

He undertakes to live a hermit's life for Melusine's sake,
saying that he would never forget her,

NEuer-For-neuer in hys life no day,
Where hys suete loue loste by hys owne speche;
Which in oblyuy *with* hym be ne may.
This holy fader gan pray and beseche
That of his illes he wold be hys leche.
The pope, that time named and called lyon,
Said to hym, "where is your deuocion

[Fol. 98 *b.*]
nor return to the place where he lost her.
He craves the pope's pardon;
and Pope Leo, accordingly,

FOr to go and do ioyned pennaunce?"
Raymound Answered as man deboner,
"At Montfarrant bide is my hole plesaunce,
Ther become hermite *with*-out any retrayr,
To goddis honour And seruice repair.

asks him where he thinks of going to.
Raymond answers, "To Montserrat in Arragon,

[1] MS. "vnfuld."

where there is fair sojourning."

For elleswhere can I noght me hold,
Full fair sogernyng ther is, me is tolde. 5152

Leo bids him go;

Ther is A deuoute solitary place." 5153
"Go[1] where plese may our sacred lord an-hy,
That your sauacion ye may purchace,"
This lion the pope said to hym suetly.

and Raymond sets off, soon coming to Toulouse,

In bref terme Raymound parted thens truly, 5157
So strongly he rode, passyng forth the way,
That within Thoulouse cam without delay. 5159

where he bids adieu to his men,

Full moche peple Again hym tho went; 5160
He ther yeuyng leue to hys mayne plain,
Ech satefied *with* goodes sufficient;

sending them all home except a yeoman and a chaplain.

With hym A prest had, An honest chapelain,
A yeman also for hys owne demain. 5164
More had ne toke at that entreuall,
Ther unto our lord commaunded hys men all;[2]

[Fol. 99] Next he has hermit's robes made, and goes to Arragon, and so becomes a hermit at Montserrat.

Hermites Robes full faste lete doo make, 5167
In Arrygon toke hys logge and repair.
At the Mont-sarrat manson gan to take,
yilding hym hermyte As man debonair,
God to serue *with* orisons and[3] praiers fair; 5171
Properly to take for hys heritage
his byding in this wild montain sauage. 5173

His yeoman and chaplain lived with him there,

With hym hys yeman And full noble prest 5174
In this hermitage toke habitacion,
With full greabill hertis in ther breste,

and thus Raymond forsook the world,

Ther being in sore huge affliccion
long time and space *with* good deuocyoñ. 5178

[1] MS. "So." Fr. text, *Alez y donc.*
[2] At the bottom of the page is the catchword—"Hermites Robes full."
[3] MS. "and and."

The worle all forsoke at that houred stound, and lived there devoutly
And full deuoutly liued ther Raymound 5180

TIll ende approched, to mortall deth went. 5181 till his death.
But dais thre aforn full well perceuyng Three days before his death, the serpent was seen going round Lusignan;
Aboute lusignen to vew the serpent,
Where lande and rent Aforn was renonsing;
Whom moch peple ofte haue be seing; 5185 so that more than twenty, who had well heard Melusine say
To knowliche nombred mo then twenty
That of Melusine will hurde say truly— 5187

The time and ceason departing thaim fro— 5188 that she would thus appear,
That when the castell change ther lordes shold,
Aforne wold she appere to sight, lo!
Thre days aboute thys said castell wold
Off fair lusignen, full beuteuous hold. 5192
Wherefor many sain in ther willd reuell, know that they are soon to have a new lord.
"After appArens, shall haue A lord nouell." 5194

GAffray tho lorde of this said castell, 5195 [Fol. 99 b.] Geoffrey was then lord of the castle, and held it in peace.
Which so fair was, and lord of contre;
That hy honour and seignory full well
Pesibilly in pece it hold gan he.
Tho fro Thoulouse made baronage & mayne 5199 Then came to him the barons whom Raymond had dismissed,
That Raymound *with* hy*m* lad when to Rome went;
Excepte yeman and preste all home he sent. 5201

Thai vnto Gaffray declared and told, 5202 and told him how his father was now a hermit and had sent them home.
The trouth and verite said thay outerly,
hou his fader an hermite was and hold,
And hou fro tham departed wilfully,
And hóu his goodes parted gentilly. 5206 Geoffrey sends for his brother, and, leaving Lusignan in his charge,
Gaffray vnderstode, hys brother after send,
All contre to hym gan he recommend. 5208

departs for Rome,

FRo-thens departed, *with* hym peple few, 5209
Gaffray the corteis, gentile and connyng.[1]
lenger wold not bide, toke hys leue by rew,
to accomplish all he had to do. hasted to complesh his dedes doing.
Mistre ne nede non more be declaryng, 5213
It were long to tell all. But to tary time and long wold it be
Euery thyng to put in hys certainte. 5215

He confessed to the pope,

Unto the pope cam, And hym gan confesse 5216
With gret repentaunce full deuoutly;
Off his synny cr[i]me lefte[2] not more ne lesse,
and was very penitent for the wickedness he had done in his youth. Full dolerus was and repentant truly
Off his wickednesse doñ consentyngly, 5220
And *þat* he had doñ in his youthnesse soo,
With sore hert contrite all confessed thoo 5222

[Fol. 100]
The pope assoiled him, and charged him to rebuild the abbey of Maillezais,

PRoperly all that in conscience finde myght. 5223
The pope asso[i]lled hym ther benyngly,
When declared hade hys dedes vn*per*fight.
To fourge the abbey charged hym gretly
Off Maillers *with*out tarying any, 5227
and fill it with monks to the number of 120, Such pennaunce charged hym his synnes fore,
With monkes it stuffe, montance of sex score;

and so to endow the abbey that they should never lack bread or wine,

With rentes endowing to haue brede and wyne, 5230
That lacke and faill non winter ne somer tide
To wat necessite or nede to incline.
Again the abbay to forge loke prouide,
That distroed haue And disherite wide. 5234
Geoffrey promises to do this, Gaffray answerd, "sir, I shall do all,
The mi*n*stre and churche appareill shall 5236

and says it is begun already.

BEtter than euer Appered to eye; 5237
For sothe she hath A good commencement."

[1] MS. "comyng." [2] MS. "lefte." Fr. text, *laissa*.

"yut the churchꝺ ye haue stroed wickedly;
Agan it to make ye moste be deligent."
"Sir, carpenters, masons, yiftes shall hent,
Ther state shall remitte to our lordes grace;
More fairer shall be then euer it wace."

The pope again charges him, and he promises to obey.

"THys reson," said the holy fader at ende,
"For your brother soule ye be in danger
That ye crusedly[1] bruled so and brende
When thys mynstre and schurch destroed there.
And yf ye of your fader luste enquere,
At mont-sarrat finde shall þat man of fame,
Which noght long Agoñ toward vs he came,

The pope tells him he is in danger for his brother's soul, because he burnt him; and that he would find his father at Montserrat.

HErmite is become, holy lif leding."
Gaffray vnderstode, *with* eyes wepte sore;
Off pope[2] leue toke, to monte-sarrat going,
Strongly rode apace besily euermore,
Till the regiat way founde hym before,
But Anon As he app[r]oched the montain,
Vp went he an-hy, finding Raymound plain,

[Fol. 100 *b.*]

Geoffrey sets off for Montserrat, and soon finds the highway to it. He then ascends the mountain, and finds Raymond.

HIs blissed fayder which hurde hym Anon.
When hys sone he saw, gretly reioying.
After Raymounde wold haue departson,
But gaffray no wise wold be deperting,
But said, ther wold bide the worle enduryng,
And that go wold quite fro the heritage
And fro All hys baron[e]s homage.

Raymond is glad to see him, but bids him go home again. Geoffrey refuses to return,

GAffray was ther foure or fiffe dais tho,
hys fader myght noght hym do torn no wise,
But ther wold dwell hys life vsing also;

and insists on staying four or five days;

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] This word is intentionally struck through.

but at last consents to return, and takes leave of his father.

But when hys fader will gan aduertise,[1]
Thens to lusignen drew hy good auise 5269
When of fader had leue take full lowly,
Ne lenger sogern ther wold noght truly. 5271

Returning to Lusignan he calls his barons together,

When of lusignen the faire Cite hent, 5272
After the Barons send he full wyghtly,
Which cam Anon at hys commaundement.
As sone As thay thes wurdes hurde truly,

who humbly do him homage as their lord.

homage gan thay do to hym full humbly, 5276
holdyng hym ther lord moste souerain þat houre
To full huge ioy and ryght grett honour. 5278

[Fol. 101] He then rebuilds the abbey he destroyed, and establishes there 120 monks,

Then Maillers f[o]urged and made new again, 5279
The said Abbay,[2] beforn gan vndo.
Ther sex score monkes astabled certain,
Ennobling the place ryght wonderly tho,

endowing the abbey richly,

huge lande and rychesse endowing therto; 5283
Wher night and day monkes pray for þis lord,
For Melusine and Raymound of recorde. 5285

and making rich grants to it.

Thay haue of ryght full grett encheson, 5286
He mortesing goodes fuson and plente.

In course of time he visited Raymond;

*With*in prossesse uisete hys fader anon,
And gentilly hym quite at þat assemble.

for, when the time of Raymond's death drew near,

Raymounde leuyng longe; when to ende nyhed he,
That the soule moste yelde being spirituall,
(As well lordes gret as tho being small), 5292

Geoffrey remained at home no longer,

RAymounde to our lorde his soule ther yilding, 5293
Gaffray no lenger tary wolde ne bide.
For when hys fader dede was ther saing,

[1] MS. "aduerſite." [2] MS. "Ablay."

Vnto mont-sal-rat made progresse þat tide,
hys fadres sepulture for to prouyde;
Entered in Abbay of the monte-Serrat,
That place augmented passingly þat dat,

but came to the abbey of Montserrat to provide for his father's burial,

And rentid gretly to the house encresse.
he was he, (you say verray certainly),
That euer ther was moste chef of goodnesse;
hit is thing þat man may know full lyghtly;
Ryght well his deuor Gaffray gan do surely.
That doñ, retorned the mont-Serrat fro,
le[n]ger wold noght bide, to lusignen went tho.

and made grants to that abbey also.

Geoffrey did his duty at Montserrat, and then returned to Lusignan.

THErry was notable And a full good knight,
A wurthy man, A iusticere full grett,
And regned after pusantly of myght.
At partenay long huge wurship gett,
Fair dedes gan doo in his time full sett,
In pees hys contre haldyng full manly,
Non durste hys heste breke, but to hym apply.

[Fol. 101 b.] Thierry reigned at Partenay long and justly, and did fair deeds.

None durst break his hests, but obeyed him.

OEdes regned in the marches tho;
Sagilly hym ruled to intelligens;
In hys tyme full grett goodnesse gan he doo.
In Cipres regned noble vriens,
The Sarisins werred by huge uiolens,
(Ny neybours were) put thaim to distruccion,
And off thaim made full gret occisioñ.

Oedes (Eudes) reigned sagely in the marches.

Uriens reigned in Cyprus, and warred against the Saracens his neighbours.

GVy regned and was king of hermeny;
Full nobly ther lade both lande and contre;
hys hoires makyng werre times many
Vppon Sarrisins which misbeleued be
Vntill þat thay were recreant to see.
Ther had no sarisin but full sore þam drad,[1]
So theim chastising ther will noght ne had.

Guy was king of Armenia.

His heirs warred against the Saracens, who sorely dreaded them.

[1] MS. "draw."

Raynold was king of Brehaigne (Bohemia).

And Raynold also, off BrehAigne kyng, 5328
hys leuyng regned ryght full pusantly.

His heirs reigned after him.

After hys hoires semblably werkyng,
Regnyng after hym As men full myghty,
And welle ther contre gouerned dayly. 5332

Anthony was duke of Luxemburg,

Anthony, the Duke of lusembrough tho,
Many townes toke And Bourghes also; 5334

[Fol. 102]

and his heirs did fair deeds.

And tho which of tham discended liniall 5335
In ther tyme full fair dedes gan to do,
As well tho grette As tho litell and small.

Raymond was earl of Forest, and was much beloved.

Raymound full cherisly was hold also,
The full nobill Erle of the Foreste tho. 5339
Thes moche conquered of sondry regyons,
And thay were of gret possessyons. 5341

Thus all these brethren bare them well, and prospered;

Off thes brethren after ther hoires were 5342
In many places of grett wurthinesse,
And all thes bretherin full well gan tham bere,
Huge contre conqueryng by ther myghtinesse,

all except Horrible, who had been smothered, and Fromont, who had been burnt.

Excepte horrible, distroed was expresse, 5346
And Fromont which brennyng gan purchas,
Which welle wold haue do, but distroed was. 5348

All these were descended from Raymond, and bare his arms.

Off Raymounde issued All tho Aboue[1] saide; 5349
Ther issue cries make, and ther armes here;
And yut the Cipriens at ech houred braid
Alwais crying "lusignen!" awhere,

To this day the Cyprians use "Lusignan" as a war-cry.

And will whiles the worle will endure here. 5353
Thay were good knightes, waillant & worthy,
Entrepreignant and assaillyng many. 5355

The earl of Pembroke in England was also of this line;

The full noble Erle of thaim gan discend, 5356
Off panebourght in Englande enheritour,
Which gret contre and lande hym sende.

[1] MS. "Aboute."

In Arrigon, tho of cambrere honour[1] — as also the lords of Cambron (?) in Arragon.
Off the firste line were discended that houre,
And thay cam and issued veryly;
Off helmas hoires off Albany

Issued thys line, Melusine tham bare. [Fol. 102 b.]
Fromount ther brother at mallers brend was, — But Fromont was buried at Mail-lezais,
And ther beried, the trouth to declare.
Gaffray the gentill lith *in* that place — where also lies Geoffrey under a stone tomb.
In a tombe of stone portraed the space.
Off noble Gaffray reste me now here shall, — Here ends this part of the romance.
And say of hermynè the kynge roiall.

A Fair castell is hade in hermynè, — Here begins the romance of the Sparrow-hawk Castle in Great Armenia;
Which tho off Fairy both fourged & made.
In hermeny the gret is it uerily,
As in this history told is and hade.
The Sperhauke castell named is and rad,
Where it behouith to wacche nightes thre — where knights had to keep awake three nights,
*With*out Any sompnolent slepe to be.

And ho accomplesh in þat place it may, — and whoever did so might ask a boon of the lady Melior,
A yifte may demaunde and it haue he shall
Such As hym luste to demaunde all-way,
So demaunde noght hir body corporall — provided that he did not ask for her love.
Which dwellith within, thys lady roiall.
Auise hym ryght wele hir no wise desire,
For it Aualith noght hyr for to require.

And *in* sompnolence be founde thyng any, — If the watcher went to sleep, he became her prisoner there for ever.
Ther finabilly For euer ther shall dwell,
With thys fair lady ther fortake ueryly,
Which gret loos and prys hath she soth to tell;
That Melior was called fair and welle, — Melior was the lady's name, daughter of Presine.
Doughter to Presine of the fairy lande,
As thys hystory doth vs vnderstande.

[1] In the margin—*erle of penbrok*.

[Fol. 103] There was then a mighty king in Armenia, a fair knight,

IN hermeny hade tho a mighty king, 5391
A fair knight, long, streight, lusty of colour,
With tendre youth was he hote being,
And als was of full worshipfull ualour.

who undertook to watch three nights at Sparrow-hawk Castle,

he said wacche wold he nightes thre or foure 5395
At the myghty hold of Sperhauke castell,
For men had hym told off this strenght nouell.

intending afterwards to demand a boon.

And As for to wake ther behouyd he 5398
Which the yiff[t][1] conquere of uarray fors shold,

So he did, but afterwards repented of his rashness.

Ther he said A wold wacche full nightes thre
And after A yifte ther demaunde he wold;
So gane[2] he do, repenting his hert bold. 5402

He therefore departed,

Anon mad his way Full prest and redy,
Fro-thens departed with-out rest Any, 5404

declaring that if he found the lady Melior fair, he would ask for nothing but *herself*.

SAing that he wold unto thys wacche goo, 5405
That notable yifte conquere if he myght.
So if thys lady saw plesaunt, fair hym to,
Non other yift wold desire hym to dyght.

Such was his foolish resolve.

But for noght hys thought, folay was it ryght, 5409
For thys lady haue myght not thys man fell
For spouse ne for loue; what nedith more to tell?

Thus came he thither on St. John's day,

IN hert this knight risen so hasted and rood; 5412
When ny approched and to sperhauke came
In seint Iohn his night, taried ne boode,
To body therof had g[illegible]t ioy and game.

and having remembered to bring his tent, pitched it there in the meadow.

In obliuy noght hys pauilon of fame; 5416
Pight And streight was it in the medew tho.
Armyly parted all hys peple fro 5418

[Fol. 103 *b*.] Then came he to the castle-gate,

Thys corteys, gentile, and thys noble knight, 5419
The porte and gate cam [to] of this castell,

[1] Fr. text, *le don*. [2] MS. "gain," altered to "gane."

In hys hand halding A pece of flesh dight,
Wherwith the sperhauke thought to feed full wele.
In this castell saw on go, soth to tell,
A man clothed white, semyng of visage
That he was to sight full ferre ron in age;

holding a piece of flesh to feed the sparrow-hawk.

There saw he an old man, clothed in white,

Ther hym demaunding wat thyng þat he sought.
he hym Answered, "thys here demaunde I,
The coustome of this noble place wrought."
he said, "come ye, of goddes part an-hy!
In the way of it then shall you put surely
Where ye shall finde this solain auenture,
Full strang vnto sight of ech creature."

who asked him what he sought,

and next offered to show him the way.

Thys good man before, after went this king,
Ascending vp hy ther the greës all,
Fro the hall went more hyer in going.
Full moch merueled thys hy kyng roiall
Off the grete richesse apperyng in hall,
And of the noblesse that in stedes founde,
Gretly commaundid the sightes þat stound.

Then they mounted the steps and entered the hall.

The king marvelled much at the wealth he saw there,

The Sperhauke at perche to sight displaid,
Which beuteuous, fair, huge, and gentile was.
Thys full wurthy man Aforn ther hym said,
"kyng, vnderstand me here a litel space,
Without slepe ye most herl wak in this place
Thys sperhauke thre days & nyghtes thre;
And ye mow noght, Alway here byde moste ye.

and perceived the sparrow-hawk on his perch.

Then said the old man, "King, you must here watch this sparrow-hawk for three days and nights.

Iff that terme ye wake and þat ye slepe noght,
What-so ye demaunde, of trouth haue shal ye,
Off erthly thinges but not celest wrought,
Excepte the body of thys lady fre;

[Fol. 101]

If you succeed, you may ask a boon, demanding any earthly thing save lady Mellor's body."

For gold ne siluer hir haue may not be." 5451

The king said he would watch,

The king said, "wold wake without sompnolence,
To fede thys sperhauke do my deligence." 5453

The kyng toke to wake, And said auise wold 5454
What gift wold demaunde After nightes thre.

but he took ill counsel with himself.

Ill concell he toke, such yift demaund shold,
Whereof il Guerdon therof haue shal he.

Then the old man departed.

Thys good man parted, the king bood Iupardè, 5458
Wher tho his behold put ententifly
To the riche noblesse that he saw *with* ey. 5460

The king watched all that day and that night, feeding the sparrow-hawk.

That day waked he And also the night, 5461
In gentile disporte to hertys plesaunce.
He ther slepte no slepe, manly waked ryght,
The sperhauke sagely fede by gouernaunce,
A repaste hym yaf wel to conysaunce. 5465

Seeing also plenty of food and wine,

Off vitaill and wines saw he gret fusion,
Which tho was had in this garnyson. 5467

he took a repast of what pleased him.

His refection gan resceiue and take 5468
Ther of hy and bas at his owne deuise.

Next day, he again watched all day and all night; and the third morning again fed the bird. Seeing a door open,

The morne, all day full well gan to wake
And all night; the morn fed þe hauke *in* best wyse,
Hyt pleased and gladded[1] hertes franchise. 5472
A dore saw open all behinde hys bake,
Pertly entred in; of nobles ther no lacke. 5474

[Fol. 101 *b*.] he entered another chamber, which was full of birds, painted in vermilion.

HE neuer beforne saw so huge richesse, 5475
Wherin vnto sight briddes were many,
Whi[c]h uermaill[2] colour peynted were expresse;
The chambir peynted, portraed[3] freshly
Aboute the walles with fine gold to ey; 5479

[1] MS. "gladdes." [2] MS. "mermaill." Fr. text, *vermeillon*.
[3] MS. "portared."

Figured knyghtis were enuironee,
With ther Armes peynted as thai shold be 5481

The portraits were there of many knights,

To that resembling thes figures were. 5482
Vnder ther names wrete *with* letters blake,
Where the scripture said right in thys manere;
In such A yere such on here gan to wake,
But he slepte and in sompnolence was take; 5486
here of-fors he moste byding take and dwell
As vs to honour and for to serue well; 5488

and under each was written the name of each,

with the date of his undertaking the adventure, and how he failed,

Where-hens thay shull noght depart veryly 5489
Fro[1] thys vnto the day of Iugement.
Thre places ther were appering to ey
In thys chambre, had full conuenient,
(Wherto euery man myght his sight hent), 5493
A certain Armes, And such A scripture
Vnder writen was fresly, be ye sure, 5495

and had to remain there till the day of Judgment.

There were also three places where were seen three coats-of-arms,

Where this scripture said full meruelously, 5496
(In thys castell here wrete *with* letters blake),
In such yere such on, the which his god hy
Caused and made well plainly for to wake 5499
Our noble Sperhauke *with*out sompnolence take;
Hys gift therfor had by full gret prudence,
And by hys good notable diligence. 5502

and beneath each was written the date when each of the knights undertook the adventure and *succeeded*.

Allso thys chambre well depeynted was 5503
Fro foote of wallure the ouise vnto,
Which deuided[2] nacions hy and bas
And thes estrange regions all[-so].
Full uaillant and wurthy were thys men tho, 5507
Which noght ne went to sompnolent sleping,
But myghtyly And pusantly were waking, 5509

[Fol. 105]

The walls of the chamber were painted from top to bottom.

These three knights were valiant, and did not go to sleep.

[1] MS. "For." [2] A mis-translation; see Note.

And the giftes all therof bare Away.
Thys king in muses ther was full strongly
In the noblesse of this castell alway,
That almost he slepte, but not A-slepe fully,
For Alway waked he full besily.
Ther vnto deuise Anon toke the use
hou he myght well ouermoche to muse;

Ther-thens departed he full opinly.
That night worthily wacched hys person.
To hym amorn Appered full erly
Thys lady clothed *with* grene enuiron,
With lusty fresh colour after the ceason;
For most cheffest time was of somertide
That ther hys wacche gan so to prouide.

Full suetly the kyng hir salute And gret,
Which was hertly glad of hir good comyng.
She said hym goodly, "non myght ther no bett,
you will haue a-quitte As in your waking.
rewarde and behold what gift will be hauyng;
Vnto you *with*-say neuer shall hire me,
Sauyng And excepte only o gift be,

Wherof the dowte; in no wise shall pay.[1]
Now demaunde and aske at your owne plesaunce."
"Graunt mercy, lady," the king hir gan say,
"Certes, fine swete hert, non will this instaunce
But your body;" then she, full of noisaunce,
Hys gift plainly gan refuse And deny,
Sayng, "musarde, fole, me shall not haue surely,

Som other yifte demaunde, aske, or craue;[2]
For ye my body certes haue ne may;

The king mused on these things till he almost slept;

then fearing lest he should do so, retreated.

The third night he also watched; and on the fourth morn came the lady, clothed all in green.

The king salutes the lady,

who praises him and asks him what he will have,

or she will only refuse him *one* thing,

[Fol. 105 *b.*] which she will not pay.

The king thanks her, and asks her love.

She, greatly angered, denies him flatly,

and bids him ask something else.

[1] In the margin—*to say and vne-say is the propertie of a woman.*

[2] In the margin—*mark what is be-twene truthe and vn-truthe.*

For gold ne siluer it shall ye not haue."
he said, "I will non other gifte thys day
Then your body, in guerdon to my pay.
I you here promise if it haue ne shall,
Other gift I will non demaunde at all."

But he reiterates his request, and will have nothing else.

THys fair lady was full wroth and malice,
Hym ther answered *with*out tariing,
"Certes, if ye more demaunde *in* such wise
My body to haue, your gift shall be lesing,
And such mischefe therof you be comyng
Wherof ye ne shall neuer come to ende;
So huge heuinesse to y*ou* shall discende.

She is very angry, and tells him that, if he persists, he will find that great mischief will befall him,

FOr that roiall rewme which *in* hand I.old,
And *þat* ye gouerne now, lo! presently,
Disherite shall be your hoires manyfold,
And discomfite lefte euerlastingly."
He ther answeryng, "be it witte or foly,
you will haue to loue, sin yifte me haue yif on,
I will noght desire non other guerdoñ."[1]

for that he shall lose his kingdom, and his heirs shall be disinherited. He again says he will have nothing else.

"FOltish muserde," said, "of itt shalt thou faill,
Outerly hast lost thy quarell to craue;
Other gift bere hens shall by no gouernaill
Then grett mischaunce to purchace and haue;
The disceiueth thy cautels in hert graue,
Which the so meueth with full grett folay;
Now leue thi desire, auail the ne may.

[Fol. 106] "Fool," says she, "thou hast lost all; thy trickery deceives thee, and moves thee to folly.

THy man to-auaunce, by hys folay rage
Lesing his lady in loue amerous,
By his gret folay and cruel outrage,
For that growen is so coragious;
Melusine *þat* Raymound gan to espous,

Thine ancestor, by his folly, lost his spouse. His name was Raymond, and he espoused Melusine.

[1] In the margin—*truthe, thouge yt was vnto his payne and vnto his vter vndoynge.*

The ring on finger settyng of recorde,
Which she had so made nawhere gretter lorde.

King Guy, from whom thou art descended, was my nephew.

THe kinge Guy, of whom thou discended ert,
Was my neuew, vnderstande thys cas.
Sustres thre we be, y ly you noght at hert,

We were three sisters, and enclosed our father Helmas within a rock,

Which for sinne and crime of the kyng helmas,
Our fader, þat we closed hy and bas
With-in the gret Roche which he hym-selfe made;
Oth to our moder and þat broken had,

because he broke his oath made to our mother Presine.

WHych tho called was the lady presine,
In Gesian[1] no wise shold hir behold;
hir desire to kepe wold by no couyne,
And ther he hir saw ryght as I haue told;
For that of hir and vs lost hath the hold.

And when we had done this,

And when enclosed *with*in was fully,
In the Roche, As well As thought vs only,

[Fol. 106 *b.*] our mother was angry with us, and made me watch this sparrow-hawk here, without ever departing hence.

OUr moder therfor was wroth and malice.
Ther she me made, by werkes of fairy,
This sperhauke to kepe in this maner wise,
And *with*out euer to uoide hens truly.
But the For-takyng left to me only;
That was the gifte that she gaf to me
In hir malice, wreth, and ill cruelte.[2]

To Melusine she gave the property of becoming a serpent every Saturday, as a punishment.

And after she gaff vnto Melusine,
My suster, which was A madyn ful fare,
A gift to endur, neuer determine,
Whilis the worlde laste neuer make retrair;
The setterday vnto A serpent repair.
Off trouth it is so, like As I you say;
Raymound breke his othe and lost hir for ay.

[1] MS. "Sefian."
[2] In the margin—*the losse off a Fayre lady.*

FOr hir shold not se the setterday nowyse, 5601 Her husband was never to see her
Folily tho saw, lost hir company; that day, but he
Wherfor distressed strangely, to deuise, broke his oath.
he And hys line fille; neuer cressed hy;
Thys toke thay a fall yut to sight of ey. 5605
Palestine my sustre, yongest to surmitte,
At quonig montain in Arragon shitte 5607 Palestine, my youngest sister, is in a mountain in Arragon.

As long As thys wordle hath enduraunce, 5608
Fro thys hy montain neuer put Away.
Ther shall warde and kepe the tresour in substaunce There she keeps watch over King
Off kyng helmas, our fader that day. Helmas' treasure,
Thys our moder ordained without delay. 5612
But thys to conquere may non by engine, which none but
But discended be of kyng helmas line. 5614 one of our lineage may win.

NOw knowith thys then, discended ye be. 5615 [Fol. 107]
yff that my wurdes vnderstande well do, You ought not then to wish to
Meue ne store[1] shold no such aduersite have me to wife.
As of my body hauyng wif you to.
That which your is noght ye will hold so, 5619
By þat you may come full huge ill and pine, Owing to this,
To you and to all youres of your line; 5621 you shall suffer great misfortune.

I doubte me ryght noght thai shall gett a fall. 5622 and your successors shall lose
For tho shall succede, after you command, their kingdom.
holdyng your Rewme by fors of weire, and shall
Enlesing the Rewme and also the lande.
And he which laste shall leue it, vnderstand, 5626 The last of them
Of A beste the name shall he be bering, shall bear the
Which off all other is the brutall king. 5628 name of the king of beasts.

Ryght thys shall it be, beleue it full well, 5629 Thus shall it be.
For certes off this I ly you no-thyng;

[1] "store" (?).

But for your folly, you might have had a blessing;

For, sir, ne had be thi foule corage fell,
And thy grett folay with thine outraging,
your unthriftinesse and cursed leuyng,
but now shall you receive a curse."
lo! ye shold haue had benediccion;
And now ye shall [haue] maledicción.

PArt to you here, where that ye shall haue
Such thing that ye percas fele now shall."
The kyng vnderstode such happe myght not saue;
Then Melior vanished away;
But she uoided thens er that it gan fall,
And uanished Away fro ther sightes all.
and great mischance happened to this king.
I-now shall he haue of shamfull noisaunce,
Anon it happned to hym gret misc[h]aunce.

[Fol. 107 *b.*] He was beaten on the haunches, sides, legs, arms, and head, so that he came to a "hard fast," and felt the strokes on his chine.

THere smeten was haunches and sides vppon,
Als vppon legges, armes, and hede.
To herd fast tho cam in conclusion;
his opinion[1] right noght went in-ded,
Well felt the strokes on the chinesse bred.
All the skyn tho was torn and to-rent,
Many strokes had ryght full violent.

He cried for mercy, and fled,

"Alas!" he said, "for goddis loue, mercy!
leue off me now, or truly am dede!"
Then thay put hym hout, the kyng Away fly,
being well anointed, and having no sleeve or rag whole on him.
Which so well was Anoynted indede,
That no sleue ne pane had he hole of brede.
The kyng went hys way, hym-selfe auaunsing,
In the fair medew his peple fynding.

His people asked him how he had sped, and if he had kept good watch.

Ther hym demaunding hou þat he had do,
(For off his dedes ne knew thai no-thing);
Hou he had sped, And were wel wacched to
Without sompnolence or any slepyng,

[1] MS. "opunion."

Beforne this gentill Sperhauke being. 5661
The kyng answerd without misded sure,
"For soth," said he, "to my ille Auenture!" 5663

He replied that he had fared ill.

TO disloge tham made quikly and lightly, 5664
To se cam anon, ryding A strong pas.
Into A fair barge the kyng went lightly,
he and hys peple; no tarying was.
To vnarme hym the kyng made in þat place. 5668
Wonderfull fortune had he in the se,
But not-withstandyng strongly rowede hee, 5670

Then rode they to the sea, and took ship,
where the king took off his armour.
Then rowed he strongly,

THat in short bref time at port gan Ariue 5671
At hauyn of Crius, into hermeny.
The kyng issued frǫ his nauee bliue.
long wold it be Al to rehers only,
But unto decline went he forth dayly. 5675
Many tymes after cursed the day
That in Melior had put his loue ay. 5677

[Fol. 108]
so that he soon arrived at a haven of Armenia.
From that day his fortunes declined.

PErceued it was by hys owne desert, 5678
Saw he and his land shold be disherite,
Exile and deminute by his dedes smart.
When fro the worlde cam in-to ending plite,
A kyng after hym regned in þat site, 5682
Which be half[1] was wurse in his gouernaunce,
And nyne hoires after like wise in substaunce.

He was well aware it was all his own fault.
After him reigned another unfortunate king, and after him nine others.

Thay lost ther lande and all ther hauour, 5685
Inclinyng and comyng vnto mischaunce.
On of thes kynges cam to Fraunce þat houre,
So fro hermeny chaced in-to Fraunce,
Full long the kyng ther gaf hym sustinance; 5689
At Parys died, As happned the cas,
At the celestines entered he was. 5691

They at last lost all.
One of them came to France, died at Paris,
and was buried in the Celestin convent.

Off hys dedes non enquere will take, 5692
hys men clothed white, (As of this kyng fre),

His men wore white at the funeral;

[1] MS. "behalf." Fr. text, *la moitie.*

not black as men do in France. This is no jape, but true.

Which in fraunce were wont use clothes blake;
It is no iape, it is trouth to see.
Clothes blake comyn thing vsed [be],
As well an hundred persones As on,
Ther clerly perceiued may it be Anon.

[Fol. 108 *b.*] People wondered, not being used to it;

At hys enterment for hym so was doo,
Wherof moche peple ther abashed were;
For that neuer before sain was to do so;

why they did it I know not.

Wherfor it gan do certes wote I nere.
Off Sperhauke castell the maner leue I here,
And begyn to speke of this damycell,
The fair Palestine, somwat of hyr spell.

I now come to speak of Palestine.

NOw will I declare of fair Palestine,
The swette, the curteys, gentile mayden fre;

She was shut up in a place in Arragon,

In Conqs is shitte by carfty[1] engine
*With*in Arragon, that noble contre,

where she wards her father's treasure;

Where that hir faders trosour wardeth she
At hir moder hest and commaundement.
ho it may conquere, take, other hent,

THe lande of promission shall conquere.
But þat tresour conquered shall not be,

which none shall win except he be of her lineage.

But of hyr line discended and borñ were.
A litell shall say of Palestine[2] fre,
Brefly and shortly passe forth here will me;

The chronicle treats this story briefly.

For the Cronike doth treteth[3] this brefly,
More ferther wold go, mater finde might I.

I only put down what it says, inventing nothing.

HEre say and declare after þat haue founde.
Of nouel thinges to our discipline
No-thing I fynd at no tydy stounde.

Now I return to Palestine,

Retorñ shall Again to fair Palestine,
Which to that place destened by Presine;

[1] *Sic* in MS. [2] MS. "Poleftine." [3] *Sic* in MS.

In the hy montain Aboue-said þe site, who is in the high mountain.
Where many A cruell serpent enhabite.

A Man may not into that montain go, [Fol. 109]
That men shall not finde to whome for to speke.
Many A knyght hath passed it into, Many men, both stern and meek, went thither, but none returned;
In somer, winter, both stourne *men* & meke.
But non retourned, ne myght thens to-breke,
Iff in that montain longe time sogerned, all were foully destroyed.
But that he were ded or foule destroed.

SO As in scripture I may fynden right, There were many men who sought to win that treasure, but could get nothing.
Off worthy knyghtes full many ther were,
Myghty, strong, fers, And men beyng light,
Thys said gret tresour went for to conquere;
But no-thyng myght thai ho wise acquire there;
In An *ill* hour vnto *þat* place went,
For neuer after Again retourn hent. None returned.

IN Englande A knight, mighty and pusant, There was in England a mighty knight,
Which of knyghtly were moche knew to auaill,
A gentile knyght, was worthy and uaillant,
Which in knightly werke neuer gan to faill,
Army dedes gan do in plate and maill; who did deeds of arms in plate and mail;
A full goodly knyght, manly, debonair,
With wurthy knyghtes taught was he full faire

IN the hy court of noble king Arthure, who was brought up in Arthur's court, and was of the lineage of Tristram.
Where knyghtes were taught uertu perfectly.
Off Tristram-is line was hys engendrure,
Which *þat* whilom had full gret seignory.
Aboute Arthure was yeres full thirty,
Off that Am not I untrew ne lesingour; This knight heard of this treasure,
He hurde speke and talke of this huge tresoure.

[Fol. 109 b.] and said he would win it,

Promesse ther he made to that montain go,
Which by manly strenght many thinges wold don;
This full riche tresour thought he conquere tho.

and the Land of Promise afterwards.

After he went into þat region,
And into the lande of promission,[1]
Thought vnto conquere all the hole contre,
With strenght of swerde therto apointed he.

He departed thence on a Tuesday, riding merily to Arragon.

This knight was full good, manly, and hardy;
Ther-thens departed on A tew[i]sday,
Into Arragon riding merily.

He had only one page with him.

With hym was but a litill page on way,
No more felawship had hym to conuay,
So he went and rode hys iourne anon
That he ariued into Arragoñ.

Within the mountain dwelt a serpent, a hideous monster,

THe Monte demaunded, men hym shewed tho,
Where *with*in had was A monstre hyduous,
Meruelously fers and orgulous to,
Aboue all other wormes most perilous;

whose paunch was as big as a wine-tun.

hys panche As A pipe hug and comerous;
Fro A caue noght meued by no gouernail,
Off hir unmete hugenesse is gret meruaill.

It had but one ear, and no nostrils, and only one eye, which was a yard long.

But on ere hath noght this monstrous gest,
Ne nostrelles non appering in hed.
Thys wonderfull and meruelous best
Ne but on ey hath middes the forehed,
Which thre fote ny hath, wat *in* lenght & bred.

Its breath came out at its ear.

hir breth by the ere hath ther issew oute,
Wherof all the wordle[2] souꝛneth all Aboute.

[1] MS. "proniſſion."

[2] MS. "wordley." The translator was thinking of *monde*; but read "mount;" Fr. text, *mont*.

A Lway in slepe this cursed cruell fend. 5783 [Fol. 110]
When that he rowted, thing litell or grett
In this said caue is felonesly tende,
Where the ryght wone[1] was of Palestine sett,
Warding thys tresour by kyng helmas get, 5787
By Iugement of hyr moder said.[2]
The dore to the caue myghty strong was had, 5789

It always slept; and when it snored everything near it was disturbed.

Here dwelt Palestine.

With yren bondes at entre of þis caue, 5790
Where this riche tresour shitte & made fast was;
Which neuer was unshitte, entre to haue,
For the warde had this monstre *in* þat place.
To entre therby non durst for hir manace, 5794
But issued be of helmas linage,
Which aforn haue said in my rude langage. 5796

The monster guarded the cave's door, where the treasure was shut in.

None but one of Helmas' line could enter.

Thys lady presine ordaned also, 5797
When to hir doughtres thes gyftes gif had,
Thys caue enmyddes thys said montain tho,
Wher moche peple were to perishing lad.
Of caues and diches vnder I-now made, 5801
Full of serpentes, inly *peri*lous,
And *with* other places full meruelous. 5803

Here many men perished.

The ditches round about were full of serpents, very dangerous.

Then ho wold it go, of-fors most passe by. 5804
But neuer man þat place ne stede went
That sogerne wold ther for thyng any,
But þat men thaim saw anon to retorn bent.
Thys mont had but a sory path to hent, 5808
ful litell and stratte was it vnto se,
To gon vp an hy ther had miles thre; 5810

No man went there but he soon came back again.

The path up the mountain was very narrow and three miles long.

WHich behouid go withe-out rest any, 5811 [Fol. 110 *b.*]
For where man to sitte A place shold not se

Men had to go up without resting;

[1] MS. "lone;" but Fr. text, *la propre demeure*. [2] "fad" (?).

for there was no place to sit down except one sat upon serpents.

Enlesse vppon serpentes sate truly !
And infinite was of thaim suche plente.
For dred of that fende unhabite þe contre ; 5815
Off thys strange monstre, declared & said,
Thys haue it founde in writing displaid. 5817

This knight came riding thither, attended only by a page.

NOw shall come Again to þat wurthy knight, 5818
Which ther cam ryding A coursire vppon ;
Alone his uiage, sauyng A page ryght,
Thys good knight *with*out reproche of person ;

When he drew near the place, he met a man,

When thys montain approched ny to gon, 5822
A good man be[1] fund enmeddis the way,
Which to this montain hym gan he conuay. 5824

who led him to within a mile of the place, and then left him to go on alone,

SO when that he was A mile of certain, 5825
Then vnto hym said, " no nerre will I go ;
Sir, be-hold yande that hiduous montain,
lese will I ne wyn ; fre knyght, go ther-to."

showing him the path whence none returned.

The path hym shewed wherby most go tho, 5829
Fro-whens[2] neuer cam Again here no wight
For soth at no day vnto mánnys sight ; 5831

His gude departed, and the knight rode on.

And yut hath ther be men mo than twenty. 5832
hys gidour ne wold lenger sogern[3] plain,
Fro-thens[4] deperted, retornyng wightily.
Thys knyght so rode, he cam to that montain.

At the mountain he dismounted and gave his page the rein, and bade him wait ;

Fro courser lepte doñ, hys page toke þe rain. 5836
Firmely commaunding hym shold there abide,
Noght Fro horsbakke go till he cam, no tide.[5]

[Fol. 111] though he only had to wait in vain.

But, certes, for noght there Abide shold he, 5839
Full well myght he lete hys hors to pasture ;
For neuer his maister Again shold se.

[1] "he" (?). [2] MS. "For whens."
[3] MS. "fogren." [4] MS. "For thens."
[5] At the bottom of this page is the catchword :—
"But certes for noght there Abide."

This knight departed to this auenture, — The knight commends himself to God,
To god commaunding, blissing hys figure; 5843
Entring within this narew path þat stoundle, — and enters the path,
That dais of lif neuer such on f[o]und. 5845

Ryght will armed was thys noble knight, 5846 being well armed.
A good swerd of stile in his hand holdyng;
Thys mont toke, narew and stikell to sight.
An horrible serpent saw he comyng, — He soon sees a serpent coming,
Towardes this knight, vppon hym rennyng; 5850 running at him to devour him,
Trowyng hym deuour that houred instaunce, and advancing with yawning
With a yanyng throte gain hym gan[1] Auaunce. throat.

That fine good custell that in hand gan hold 5853 The knight brandished his dagger,
Brandes[t] the good knyght, uaillant and wurthy. and cut its neck in two at a stroke.
Hym to assail the serpent full bold,
He As man fers Approched hir ryght ny:
With o soule stroke the necke cute ato swiftly; 5857
The serpent fill don dede for all hyr strenght, — The serpent fell down dead.
Which worme was ny ryght ten hole feete of lenght. 5859 — It was 10 feet long.

When the serpent saw ther ded mortally, 5860 Upward again he mounted,
The montain gan take; vpwarde stied there,
As man quicke and wight *with* all the body.
Gayn him comyng saw A-pace A huge here, — but soon sees a huge bear coming apace, which,
Hym vnto assaill cam[2] *with* all power; 5864 however, he encounters boldly,
But of hym thought he to faill in no wise,
With gret raundon cam to hym in his gise. 5866

Heo hys shethe thys knight drew hys good sword [Fol. 111 *b*.] drawing his sword
hard, 5867 like a mighty man.
As A mighty man, wurthy and hardy;
Shewing inly well he was no coward.

[1] MS. "gain." [2] MS. "can." Fr. text, *vint*.

The bear gripped his shield, and clutched at his shoulder, tearing his hauberk;

Vppon the shild hym grypte thys bere tho feresly,
On hys shulder als hapned verily;
Hys mailled hauberke broken and to-tore,
Hys shild vnto grounde drew hym before.

but he smote the bear in the snout, giving him a wound a foot long,

TO hys good swerd tho had mister and nede,
The beres gret groin tho smote he vppon;
With hys swerd so gripte of fine manly-hede,
Ther all snowte and groin smote he of Anon,
More then A large fote, of recorde so doñ.

and cutting off his snout, so that he could not bite.

Tho durst he noght charge As of his bityng,
By hys eyes twain of was it shering.

The bear was very chapfallen at this,

THys bestly bere was passyng old and strong,
Natheles tho was heuily chermat;

yet raised his paw against him again;

But not-for-that haused hys pawe Alonge,
Trowyng to hapne hym to rase þat dat.
But full wyght and light was this knight algat,

but the knight leapt lightly aside.

Ther tho made A lepe wyghtly in trauers
Fro this bere, which was fers, bold, and diuers.

With a back stroke of his sword he cut off the bear's paw.

A bakwarde smote he *with* hys swerde of stile,
O paw of the bere of was there keruyng;

But it reared up, and clutched him with the other paw.

On hys hynder feet reised up that while,
And to this said knight full ny approching,
That *with* that other paw hy*m* was cracching.

Both fell together.

All hys Armure he to-breke and tere,
So both on an hepe fill, both knyght and bere.

[Fol. 112]

Then the knight with his dagger cut the bear's throat, so that it quitted its hold.

But thys bere myght noght in no wise bite;
Then at his gerdell Anon toke this knight
A dagger full good, fourged of profite,
Thorugh hys throte yaf A stroke *with* all his myght
So that gretly hurt was this in foule wyght.

Ther lefte the bere his pris, stoned sore was,
That other pawe the knyght smote of in þat place;

Then the knight cut off its other paw.

Tho caste he vp A full meruelous cry.
Then this manly knyght *with*out other lette
Thorugh belay hym smote to crosse of swerd ny;
Vnto mortall deth [t]he bere to grounde shette.
Thys good english knight his swerd in sheth sette;
So vp went, doing huge distruc*c*ion,
Off serpentes made grete occision,

At last the knight smote it through the belly up to the cross-hilt of his sword.

On went he slaying many serpents.

And off bestes wilde many on gan sle,
hou-be-it that he suffred full grett pain.
So going up hy till to coppe came he,
By fors and strenght so passing the montain,
So niyng to the caue wher this monstre was plain,
Which the yren dore warded of the caue
Where the tresour was that he trowed haue,

At last he reached the top, and drew near the iron door of the cave, which the monster guarded.

Which was enclosed by werke of fayry,
In an ill hour cam, which was gret folay.
Into diche and caue entred vnhaply;
And As sone As he reste ther had alway,
Perceiuyng this monstre where þat she lay,
Which had A large eye, (thre foote was Aboute),
And when that she hym perceued all-oute,

But he entered the cave in an evil hour;

for he soon perceived the monster with its eye a yard broad,

Raysed was anon with wonderfull corage,
As A malice beste *with* cruelnesse sett;
Towarde thys good knight Auaunced hir outrage;
Thys monstre belay As pipe large and gret.
Thys knight saw hir come, *with*-draught wold not gette,
But that alwais again hir go wold
For what-somaner vnto hym come shold.

[Fol. 112 *b*.]

which at once attacked him.

The knight saw it come, but would not retrent, but determined to face it at all risks.

Drawing his sword he smote it, but his strokes failed to harm it.

His swerd fro sheth drew, this monstre yafe stroke grete,
But no-thyng was wurth the stroke hir gan take;
Wher *with* the bake or *with* swerd-egge gette,
To this monstre might noght do hurt ne wrake

Neither iron, steel, nor wood could wound it. It bit his sword in half,

With yre, stile, ne tre, hou-so it gan make.
Thys monstre *with* teeth the swerd ther taking,
In möitees to Forthwith it breking,

though it was all of steel.

And yut was she fourged all of stile;
Thys knight noght of hir myght to-tere ne rase.
The swerd wel ground, no harder many mile,
The sharpnesse ne hardnesse no-thing wurght was.

Then with a yawning throat it swallowed the knight down whole.

With A yanyng throte thys knight gan manace,
All at a morsell swolewed knight surely;
(Off thys here now said in no wise do ly);

The knight seemed no more in its mouth than a pasty in an oven.

Thys knight swolewed, in throte noght pering
More then doth A pastay in ouen truly![1]

Thus died he, and it was a great pity.

With full gret dolour in thys wise deing,
Gret demage and hurt was it uerily.
For in hym was had huge hardesse surely,
For moche had doñ of manly dedes fair,
But nomore shall do thys knyght debonair.

Fol. 113] Thus was this good English knight devoured by this monster,

Thys english good knight was *with*out socour,
Which this said tresour trowed to conquere,
That whilom by days had gret honour;
With thys monstre was this denoured there;

and it was a great pity.

Gret damage it was of thys baculere,[2]
For in hym was had full gret wurthinesse,
Socour was ther non, but to deth moste dresse.

[1] In the margin—*deathe of a noble knyghte* [*yat was of sir* [*T*]*ristrams* . . . . .

[2] MS. "baiulere." See Glossarial Index.

NOght so hy As he neuer man vp went, 5958
The more in hym was of hug wurghtinesse;
Remembred ought be his knyghtly entent,
Stilled ne put shold be in hodelnesse.
No man, As seith this history expresse, 5962
Neuer went so ferre As to memory,
In that meruelous Roche being so hy, 5964

No one ever got so high up the mountain as he did.
His daring should be remembered, not lost in oblivion.

No man ever went higher.

As wilfolly gan do thys full good knight. 5965
Too days hys page ther sogernyng sure
At the hill-fote; after retornyng ryght
Into Englande streight; wher thys auenture
Declared to many a creature, 5969
Which caused to write therof thys history,
To endo that it shold be now in memory. 5971

His page waited for him two days, and then returned to England, there relating this adventure to many.

And thys ther he knew by A good deuyñ, 5972
Which somtyme was clerke Merlyn vnto,
Which ther dwelled, to life gan determyñ.
Vnto thys said clerke ran all the worle tho,
For ther necessite vnto hym gan go, 5976
Wherof he wold say trouth and verite,
For entirely all ryght full well knew he, 5978

A certain divine, who had been clerk to Merlin, dwelt there in Arragon, to whom man went to hear the story.

Like As hade be ther in propur person, 5979
And had comyn streight Fro the saide montain.
This deuyn was of good cognicion,
And a scoler was of Tholouse certain,
As witnesseith litterall scripture plain. 5983
Verily moche more then yeres twenty
Neuer ther cam man vnto hym truly, 5985

Fol. 113 *b.*
He was a scholar of Toulouse.

and during twenty years gave true replies to any questions he was asked.

But hym declared the trouth and verite 5986
Off all maner thing that man demaunde wolde.

The page, therefore, went to him.

For that the page *with* hym thought wolde be,
Which subtille and sage was he manyfold;
and learnt from him all the truth just as I have now told it you. All trouth and verite by hym was vnfold 5990
Of that I haue told, declared, and sayd;
By this notable clerke was it displaide. 5992

There was also a man of noble birth in Hungary, Ther was on hade in lande of hungery, 5993
Which descended was of A noble line.
Thys tresour to conquere thought he manly,
But by hym may noght be it to termyne.
who came to this mountain; but he was not there long, To this montain cam this noble knight fine, 5997
The monte clymbed up ten or twenty pas,
And ther taried noght no whiles ne space. 5999

being very soon devoured by serpents; but he went not up so high as that other. Ther *with* serpentes he deuoured was, 6000
Nawher ny went vp As other gan doo.
Many deuoured hath be in that place,
Non shall that tresour conquere hym vnto
But of the lynage be discended fro. 6004
Pity the English knight was not of the right lineage. Full heuy it was that this goodly knyght
Off Englande had noght be off that line ryght.

[Fol. 114] He was descended from Tristram, HE descended was off full hy parage, 6007
Off Tristram hys line cam of natiuite,
As the history rehersith hys linage.
and had assuredly won the treasure, had he been of the right lineage. Forsoth that tresour conquerd then had he,
So of that linage aboue-said had be, 6011
Full chiualrous was certes at *þat* day,
Ferre and ny as any of thaim to say. 6013

Then came a *messenger to* Lusignan, Tho it cam and fill in that ceason there, 6014
That A messinger passed forth tho by,
where Geoffrey was enjoying himself *with* all honesty. Wher Gaffray *with* gret toth was in his manere
At ioyous disport ryght full merily
At lusignen castell *with* strangers many; 6018

To which egall sporte non the yere shold see,
In gentile maner *with* all honeste.

With hym ladyes and damycelles fair,
Connyng, gracyous, humble, and benigne;
Gentile, womanly, and in debonair,
In a fair herber to sport gan in-cline.
A messinger cam; saw well by hys syne.
Streith to Gaffray went, hym fair salutinge;
"Sir, ye be welcome," Gaffray hym sayng.

With him were ladies and damsels in a fair arbour.

Geoffrey tells the messenger he is welcome,

This messinger connyng and gentile was,
Off hys mouth issued sugred swete langage;
Nouels demaunded Gaffray in *þat* place.
Aforn lad[y]es and damicelles sage.
He hym sette and told all the huge outrage
(Like As this boke rehersith here before)
All the dedes told off thys knyghtes lore;

and asks him the news.

Then the messenger relates the adventure I have just told you,

And whereto thys fers monstre doth repayre,
Which peple hath distroide so many,
Myghty, strong, fers, bold, gentile, debonair,
And hou the tresour wardeth myghtyly
Off helmas, which was so ryche and so worthy;
Neuer perceiued non like off auaill.
Gaffray full moche therof gan meruaill,

[Fol. 114 *b.*]

and tells where the monster was who guarded the treasure of Helmas.

At this Geoffrey greatly marvels,

Off thys said monstre werof he gan speke.
Thys monstre to destroy said he wold go,
With-all the tresour conquere and oute breke.
Hys men made redy qwikly, no reste made tho,
Forthwith send he hys brother Thierry vnto
To hym come, and cam; after hym sayng,
The contre gouerne to hys retornyng.

and says he will go and destroy the monster.

He made ready, and sent to his brother Thierry to come and govern his realm.

For thys Gaffray was of fers harde corage;
Neuer hys day[e]s wold he noght mary,

This Geoffrey was of a fierce courage,

and would never marry.

In wife to entre As in mariage;
No woman wold betrouth neither affy.

Then he made over his land to Thierry, saying he should depart.

Vnto hys brother the lande toke goodly,
Sayng he moste go *with*oute any reste,
Off that riche tresour for to make conqueste.

But he was prevented by sickness and age.

But when that he shold haue taken hys way,
Gret siknesse hym toke and age gan repair;
On his bed don layd *with* full grett seknes
Thys gentill knyght, stronge, fers, & debonair,

Alas! had he lived, he would hav: had the treasure,

Which so many gud dedys hath doñ [fair].
Alas! the tresour of Comquez shold had,
So that lif myght haue, (for of all was drad),

[Fol. 115] and the Land of Promise, that Holy Land.

ANd the lande haue hade off promission;
Iff god wold haue send hym good liffe and long,
Conquered shold that holy regyon.

But death, who spares none, made war on Geoffrey;

But deth sparith noght tho feble ne stronge,
With Gaffray hath take were other Among,
And to hym comyng A grett passe *with*-all,
Ther making hym were[1] dedly and mortall.

and against death hath no man any power.

SO uenquisshed was by dethes gouernall,
Agayn hir noman hath fors ne pusaunce
Be he not so stronge or of ryche auaill,
Als well tho feble As strong in substance;
Non hath power gain dethis gouernaunce,
Be he Baron, Markeis, Erle, Duke, Prince, or kyng;

Death smote Geoffrey sorely with his cruel dart,

With hys cruell dart Gaffray sore smiting,

piercing his heart.

Full streight the stroke went ther vnto hys hert,
Where-of ther was had inly gret dolor;

[1] MS. "wery;" Fr. text *guerre*.

For in peiters shold haue be well expert,
I-now good dedys don wold by labor,
Er that yere passed any tyme or hour,
Churches make and found, which deuised were;
Bothe landes, rentes, thought he morteis there,

What good deeds he would have done in Poitiers, had he lived!

TO found and make noble churches gret.
Alas! full dolorous to bildyng shal it bide!
Neuer shall thay be fourged, made, and get,
Where-of is pite in many A side;
Gret heuinesse will it cause full wide,
And ne had the will and the plesire be
Off our hy lorde, sittyng in trenite.

But, alas! these things were left undone.

His death will cause great heaviness.

GAffray lith doñ sike, ille touches feling,
Wyn ne vitaill resceiue may for seknesse;
Anon After the preste were sending,
Hys confessour come, hym gan to confesse,
And ther beforn hym made to say a messe.
After ordained making testament
Spiritually, after hys entent,

[Fol. 115 b.]

He can take no food.

His confessor came and said mass.

Then he made his will touching both spiritual and lay matters.

When deuised hade hys lay thynges all.
Then entered was at Maillers abbay,
Where a fair repair had he full roiall.
For of-new again made, it is no nay,
ryght As he had distroed it all-way.
So by hym was made and furged again
Off Maillers the church, *with* fresh werke solain.

Then was he buried at Maillezais abbey,

which he had rebuilt after destroying it.

Ther ligh[t], ther hys thombe put is and sett;
The frensh maker seith it saw he *with* ey.
Hys testament made, it myght be no bett,
And what lefte ouer, to pore made pay truly.
So after passyng to goddes mercy,
All were paid in hys owne presence,
What-so hym semed As in conscience.

There lieth he, and the author of the French Romance there saw his tomb.

Thus he made his will,

and yielded his soul to God.

To god yild his soule, hym do mercy and grace, 6112
And of hys synnys A generall perdon,
For moch goodnesse gan do *in* many place
As sone As in hym was put reson.

Had he lived longer, he would have done more.

Iff lenger leued, more wold he haue doñ; 6116
He is now dede, what shall we then say?
That god hym pardon hys mysdedes ay. 6118

[Fol. 116] Thierry was Geoffrey's heir,

THierry was tho A full noble knyght; 6119
Gaffray ther hym made hys enheritour
Off all the contre which he hild hym dyght
And that to hym pertained any hour.

and governed both Poitiers and Partenay, being at first powerful,

Thierry it hild, A noble gouernour, 6123
So he regned there, & in pertenay;
Regned and gouerned pusantly. 6125

but afterwards he alienated much of his property.

But after thys, [as] by hys mariage, 6126
geuyng to on here, to Anoder there,
So Alienyng part of hys heritage.

Yet the descendants of Thierry reign at Partenay still,

yut noght-with-standyng god of hys power
Causith the line regne yut *with*out danger; 6130
At noble pertenay ther of sir Thierry
Off trouth thai regne yut ryght worshipfully, 6132

as Melusine foretold; and may they long do so!

As Melusyne faid, moder of that line, 6133
That long schold endure the line of pertenay;
God grant long endure, neuer determine!

The line endureth to this day,

Fro-thens till now durith the line alway
In chiualrous knighthode vnto thys day; 6137

and contains many noble knights,

Noble good knightes, gentile, curtes, fre,
Among all other hauyng habilite, 6139

of whom we shall speak a little, and then end.

Off whom a litill we shall be declaring, 6140
After thys boke finish shall and end.
Goddes knightes haue be, ther trouth neuer falsing

For king, Duke, Erle, Markeis, Baron, or frend.
hit wil Appered by that good knight hend 6144
That thys boke began, of Partenay lord,
Grett honour had in life of recorde; 6146

Especially should be mentioned that worthy knight, who caused this book to be begun.

HE that this boke made and gret parte gan do, 6147
This knight died, in life had gret honour;
For noght man may do gain mortal deth, lo!
The feble and strong takith she ech hour;
Non hir escapith As by no labour, 6151
Be it king, or pope, or lordes of landes,
All most nedis passe truly by hyr handes, 6153

[Fol. 116 b.] When it was partly done, this knight died;

for who can escape death?

THat is the trewage of bodies humayn. 6154
Al most by that path of fine fors to passe;
And that way compassith ech soueran,
hou moche fro tham to hyr haue, hy or basse.
Ouer-light she is euermore, alasse! 6158
Alas! she comyth wonderfull lyghtly,
Man seith not the hour ne hou he shall dy. 6160

All must pass along death's path.

Alas! it cometh unexpectedly, man sees not when nor how.

WHen she oppressith any creature, 6161
More swetter[1] she goth then arew any,
Smitting man *with*out wurdes saing sure.
When on hir thenke, my hert sogheth heuely,
And so here shold do ech humain body; 6165
Euery man shold doubt hir cruell hand,
For ouer-gret stroke yeuith *with* hir wand; 6167

Death is swifter than an arrow.

When I think on it, my heart sigheth.

Every man should fear its cruel hand.

FIrmely and stedfastly redoubted shold be. 6168
Ho well on hyr thenke, all disport will leue,
Thenking, musing hys soules sauete,
As will man as woman, to say in breue;
Ho wel on it thenke, fro ill will remeue. 6172
In such wise gan do, I trow it, all-way
Thys fore-said lorde of roiall partenay. 6174

Whoever thinks on death, must leave all pastime,

and muse on his soul's safety.

Whoever thinks on it well, will depart from sin.

[1] "fwyftor" (?)

[Fol. 117] One William was then Archbishop,

ON William was the archebisshope tho,
Where of the name tho of Bisshope was wurthy;
At end knew full well wat thys lorde had do.

and he well knew how good a man this lord of Partenay was.

He seing this lord good man was and holy,
And well gouerned the lande here worly
Till to finall ende he gan forth strike;
Which end was full good and ryght autentike.

He died on the Tuesday before Pentecost, May 17, A.D. 1407, and was buried at Partenay. [This date is wrong; it should be 1401.]

THe tewisday passed Aforne penticost,
The yere A thousand four hundred & seuyn wend;
Thys full goodly knyght yild tho vp his goste,
No lenger ne might hym fro deth deffend;
To god behouid his soule yilde and rend
On the xvii day of the moneth of may,
And in erth lith at noble partenay.

He lies in the church of the Holy Cross.

IN church of saint crosse lith this courteis knight;
Ryght full wurthyly made hys sepulture,
And full nobly doñ As it ought of ryght;

He was very solemnly and honourably interred, be ye sure.

Sollemply was entered, be ye sure,
And honourabilly all thing fourged pure
As it belonged lord and gouernour,
Both on lif And dede shold haue gret honour.

The day of his death was the very day on which the head of the blessed Saint Louis, king of France, was translated to Paris.

THe heuy day of his mortall passing
Was the same day, (to be said properly),
That the sacred hed of the gloryous king,
halowed seint lowes, prince of fraunce most hy,
That terrestriall leued blessidly,
(Which of men is said seint in parradis),
Ther at that day translat [was] to Paris.

[Fol. 117 b.] I do not mean that my lord

But I say it noght As it to recorde
That in that proper day was noght don

When to mortall deth went my noble lord;
For made and done was the translacion
In the yere of the incarnacion
Off hed and of the glorious body;
And he long sith dede, dais full many;

died in that same *year*; for the translation of St. Louis' head took place long before that.

But that day this fest first honoured was,
Euery yere after, þe moneth of may;
Sith on of tho dais deth gan he purchas,
As seruant shold sew, so sewed his lord ay,
Such lord gift myght deserue hym to serue alway,
An-hy in heuyns to his lord ascend.
This of my good lord here now make an end.

But I mean that he died on the anniversary of that event,
following his master as a servant should.
Thus I make an end here of my good lord.

Off his noble sone, Iohan of pertenay,
Off whome declare shall, his deuer gan do.
By hym the obsequy well don that day,
Enriched *with* light pertayning ther-to;
All-be-it had heuinesse also,
Wisdōm behouith to lete go and passe
Which that men mow noght amend *in* no cas.

His noble son, John of Partenay, performed the funeral obsequies well, using many wax-lights.

I Hold it no gret wisdome ne sagesse
To ouermoche suffre sorew and paine;
Who *with* dolour and wo the hert ouer-presse,
Naturall fole is such heuinesse sustain,
When that he may noght it restore Againe;
Neuer wepe ne cry, neither such dole hold,
Forsoth doth noght well ne As the sage shold.

But it is not wise to sorrow overmuch,
when the matter cannot be mended.
Those who do so are not wise.

As to our purpos here will I repair,
Touching our nouel new enheritour,
Off noble pertenay Iohañ the lorde hair,
Off whom spokyng haue here *in* langage our.
A worthy man was and of gret honour,

[Fol. 118]
I return to his heir, John, lord of Partenay and seigneur of Matefelon,

who is no cruel man,

The souerain lord of Mathefelon,
Which that is not cruellous ne felon̄, 6237

but very courteous.

But curtois, debonair, and vertuous; 6238
Hyt appered well by hys workes eche braide.
For he was gentile, suete, and gracious,
Non ille wold he do, but fain wold all aid;

He is sweeter than any maid; this he inherits from his mother.

He is more suetter then is any maide. 6242
Off that he drawith after that laydy
Fro whom he is discended uerily. 6244

For she was very sweet and charitable,

A more suetter, humble, and amyable, 6245
Gentile, debonair, sage, wise, and connyng,
Curtois, piteuous, and charitable,

and did much good to the poor;

Sche vnto the pore ful gret good doing;
So gentile, suete, fre in hert was being; 6249
For she was of tho moste blessed uerily.
Thai ben piteuous Among peple surely 6251

and especially to those in great need.

As of tho which had grett necessite, 6252
Both mister and ned vnto som goodnesse.

Many she raised to riches, of her great liberality.

Full many therof raised vp hath she,
Fro pouerte enhaused to rychesse,
The which proceded of full hug noblesse, 6256
Off ryght gret franchise and hert piteuous
To socour nedy and tho famyleus, 6258

[Fol. 118 *b.*] Hence my lord had a fair beginning, and, moreover, he is of royal lineage,

What-someuer doo, besemith hir goodly. 6259
Mi lord therof hath fair begynnyng;
Also belongith it, lo! properly
To tho of roiall linage being,
And therof is he, I doubte me no-thing; 6263
For of tho most blissid issued and wend
Noght long Ago, and therof gan discend. 6265

being cousin to the king of France,

HE cosyn vnto the hy king of fraunce, 6266
By the which branche honour is hauyng.

Off kyngis is most noblest and pusaunt,
  Off All the wordle moste souerain kyng.
  All rounde the compas though man be sekyng,
    In all the wordle so noble king is noght
    As the kyng of Fraunce, certes, to be thought.

the mightiest king in the world.

There is no king so noble as the King of France.

His cosyn is, in hys moder parte, truly;
    And in faider parte ny kin, to deuyne,
To kyng of Cipresse and off hermeny,
  And by the discent of thys noble line
  That beforn haue told of fair Melusine.
    Ny kyn he is to king off norway,[1]
    For of Melusine discended all thay.

He is cousin to the king on his mother's side; and, through his father, allied to the King of Cyprus,

and also to the King of Norway.

Off tho knyghtes ben yut, lo! in Norway,
    Wurthi and doubty, and ladies many;
*With*in this linage comprised be thay,
  And knowyn ouerall ryght openly
  That thay discended be of þat line hy
    Off lusignen, which is notable grett,
    Which so issued, into yrlande gett,

For knights of Melusine's line still live in Norway,

and it is well known that they belong to the Lusignan family.

And vnto many Another contre,
    As beforne is said by our gouernaill.
Neuer line of told *with* thaim egall be,
  Neither to hur[2] such an[3] hug meruaill,
  No hys dais shall neuer, *with*out faill,
    As ye haue hurde of lusignen children, lo!
    Deme ye in no wise that lesing say you to;

[Fol. 119] No family was ever equal to this;

nor can any man hear such marvels elsewhere as are told of Melusine's sons.

Trowe it ne suppose dreme to be any;
    Off uerray trouth it is a tru dreme ryght.
And ho saue noght sain this said history,
  Vnnethes will beleue this to be parfight.

Think not I dream; or, at least, it is a true dream.

[1] In the margin—*norway kynge.*
[2] Read "hire" = hear; Fr. text, *Ne ont dire autel nouvelle.*
[3] MS. "and."

Whoso hath not seen this history, will scarcely believe the fact.

For soth thys history plainly shewith to syght 6298
like As I haue declared you and said,
ho-so lust it rede, may se itt displaid. 6300

The seigneur of Matefelon,

Off Mathefelon the lord souerain, 6301
To whom our lord gif gret ioy and honour,
Which of that mansion lord is certain,

who is also lord of Partenay,

And of partenay, (reson is eche hour),
Among all other A gentile henheritour; 6305

shows himself to be a sweet creature,

In hys rule shewing A suete creature,
Which that is of full noble nature, 6307

for he will not leave unfinished the book his good father began.

SIn he will not leue the boke he began, 6308
Hys god fader, to whom god gif pardon!
By hym of it gret laud and presiing wan,
For at this day, so me aid god our patron,
Men shall noght fynd nawher suchon. 6312

I believe that no man hates him,

I beleue that non this good person hate, lo!
I pray to our lord that he may wel doo, 6314

[Fol. 119 *b*.] and, indeed, any one who sought to harm him would be a great sinner.

FOr he hath made A good begynnyng. 6315
And he shold be in synne and crime by ryght,
Which that hym wold ille be purchassyng.
To chersh euery man laborith þis knyght;
Iff he se that he be good man parfith, 6319

He never refuses any deserving man.

No-thyng will hym wern þat he lust proclame.
Hym haue I so hurd renomed of fame, 6321

He should be named Alexander. I would say much more, only men would say I flatter;

That Allexandre full wel name hym may; 6322
Off hym mouch more speke and say wold I,
By my feith, ner I ssupposed All-way
That men wold perhaps say I flatery,

because he is still living;

For that in lif is he personally, 6326
And thenke men shold not preisse other in presence;
For tham shold preise[1] ther werkys diligence 6328

[1] MS. "preife;" Fr. text, *louent*.

That thai haue done in time passid euer, 6329 and we ought rather to praise the dead;
And speking, rehersing the dedes and fet
Off tho which ben gon that no more may do neuer;
Certes men may well of tham speke and tret,
here tell And declare all ther dedes gret. 6333
And when god will, men may of my lorde,
In time to come, thynges off recorde. 6335 yet men will praise my lord in time to come.

Yut I hire moche speke off hys roiall estate, 6336 I hear many speak of his gentleness, countenance, and demeanour;
Off his noblesse, gentillesse, and off hys dede,
Off his contenaunce and mayntenaunce algat,
The which I hold of hug noblehed.
And full noble hold is off manlihed; 6340
For discended is fro so hy A place,
Off kynges, Dukes, Markois full of grace. 6342 for he is descended from kings, dukes, and marquises.

When conquered[1] haue and enserched well, 6343 [Fol. 120]
For soth is A man of full hy parage. He is found, on inquiry, to be of high parentage.
hys engendrure to declare and tell,
Comyn is he off full noble linage.
Among other hys wif gracious and sage, 6347 His wife also is humble, courteous, and intent on good;
humble, curteis, gentile, debonair,
And ne musith noght but all good and fair. 6349

Euery man seith, "well (As semeth me) 6350 so that they are well met.
To-geders assembled inly well be thai;
Entrelouing non better may be.
In that astat our lord tham hold alway."
Thys lady is of perregort, is no nay, 6354 This lady is of Perigord, daughter to the late earl.
Doughter to the Erle which þat is dede.
That mariage no mahyme to his kinred, 6356 His marriage is no disgrace to his kindred;

For noble line is off Auncionte, 6357 for she too is of a noble line.
Off long time passed ferre fro memory.
For in charlemain time antecessour had she;
When charlemain had conquered truly For when Charlemagne had conquered all Guienne

[1] Rather read, "enquered;" Fr. text, *quis*.

and the country round it,

The hole erldome and contre by were myghty, 6361
And all Gian, the contre enuiron,
That noble erldome old and auncion, 6363

he gave it to one of his nigh kinsmen, one of his cousins-german,

TO on of hys kynnesmen gaff itt; 6364
In hys roiall gifte he A fair gift had.
His ny kynnesman was, myght not fro flit;
Hys cosyn germayn, it beleue I sad.
Full well þat Erledome gouerned and lad. 6368

who resided there till he died.

As men me said, neuer after thens went[1]
To no place here ne there thys Erle reuerent, 6370

[Fol. 120 *b.*] His inheritance went to his heirs male.

As by wifing ne by mariage; 6371
That Enheritaunce to hoires male went.
A strong strenght ther had, called piergort uillage,

There is a place called Perigord (Perigueux), whence this lady comes.

Wher-hens is comyn this same day þe discent,
Among peple gracious and sagely hent, 6375
Thys lady full swete and ryght debonair,
To all other lades exemplair, 6377

She lacks nothing that is lady-like, but is gentle and sage.

Well stuffed with all maner of goodnesse, 6378
She noght fauteth þat haue shold A lady;
What belongith to ladies hynesse
In thys hy lady comprised expresly;
A connyng woman, well taught & wurthy; 6382

A very fair marriage was made between them.

She is so swete, gentile, curtois, & sage;
Atwexst thaim was had An in fair mariage. 6384

I pray they may have good issue;

HEre besech our lorde such line and issew 6385
Thaim send, þat may without end endure,
Thys lord and lady of full hy vertu;
Off the line of Fraunce is ther engendrure,
Gret heuinesse were iff issue faill sure; 6389

some heir to maintain the noble line of Melusine.

Off thaim som hair to maintain þat noble line,
Which þat issueth is off fair Melusine, 6391

[1] MS. "wend."

Off thys goodly ꝓcous Als of partenay;[1] 6392 I speak no more of her nor of Partenay,
Off whom no more[2] lenger will I speke,
Ne off Melusine whens she cam all-way,
Ne more of hyr line he will noght out breke, for I find no more recorded.
Ther-off my speche doñ and my wurdes eke, 6396
Off that I haue ther-off founden in scripture. I would have said more,
And of hyr lenger wold I haue spoke sure, 6398

Iff more of writyng therof founde myght be. 6399 [Fol. 121] could I have found more.
But more can not find in litterall scripture
Off thes creatures wrete of ucrite,
Off whom haue spoke and told the Auenture;
No more then haue put in my tale sure. 6403 There is no more than I have already told,
And sin more ther-of I can noght propose, so that I must now perforce take
Of-fors moste I here take rest and repose. 6405 rest.

NOw me behouith my shippe vnto rest, 6406 Now must my ship rest.
Sailles, cordes, And bonet put doñ.
God be thanked, at port riued in ꝑe beste, Thank God, I have arrived at port, and the dangers of the
The seeꝭ dangers haue passed and gone,
The wawes of see ouer ron echon 6410 sea are past.
By my iournaes so thorught-out the see;
Therof preise and thanke the hy Trinite, 6412

By whom thys dite fourged haue and made. 6413 I thank God, by whom the book has been brought to an end.
Thanking therof be to our lorde again,
By whom Romans and boke is to end lad.
And yf Any man demaunde hou certain, If any one wants to know the *name*
What me shall call thys Romans souerain, 6417 of this romance, It is "The Romans of Partenay."
hit name the Romans As of partenay,
And so som it call certes at this day; 6419

OR the romans of lusignen; now chese, 6420 or, "The Romans of Lusignen;" choose which you like.
By you electe be which ꝑat take ye will.
Name ye it so As it may you plese, Here shall Couldretto hold his peace,
Here Anon Couldretto pese hym shal & still;

[1] MS. "apartenay." [2] MS. "nomore."

saying that he will here make his orison,

Os of this mater no more say you till, 6424
Sauyng for to make here hys orison
Now here presently, As is good reson, 6426

[Fol. 121 b.] putting it into the form of a litany;

Puttyng it forth in fourme of letany, 6427
For all the noble line of partenay
Aforne named; and when she truly

and when this litany is done, the book shall end,

Shall be ended that haue comprised ay,
After thys prayer to take end al-way, 6431
Then all the hole werke is fourged & made,

and Couldrette shall hold his peace.

And couldrette then in pes shal be had.[1] 6433

O Glorious Trinity, Three Persons in One,

Glorious, celestious Trinite, 6434
Sacred deid incomperable,
Threfold persones knitte *in* vnite,

One Essence, Sovereign Majesty,

And on essence[2] etern, permanable,
Souerain mageste moste honourable, 6438

that hast made summer, winter, and all things,

Which somer, wynter made by hys excellence,
All thatt is and hath be by hys huge prudence,

Thou knowest all our thoughts, and the consciences of men.

Thou knowist all that hertes thenke or muse, 6441
All thynges thou seest in thy presence,
Off herttes knowist that thai daly vse,
Off verray trouth knowist ther. conscience.

Man oweth Thee due obedience, and diligence in Thy service.

Man owith to the dew obedience, 6445
Owith deligent be the to commende,
To thy seruice take As thaim to diffende. 6447

Here humbly I pray Thee to have mercy and pity on this lord and lady;

By good frendlyhed of thy deite, 6448
here in humbly wise pray thy excellence
Off tham to haue mercy, grace, and pite,
*With*out tham shewing any uiolence.
here *in* my dite haue put to thy presence. 6452

and to succour them in adversity.

In aduersite socur thaim alway,
That full noble seed of saide pertenay. 6454

[1] The Cambridge copy of the French Romance ends here.
[2] MS. "enffence;" but see l. 6485.

GLorius virgin, Mayden, moder off god,
Doughter and Ancelle, which milkest *with*-all
The sone of god *with* thy brestes brod,
Wurthily hym bare *with*-out werke carnall;
Which theophillus conforted principall;
Comfort this line *þat* noble is all-way,
Besides Rochell As of Partenay.

[Fol. 122] Glorious Virgin, mother, daughter, and hand-maiden of God, that didst nourish Thy divine Son, and didst also comfort Theophilus; comfort this line of Partenay.

SAynt Mychaell, Angell, and the Archangell,
To thaim be not strange, I you here require.
Caste thaim oute fro all fendes of hell,
And tham condute to the heuinly empire.
Off god conueying maister be entire,
lyn, wolle to uesture haue thay *with*out faill.
The besech not strange be thaim to consaill.

Saint Michael, archangel, protect them from the fiends of hell; and let them have linen and woollen vesture.

SAynt Iohan, *with* finger shewdest I beleue
The deuyne lambe which was full precyous.
All glorius patriarkes in breue,
Tham ne me for-yete noght, ye glorious;
Iff I thaim for-gatte, I were malerous.
Now if it you please, me *with* thaim making
To Accorde vnto the moste souerain kyng.

Saint John the Baptist, that didst show men the Lamb, and all ye glorious patriarchs, forget them not.

SAynt Peter, saynt Paule, and saynt Andrew,
All postelles of god, for your curtesy,
In obliuy be noght this issew
Fro-whens such noblesse cometh vnto ey,
Sparcled into landes and places many;
That conquered haue many a noble place
By ther noblesse and chiualrous purchace.

St. Peter, St. Paul, St. Andrew, and all apostles, let not this noble line be forgotten that hath spread so far.

SAint Steuin, seint Vincent, seint Lauerence,
And ye, Saynt Clement, *with*-all seint Denise,
Which all frendes bene to goddes hy essence,
your bodies haue offered by grett auisse

[Fol. 122 *b*.] St. Stephen, St. Vincent, St. Lawrence, St. Clement, St. Dionysius,

To greuos torment *with* huge tirandisse, 6487
And all martirised, like or semblable,
Which in heuyns regne in ioy perdurable, 6489

and all ye holy martyrs,

grant that we may dwell for ever in heaven,

IN the hy paradise celestiall, 6490
For your fair dedes and wurdes also.
Make that we be comprised eternall
Finabilly *with*out any ende me to,[1]
Where regneth the fader and the sone, lo! 6494
And the holy gost in heuyns full hy,
And shall for euer perdurabilly. 6496

where reign the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.

St. Silvester, St. Augustine, St. Martin, St. Maur, St. Severinus, and all confessors,

SAynt Siluestre, seint Augustin, your grace; 6497
Saynt Martin, seynt More, saynt Seuerine,
Saynt Cuthbert, seynt Germain, seint Nicholas,
And all confessours by rew to deuine,
Besech, in obliuy putt not thys line, 6501
Off whome treted haue in my tale and lay;
But out of bandes, good seintes, alway 6503

let not this line be forgotten,

but guard them from the fiends that come at the third hour or at mid-day:

Thaim warde, put, and cast fro the fendes fell, 6504
Which that comyth at thirde hour or midday,
(And more oftener then can say or tell),
Fro hynesse to lownesse us to put alway.
Make vs to haue þat solas euer and ay 6508
Off the celestiall heuynly spere,
After wrecchyd lif worly beyng here. 6510

grant us the solace of the celestial sphere.

[Fol. 123]

St. Mary Magdalen, I pray to thee.

SEynt Mary Magdeline, humble and demure, 6511
I you here require *with* hautain uois fine,
With pensiff muses of hert clene And pure;
Seint Agnes, seint Edith, seint katerine,
That if you please to take the paine & pine 6515
To beseke our lord, vs conuey and bring
Aboue unto the ioy euerlasting. 6517

St. Agnes, St. Edith, St. Catharine, be pleased to beseech our Lord to save us.

[1] MS. "to me to."

All goddes frendes blessed and Holy, 6518 All ye friends of God,
Humbly yo̅ beseke *with* ioynt handes twain,
That ye do so our sinnes vndo fully, put away our sins,
And that acqueint [vs] with our souerain, that we feel not hell-pain,
So *þat* of hell we haue no point of pain; 6522
But to herbourgh vs *with* his blissed saintes but dwell with the saints in
In heuen where And is no complaintes. 6524 heaven.

Lord swet Ie*sus*, be to vs debonair; 6525 Lord Jesu, grant that nothing may
Do noght again thaim of whom I haue told turn to their harm.
Thing *þat* thaim may torn̄ thaim in contrair;
Warde thaim fro bande of our aduersary bold, Guard them from our adversary,
Which many m*an* hath brought vnto his hold. 6529 and save us all.
For thi pusaunce and debonair renoñ,
Do make vs come to our sauac*ion*. 6531

SWete lorde god, swete fader cheritable, 6532 Sweet Lord God, our Father, guard
Warde vs fro bandes of the cruell fend; us from the fiend;
As short wurdes, vs hold in our purpose stable,
That neuer we torn̄e bake, ne the offende. grant that we
Amiable and piteable be to us at end, offend Thee not, 6536 but may gain everlasting bliss.
That we may haue the perdurabilnesse
Off ioy aboue, And uerray rest vs dresse. 6538

SWet lorde Ie*su*, *þat* all thyng hast to iuge, 6539 [Fol. 123 b.]
I the here besech *with* hole hert entire, Jesu, that shalt judge all,
Make us the ryght path go to our refuge, teach us the way of salvation,
And the way of sauacion to acquire,
To wepe and complain our synne cruell yre; 6543
So we may the preise after our last day that we may
Perdurabilly in felicite ay. 6545 praise Thee hereafter for ever.

I yilde now thankes, after this letany, 6546 The translacion.[1]
To the sacred glorious Trinite,

[1] These two words, here written in the margin of the MS., mark the beginning of the translator's *own* epilogue.

I yield thanks, after this prayer, to God, the Virgin, saints, martyrs, and confessors, that I have now translated this.

To cristes moder, the Virgin mary,
Seint Mihell, seint Iohañ, apostellis that be,
Martires, confessours, ech in ther deg[r]e,
Virgins, seintes al, that this haue translat
Fro[1] frensh till english at this present dat.

I have done it in order, as closely as I could, almost line by line, saving that I have often had to change the order of words, as when men write Latin verse.

As ny as metre can conclude sentence,
Cereatly by rew in it haue I go.
Nerehande stafe by staf, by gret diligence,
Sauyng þat I most metre apply to;
The wourdes meue, and seft here & ther so,
like As of latin ho-so will fourge uers;
Wourdes[2] most he change sondry & diuerse,

Whoever translates in metre, must do this,

Whilom þat be-fore put, And sette behynd,
And oft that at end gretth[3] best before;
So oft trauersing the langage me shall fynd,
Be it latyn, frensh, or our tonge to-bore.
ho it metre will, so do moste euermore,

whether in ballad, verse, rime, or metrical prose.

Be it in balede, uers, Rime, or prose,
He most torn and wend, metrely to close.

[Fol. 124] Yet have I preserved, I trust, the matter unhurt, without excess or diminution,

And so haue I done after my simplesse,
Preseruing, I trust, mater and sentence
Vnwemmed,[4] vnhurt, for any excesse,
Or by menusing don by violence.

making it intelligible in our mother tongue.

Warded and kepte haue to intelligens,
That will vnderstande And knowin may[5] be
In our moder tonge, spoken in contre.

Perchance I may have made an oversight,

PErhaps by lachesse, or by necligence,
Ou[e]r-sight myght cause obliuion,
Or parauenture do cause and offence.
Gretly is it noght, hurtyng no reson,

[1] MS. "For." [2] MS. "Worudes." [3] "greeth" (?).
[4] MS. "Vnwmned." [5] MS. "many."

By no menes of imperfeccion. 6578 but it is no great one,
I trust to conserue mater and substance not such as to violate the sense.
Greable vnto the reders plesaunce. 6580

Als the frensh staffes silabled be 6581 Also the French lines have fewer [eight] syllables than the English,
More breueloker and shorter also
Then is the english lines vnto see,
That comperhended[1] in on may lines to; so that two lines may be put into one;
And in such wise sondry times haue do; 6585
Or ellys man myght by computacion and I have sometimes done so.
In ther contrepane finde others reson, 6587

In frensh or english, whether A man shold 6588
The mater to preue by iuste probacion.
And so As it is truly fynde, I wold I would that both books could be seen at once, that if any man wants to count the lines, he might see how closely they are alike.
Both bokes displaide to vision,
Verefie I wold the declaracion, 6592
That on by other knowen well shold be,
Resembling well All o ssoule dite. 6594

All fourged and don, thys here make an end, 6595 [Fol. 124 *b.*] Here I make an end; and beseech you,
Besechyng your hy notable gentillesse,
That to my fauor ye now condiscend
Off your hy wurthy soueraynnesse,
In whom contained hugely is noblesse, 6599 in whom is all nobleness, to excuse all faults,
Though that diffautes apperen in use,
yut of your mercy my simplesse excuse, 6601

Sin at your request and commaundement 6602 since it was at your request I made the translation, and wrote it out from end to end in black lines.
This warke on me toke, it to fourge and make;
And so haue I don, after myne entent,
With litterall carectes for your sake;
Tham conueying in sable lines blake 6606

[1] *sic* in MS.

Directly along thys haue I to end,
After my simplesse so forth passe and wende. 6608

Now all ye that read this, remember my simpleness; though this book is not painted (for I cannot flourish), yet excuse all faults that you may see.

NOw ye all that shall thys behold or rede, 6609
Remembreth myn unconnyng simplesse;
Thought rethoriously peinted be not in-dede,
As other han doñ by ther discretnesse.
Sin florish can noght, yut, of your gentillesse, 6613
Though that diffautes appere huge to ey,
yut excusith me, besech you hertly. 6615

Explicit.

NOTES TO THE PROLOGUE.

Page 1, l. 1. The lines numbered 1—77 are, apparently, the original composition of the English translator. The passage is incomplete at the commencement. (See Preface.)

4. *Iff aught here might fourge*, If *I* might here accomplish. The omission of the personal pronoun occurs continually throughout the poem, and the reader's attention is here drawn to the fact, once for all, that he may readily perceive the construction of other passages. Thus, in l. 11, *myght* is written for *I myght*; and so again in l. 21, where *aunter wyl me* = I will adventure myself.

5. *fauting connynghede*, lacking skill.

8. Here we find the omission, not of the pronoun, but of the auxiliary verb; *I not aqueynted of birth naturall* = I *am* not acquainted, by natural birth.

9. MS. "freshe," an obvious error.

16. *president*, precedent; *i. e.* the original French Romance.

20. The only attempt at ornament in the MS. is that the initial letter of each stanza is rather larger than others, and painted red.

21. *aunter*, shortened from *aventure*, adventure. The still more contracted form *anterus* (for *adventurous*) occurs in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 2618.

P. 2, l. 25. *eche houred brayd*, each particular time. See the Glossary, under *Houred* and *Brayd*.

31. In consulting the very brief "proëm" to the "notable book" of Valerius Maximus, the reader will not find what our author here says he will; but some such passage may have been added in some copy by a commentator. The only passage in that author which at all agrees with the text is the following, addressed to Tiberius, which is certainly "notable":—"Te igitur huic cœpto, penes quem hominum deorumque consensus maris ac terræ regimen esse uoluit, certissima

salus patriæ, Cæsar, inuoco, cuius cælesti prouidentia uirtutes, de quibus dicturus sum, benignissime fouentur, uitia seuerissime uindicantur. Nam si prisci oratores ab Ioue optimo maximo bene orsi sunt, si excellentissimi uates a numine aliquo principia traxerunt, mea paruitas eo iustius ad fauorem tuum decucurrerit, quo cetera diuinitas opinione colligitur, tua præsenti fide paterno auitoque sideri par uidetur, quorum eximio fulgore multum cærimoniis nostris inclitæ alacritatis accessit. Reliquos enim deos accepimus, Cæsares dedimus. Et quoniam initium a cultu deorum petere in animo est, de condicione eius summatim disseram."—*Valerius Maximus;* ed. Kempfius, p. 1.

The concluding words are just such as would tempt a commentator to add to his author.

36—42. What this stanza belongs to is not clear. It certainly seems out of place.

45. *fantesied*, fancied, imagined.

46. *maligne gostes*, evil spirits.

50. *valoure*, efficacy.

P. 3, l. 52. *miscreantes*, unbelievers.

78. Here our author ceases to be original, and becomes a translator, ll. 78—210 being a close rendering of the Prologue to the French Romance. In order to give the reader a clear idea of the manner in which the translation is executed, the whole of the French "proëm" is given below. (See p. 229.) The philosopher alluded to in l. 78 is Aristotle, the first sentence of his "Metaphysics" being—Πάντες ἄνθρωποι τοῦ εἰδέναι ὀρέγονται φύσει. All men by nature are actuated by the desire of knowledge.

P. 4, l. 84. The sentence, as here, is often left incomplete at the end of a stanza, being continued in the stanza that follows.

96. *loos*, praise. The French has *los*.

97. *perceuale;* see Tyrwhitt, Note to v. 13844 of the *Cant. Tales*, or my note to the same (Group B, l. 2106).

98. *lo!* The reader will soon be accustomed to the continual introduction of this and other expletive words and phrases.

P. 5, l. 118. *scripture*, writing.

121. *peiters*, Poitiers. So too in *Morte Arthur;* ed. G. G. Perry; l. 40. The use of *ei* for *oi* is Anglo-French.

126. *wern*, refuse to do; Fr. *escondiroie* (= shun).

135. *lesigne;* the final *n* seems to be accidentally omitted. It is generally spelt *lesignen* or *lusignen* in other places.

139. "I" seems required before "said," to complete the line.

141. *iornay*, toil; lit. a *day's* work.

142. *faire* in the MS. should be *fairie;* see l. 148.

P. 6, l. 157. *lose wil non hent*, I desire to receive no praise. See l. 96.

162. "Since it (*i. e.* a rimed French copy) hath already been constructed and composed."

164. *to fade*, to set in order, dispose, arrange.

174. *preuyl at deuise*, executed or fashioned with exactness. The Fr. has *approimtez*, from the Lat. *approximatus*.

178. *salz and Barry*, a periphrasis for Salisbury. See p. 231, l. 109.

P. 7, l. 181. "He always spake, in all his words, to the same effect as the above-said books relate. (And *I* say) that book is compiled from three others (so say men who speak about it); and, indeed, as to its origin I know of no doubt, as I have formerly myself seen the substance of it." Such seems to be the general meaning of this vague and ill-constructed sentence, the like of which are only too abundant throughout the poem. Compare the original French (given at p. 232) which seems more intelligible.

194. "Here shall ye hear this history's labour;" *historie* is in the genitive case, the case being merely marked by its position; so also, in l. 192, we have *castell strength* = castle's strength; *shall ye here* corresponds with the French *vous orez*.

200. "Clear well or true pillar;" Fr. *la clere fontaine ou puise. Well* answers to *fontaine*, but *puise* should have been translated *well* or *spring*. The translator was thinking of *apui* or *pui*, a support.

201. We should probably read *The maker, of whom all liff doth ensew;* but, even then, the translation is incorrect.

204. *require*, pray.

The French proëm alluded to at p. 228 is here subjoined.

LE phylosophe fut moult saige, [Fol. 1]
Qui dit en la premiere page
De sa noble methafisique,
Que humain entendement saplieque
Naturelement a concepuoir,
Et a apprendre, et a scauoir.
Cest tresbien dit et saigement;
Car tout humain entendement
Desire venir a ce point
De sauoir ce quil ne scayt point,
Ou soit dhonneur ou de Reprouche,
Et mesmement quant Il luy touche.
Les choses des longtemps passees
Plaisent quant Ilz sont Recordees,
Mais quilz soyent bonnes et belles,
Trop plus *que* ne font les nouuelles.
On parle moult du Roy artus, [Fol. 1 *b*.]
Qui veult esprouuer les vertus
Des cheualiers nobles et gens;
Encores en parlent moult de gens.
Et si fait len de Lancelots
Ou quel Il y ot tant de los;

De partenay,[1] et de gauuain,
Qui neurent oncques le cuer vain
Pour acquerir honneur et pris ;
Ilz firent comme bien aprins.
Qui vouldroit sauoir et enquerre,
Et par la mer et par la terre,
les merueilleuses auentures
Qui aduiennent aux creatures,
Sauoir est excellente chose.
Car tout ainsi comme la Rose
Sur toutes fleurs est la plus fine,
Aussi est france[2] la plus digne ;
Qui Riens ne scet (.) Il ne vault Rien.
Si affiert a tous hommes de bien
Denquerre moult fort des hystoires,
Qui sont de longtaines memoires ;
Et tant est plus de hault degre,
Doit Il, [de] degre en degre,
Sauoir dont Il est dessendus.
Soit Roy (.) Baron, Conte, ou Ducs,
Sy que memoire longue en soit. [Fol. 2]
Tout grant seigneur faire le doit.
Et en faire escripre hystoire,
Affin quen telle soit memoire.
Pour tant len dit *que* vng grant seig*neur*
De poitou, (a cui dieu croisse honneur !)
Nomme sire de partenay,
Auquel tout droit Iay assenay,
Me commanda, na pas graument,
Et de son propre assentement.[3]
Commandement auoit Il bien ;
Si ne lescondiroie de Rien ;
Car chascun scet et peut veoir,
Quon doit a grant seigneur obeyr ;
Qui ne le fait, Il nest pas saige.
Sy me dit en son doulx langaige,
Que Ie prenisse lexemplaire
Du sien liuret quauoit fait faire ;
Et, de fait, Il le me bailla,
pour en sauoir moult qui en tailla
Lusignen le chasteau nobile ;
Aussi qui list faire la ville ;
Car cest vng tresmerueilleux fort.
Lors Respondy, " Ie my accord,

[1] parcenal (?).
[2] *Sic* in MS. Mis-written for "fcience."
[3] MS. affententement.

Monseigneur, a *vostre* plaisir."
"faictes," dit Il, "tout a losir,
Car toute est vostre La Iournee. [Fol. 2 b.]
Le chasteau est fait dune facc,
Sycomme est par tout Retrait,
Da laquelle Ie suis extraict,
Et moy, et toute ma lignie
De partenay; nen doubtez myc.
Mellusine fut appellee
La facc, que vous ay nommee;
Dequoy les armes nous portons,
Parquoy souuent nous deportons;
Et affin quil en soit memoire,
Vous mectray[1] en Ryme hystoire;
[A line is here lost; cf. p. 6, l. 153.]
Car Ie vueil quelle soit plus Renommee."
"Las dit, monsei*gneur*; Ie loctroye;
Tousiours *vostre* plaisir feroye,
Se faisoit a ma voulente;
Ne Ia nul Iour Ie ny fauldray.
Ie le feray a mon pouoir,
Mais pas nen vueil le loz auoir,
Se loz y a; car autreffoiz
Elle a este mise en franchois,
Et Rymee, sicomme on compte;
Pourquoy ce me seroit grant honte
De moy vanter de cestui fait.
[A line is here lost; cf. p. 6, l. 162.]
Mais a mon pouoir Ie feray
Tant, se dieu plaist, que le mectray [Fol. 3]
Dautre forme, se Iay losir,
Qui mieulx vous vendra au plaisir,
Quant lautre pas bien ne vous haitie;
Et que vous plaist que Ie le mecte
Selon les liures quon trouua,
Dont listoire on approuua,
Et affin que on labregon.
Dedens la tour de manbregeon
Deux beaulx liures furent trouuez,
En latin, et tous approimtez,
Quon fist translater en francois
Et puis, apres cinq ou six mois,
Comme celle hystoire Amery,
Le Conte de salebry,
Dun liure quauoit du chastel
Qui tant par est et fort et bel;

[1] mectrez (?).

Car Il parloit en tous ses dis,
De tous les fais *que* Ie vous dis.
'De trouez fut vostre liure extraict,'
Ainsi le dit Il et Retraict,
'Et se querez com*m*e le sceu,
Cest par ce quautreffoiz lay veu.'
Sy mectray toute ma puissance
De le mectre en bonne ordonnance,
Au plaisir du doulx Ie*s*ucrist." [Fol. 3 *b*.]
Mo'nseigneur respont,[1] "cest bien dist."
Lors prins congie de monseigneur,
A qui dieu doint Ioye et honneur!
Et men vins tout droit au chasteau
De lusignen, qui tant est beau,
Dont vous orez briefment lystoire,
Mais quil plaise au Roy de gloire
De men donner le sentement,
Sans lequel on ne fait nyent,
Soit en francois ou en ebreu;
Tout science vient de dieu;
Cest la clere fontaine ou puise,
Tout faiseur le fait quil aduise.
Se[2] luy vient tout le bien quon pence,
Nul na de dieu si non science.
Se[2] luy Requiers de ceur entier
Qua cest besoing me vueille aidier.
Et la *tres*glorieuse mere
Vueille conduire ceste matiere,
Affin que Ie puisse acheuer
Ceste euure que Ie vueil Reueler,
Au bon plaisir de monseigneur,
A cui dieu doint ennuyt bon Iour,
Et en sa fin la Ioye fine!
Ainsi no*str*e prologue fine.

[1] MS. "Refont," with "refpont" written above it.
[2] De (?).

NOTES TO THE POEM,

*** The references to *Melusine* are to the prose romance, edited by A. K. Donald for the E.E.T.S., 1895.

P. 8, l. 4. Here, as in l. 523, we find in the MS. "hie and has." But other passages show that it should be "hie and bas," i. e. high and low. See ll. 927, 945.

6. *astronomie* here answers to what we now call *astrology*, which is also its meaning in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 432. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 20.

7. *clergie*, science. Fr. *clergie*.

8. *right Canoun*, canon law; as explained by the Fr. *droit canon*.

10. *I-now*, enough.

14. *courde*, knew.

P. 9, l. 31. *machon*. The Fr. has *machonnee*.

34. *columbere*. The Fr. has *coulombiers*, a proper name. See *Melusine*, p. 19.

36. According to De la Mure, this "earl of Forest" was Guy, first of that name, Count of Lyon and Forez, who, by marriage with Sibille de Beaujeu, had several children (see l. 37), among whom were three sons; viz. his successor, Guy II., Guillaume, who became a monk, and Raymondin. Raymondin is the hero of the present romance, and was named after Raymond de Viennois, his grandfather. De la Mure, p. 489. For a long discussion of the names "Forez" and "Beaujeu," see p. 8 of the same work. The arms of the earls of Forest were gules, a dolphin, or; a drawing of them is given at p. 152 of De la Mure.

44. *Cosyn*, i. e. relative, brother-in-law. According to *Melusine* (p. 18) the earl of Forests married the sister of the earl of Poitiers.

45. "Who heard this news at that *time*;" lit. *interval*.

49. That "traying" is an error for "tarying" is proved by the French, which has "atargier," a by-form of "atarder."

51. *sayn*, seen.

52. *he send*, he sent to.

P. 10, l. 77. "For such learning I shall instruct him in and teach."

80. *on your plesire*, at your pleasure.

P. 11, l. 98. *thaught*, taught; Fr. *enseigne*. Probably miswritten. See l. 76.

114. "Raymond after this, against his (own) will, did slay him; cast stone-dead to earth, he must incline to death." The French has,

"Car Raymondin si le tua,
Et mort a terre le Rua."

P. 12, l. 137. *sewing*, following.

140. "Where there came to him then great mischief and terror."

144. *thaim to*, them two.

P. 13, l. 152. The speaker is the earl. The French has, "Lors dit a Raymon, venez ca." See l. 158.

163. *an hie*, on high. See l. 189.

P. 14, l. 178. *thought*, though. So in l. 6611.

189. *an hie*, on high; Fr. *en hault*. See l. 163. This prescience of impending death is probably copied from the Romance of Alexander. See Wars of Alexander, ed. Skeat, p. 22; Gower, ed. Pauli, iii. 78.

192. *profite*. The Fr. has *peril;* but the English gives the better sense.

197. *sothlese*, truly. It might seem that the earl is expressing a wish that the "strange adventures" were "untrue;" but other passages go to prove that the writer actually commits the mistake of making *sothlese* mean *truly*. See Glossary.

203. *for ille doing*, i. e. in return for ill-doing.

P. 15, l. 207. "I shall surely declare to thee."

217. *and shall*, and shall come to pass.

219. *a foote*, on foot.

220. MS. "a." Perhaps "at" should have been written; for the spelling *a* may be due to the French, in which *a* here occurs. See l. 223.

228. *in that other party*, on the other side; or, for his part. Fr. *dautre part*.

P. 16, l. 244. "And when that came to pass, the sword went adown;" i. e. glanced aside. See l. 249.

247. One of the "*hym*"s is redundant; viz. the *former*.

251. The translator has here made several mistakes, and considerably injured the story. He makes the earl die by the boar's tusks, and so all Raymond's subsequent self-reproaches are out of place. The French version is that Raymond's sword glances off the boar's back and cuts Aymery's body open, so that ll. 255—258 refer to Aymery, not to the boar. After this he "withdraws his sword," and again striking at the boar, succeeds in killing it at once. The German version is much better. According to this, Aymery aims at the boar with his spear as it is rushing at him, and slightly wounds it, but is himself thrown down. Raymond, coming to the rescue, seizes the earl's spear, and thrusts at the boar; but the spear, glancing aside, pierces the earl's body. Raymond immediately withdraws the spear, and with a second thrust kills the boar; and then, turning to the earl, finds him already dead. See Tieck, *Schriften;* 13ter band, s. 75; and the "Volksbuch" version; also the frontispiece to *Melusine*, ed. A. K. Donald, E.E.T.S., 1895.

Perhaps, however, the English *prose* romance tells the story best of all, viz. as follows.

"[I]N this part Recounteth thystory that whan Raymondyn cam ayenst the said bore for to kepe hym that he should not hurte his lord, the bore anoone hurted[1] to hym & ranne fast toward the Erle, whiche seeyng the wyld bore comme, lefte his swerd and toke a short spere and strayght held it dounward before hym. And the Erle, that knew & wyst moche of the chasse, broched the bore thrughe the brest, but the Erle felle doun on his knees. And thanne Raymondyn holdyng hys swerde in

[1] So in MS. We should have expected to find *hasted;* but see *heurter*, to dash, in Cotgrave.

his hand came toward the bore, and wold haue smytte hym betwene the foure legges, For hȣleye vpsodouñ, the bely vpward; and suche a stroke gaaf Raymondyn to the bore, that the blade of hys swerde brake, so that the poynte of it sprang ayenst the Erlis stomak & wounded hym sore, in so muche that he deyed therof."—*fol.* 12 *b.* See *Melusine*, p. 25.

266. As any on this side of Rome. The Fr. text has *de cy a Rome*, a proverbial phrase for *everywhere*. Compare "hethen into grece;" *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris; l. 231 of *The Pearl*.

P. 17, l. 274. The Fr. text has, *Tu nas compere ne commere*, which is not very clear.

279. Apparently this means, "In thee (is) no will (to) strain to help greatest or least." The French simply says,

En toy na Ryme ne Raison.

291. *rewardyd*, regarded.

P. 18, l. 304. The sense is, "But cursed be the hour when I was born, or (the fact) that I, living, so long keep (my) wretched life." *Worly* stands for *wordly* = worldly; i. e. born into the world.

323. Fr. *La fontaine de soif Iolye*. See *Melusine*, p. 27.

324. The MS. reading *canne* is an obvious blunder for *came;* Fr. text,

Quon dit qui vient de faerie.

P. 19, l. 343. *goodlokest;* lit. goodliest; see Glossary.

345. *gayn night*, towards night; Fr. "au soir." *Where* = whether.

354. *say*, essay.

358. *fantesie;* the Fr. has "fantosme."

359. *where*, whether; as above, l. 345; so again in l. 384.

P. 20, l. 386. *hys;* read *thys*, i. e. thus, as in l. 297.

P. 21, l. 393. *astate*, estate. Fr. estat.

403. *that instance*, then; an expletive expression, metri gratiâ.

405. *Ameruelled;* Fr. esmerueillies.

407. The MS. has simply *You named but*. The translator's copy may have been at fault here, and hence even this half line may have been written by guess-work. The French is clear, the passage running thus,

Et, par ma foy, Ie ne congnois mye
*Vostr*e nom, ne *vostr*e philosomye,
Ou Iaparcoy si grant beaulte.

The word "philosomye," in which the *l* is written over a long "f" lying beneath it, is obviously intended for *phisonomye*, i. e. physiognomy, spelt *risnomie* by Spenser, and *fisnomie* in the *Promptorium Parvulorum*. I have no doubt that l. 407 should end with this word, but it is difficult to connect it with *You named but*.

411. *recouer;* Fr. recouurer.

P. 22, l. 425. *reioyng*, rejoying, i. e. rejoicing. There are other instances of similar strange spelling in the poem, and it need not be altered to *reioiyng*. Cf. note to l. 482.

427. How *she* might know his name; cf. *Melusine*, p. 30.

442. *tarie* is an error, the Fr. not having *tarie*, but *taire*. So too, in the next line, *me* is an error for *ne;* the sense being, "I may no-wise keep silence, so as not to ask you the truth."

Mais Ie ne me pourroye taire,
Que ne vous demandasse voir.

449. *yow counsel*, I counsel you.

P. 23, l. 452. *of wordly* (= worldly) *goods;* Fr. des biens.

453. *light*, lieth.

459. And do not fear that I am not on God's part, (and that) I believe not in His miracles; cf. *Melusine*, p. 31, l. 7.

472. *I* firmly believe.

479. *unto devise*, a mere expletive phrase. It is not in the French, yet is imitated from the Fr. *à devise* = so to speak.

482. *withsaing*; cf. *gaynsayng* in l. 485.

P. 24, l. 487. That the MS. *betaking* is an error for *be taking* is shown by the French,

Que me *prendrez* a mariaige.

488. *leuing*, life. Fr. *vie*.

P. 25, l. 520. *werne*, refuse.

522. *aplas*, in place, i. e. in company; see Nares' Glossary.

523. The MS. reading *has* is a blunder for *bas*, as in l. 4; cf. l. 540, "hie and lowe;" and l. 2735.

528. *that houred tyde*, that time; a mere expletive, like *that stounde* in l. 532. And see l. 2695.

P. 26, l. 548. *resceyued*, received. Wherever this word occurs, it is written so as to look like "resteyned," owing to the practice of the scribe in making "sc" resemble "st," and "u" resemble "n." But the French decides the word in all cases, as it employs the verb *receuoir*.

552. *the Erle last past*; i. e. the late earl; Fr. *derrain trespassez* (sc. *de la vie*) = lately deceased.

554. In the prose romance, this incident occurs at a later date; see *Melusine*, p. 39.

557. Make deeds thereof, (and let) the cause be thereon, (that men) may see the reason of the lord's gift.

Faictes que vous en ayez lectre,
Et y faictes la cause mectre
Du don, et par quelle achoison
On le vous liure, et quel Raison.
Et mectez le Iour quon vous liure
Le don, et quon le vous deliure.

574. And afterward betake you to your return; a periphrasis for, afterwards return again; cf. l. 563. The French has,

Et puis vous mectez en Repaire.

P. 27, l. 579. MS. "finde" is an obvious error for "finde." Fr. *trouerez*.

584. *do it to remayn*; here *remayn* is an Anglicized form of the Fr. *ramener*, and the phrase means, extend it, drag it along towards the valley, along the stream which issues from the fountain. See l. 725, note.

Et se le courgeon plus long porte
Que le Ront que fait trouerez,
Contre le val le Ramenez.

604. *coursere*, Fr. *Roncin*.

P. 28, l. 611. Perhaps this means, The soul (of the dead) accused not the author of its death. But it is really a curious blunder arising from mistaking the sense of *Ame*.

Ame du sort ne laccusa,

i. e. No soul accused him of the event, i. e. of the deed.

616. The Fr. text has *bacheler*.

618. *hym*, like *his* in the next line, refers to the late earl.

625. *he*, sc. the late earl; see next line.

In the MS. *nyght* is mis-written, being copied from the line above. It should be *nyght*, as the Fr. has *la nuyt*.

P. 29, l. 665. *bas*, downwards.

P. 30, l. 671. *lady lore*, lady's teaching; so again in l. 705.

691. *lete make*, cause to be made; a common expression.

P. 31, l. 694. Fr. *seel*, which justifies the correction.

696. Compare the expression in the Bible, "hath set-to his seal," Gk. ἐσφράγισεν. *S. John* iii. 33.

718. *To men*, two men, who were doubtless sent by Melusine to assist Raymond; see *Melusine*, p. 44.

721. The MS. has either *pam*, or *pain* with the *i* undotted; at l. 724 the word is *pane*. In both cases a better reading would be *pale*, for the Fr. has in both places *pel*, which = Lat. *palus*, a pale, a stake. Tieck also has "einen *Pfahl*;" and the prose romance has "a stake."

P. 32, l. 725. The English version has missed the sense.

> Puis lont emporte contre val,
> Car Il tenoit trop au pal;
> Tout du long vng Rousseau sourdit,
> Dont chascun forment esbahit.

Then they bare it towards the valley, for it kept too close to the stake. All along beside it a rill welled up, whereat every one was much astounded. See *Melusine*, p. 44.

728. *stoned*, astonied.

P. 33, l. 755. The insertion of *I* seems necessary to the metre and sense. Fr. "Car vrayement *Ie* le vouldroie."

759. *Raymond* answered to *the count;* thus the Fr. text, and this explains ll. 761, 762.

762. *if your lord wyll*, if the Lord will; Fr. *se dieu plaist*.

765. *thrust* (*sic*), thirst; see l. 323, and the note.

768. *wel thaught*, well taught. Fr. *senez*, which means sage, prudent.

778. The Fr. is less obscure.

> Il ne fist peu
> Quil nait demande au corps gent
> De la dame, dont tant de gent
> Comme il veoit, pouoient venir;
> "Ia ne vous en fault esbahir,"
> Dist la dame, "tous sont a vous."
> A donc leur commanda a tous
> Que comme seigneur le Recoiuent,
> Et si font Ilz ainsi quilz doiuent.

784. Here again, as in l. 548, "resceiue" is written so as to resemble "resteine."

P. 34, l. 788. *demurly in audience*, in a low tone. Fr. dit tout bas, bien coyement.

791. *resoned*, copied from the Fr.

> A donc la dame la *Raisonne*.

796. Fr. text,

> Raymon dit, "Ie suis prest sans faille."
> La dame dit, "Il fault quil aille,
> Raymondin mon frere, autrement;
> Nous le ferons honnestement.

P. 35, l. 829. *ryght doubted and shreful*, much dreaded and dear; Fr. Ma chiere dame Redoubtee.

P. 36, l. 850. The MS. has here a curious mistake, viz. "so" instead

of "of;" Fr. *de* duc. The word "of" has first been *inverted* so as to become "fo," and then mis-written "so." Another instance of similar *inversion* occurs at l. 1007, where *beded* is written for *bedde*. So again, l. 946, *for* for *fro;* l. 949, *presone* for *persone*, etc. See Preface. Such errors might easily occur in *printing*, but in a MS. they are very remarkable.

P. 37, l. 879. *ryn.* Fr. *Rain* = Bord d'un bois, extremité (Roquefort).

881. And in their kitchens saw they great smoke too.

896. Fr. text,

Le Conte leur salut Rendit
A chascun, pas ny actendit,
selon qua luy appartenoit
Et du lieu de quoy Il venoit,
Aux grans plus, & aux petis moindre,
Bien scet a chascun salut Rendre.

Thus l. 898 means, according as appertained to the man saluted, on account of the place whence he came.

P. 38, l. 929. What would ye that I should say? Fr. Que voulez vous que Ie vous compte?

P. 39, l. 943. *messe*, mass.

946. *for;* we should certainly read *fro*. See notes to ll. 266 and 850.

949. *persone*, Fr. *personne;* the MS. error is due to the word *present* following.

955. On the other side of her, a prince of the country, etc. Fr. Et vng prince de la contree.

965. *brouth*, an error for *brought;* Fr. Les mes *portent* les escuiers.

968. The French text somewhat varies here from the translation. It runs thus,

Vings damyon & vings de Rocelle,
Qui font eschaussser[1] la cerupelle;
Vins de tornais, et vins de bea[u]ne
Qui nauoit pas la couleur Iausne,
Clare Rommain et ypocras
Y Courut par hault et par bas;[2]
Vins de sainct Iehan dangely,
On tenoit grant compte de luy;
Vins estables, vins de viart,
Vindrent apres le vin bastart;
Vins de sainct poursain, vin de Rys
Eurent de vins claires le prys;[2]
Puis eurent vin de preuilege,
[Fol. 24 b.] Chascun sien eust en son siege,
Chascun a tout ce quil demande,
Tant de vin comme de viande.

Thus, for *Angoy* (Anjou?) the Fr. has *amyon* (Amiens). *Beurne* = Beaune, near Dijon; *Tourinz* = Tours; *dijon* = Dijon; *Aucerre* = Auxerre; *Seint Iohan of Angely* = S. Jean d'Angely, in Poitou; *estables* may mean a village of that name, lying on the W. side of the Chaine du Vivarais. With regard to the *Clarre Romain*, it may be noticed that Romanée, in Bourgogne, is celebrated for its wine. *Seint pursain* = St Pourçain-sur-Allier, in the department Allier; *seint Jougon* is St. Jouin; and *Ris* probably means Ruys, near Rennes.

[1] Read "eschauffer."

[2] The Cambridge copy of the Fr. text has here lost two lines, judging by the English version.

We should compare with this the passage from the *Squire of Low Degree*, where a list is given of the amusements prepared for his daughter by the King of Hungary. See Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, vol. ii., p. 10.

P. 40, l. 992. *went to glad*, went to glade, i. e. set. Fr. text,

Les Iouxtes Iusquau Iour durerent,

which must mean, the justing lasted as long as the day did; for they next "went to even-song."

P. 41, l. 1002. *of whom*, i. e. of which; this is worth notice.

1005. *streight*, was laid straight.

1006. *bedde;* the MS. has *beded;* cf. note on l. 850.

1010. *body;* this is certainly a blunder for *bedde*, since the Fr. text has *Le lit;* besides, the custom was to bless the *bed*. See Chaucer, *Merchant's Tale;* and *Melusine*, p. 57.

1024. *outred*, uttered.

1030. But (you) must hold that oath which (the) first day (you) made (to) me.

P. 42, l. 1035. *Be*, read *He;* in the next line *of linage* = of what lineage. We might read, "And of wat linage," with improvement both of sense and metre.

1045. *pannes*, pains. So in *Lancelot of the Laik*, l. 1273,

Now leif we hir In-to hir newest *pan*.

1050. Before the next line Fol. 25 *b* is prefixed, whereas the last fol. was numbered Fol. 24. This is because two leaves have here been pasted together, Fol. 24 *b* and Fol. 25 being thus hidden. By holding the book up to the light many words can be seen, which prove clearly that on fol. 24 *b* and fol. 25 is written by mistake a passage which should have come later in the poem, and which is re-written in its proper place on fol. 41 *b* and fol. 42. There is therefore nothing here lost, and the narrative is continuous, as the Fr. text also proves. In attempting to separate these pages, some person has slightly torn the corner of fol. 24, so as to destroy the *e* in *pleage* and the *t* in *trouth* in l. 1049, defacing also the last word in l. 1050; *he it non maligne* is therefore suggested, in the sense "be no-wise ill-disposed to me," the word *maligne* having already occurred at l. 46 of the Prologue. The Fr. text has,

Dame, dit Il, je vous pleuis,
Que tant comme Ie seray vifz,
Ne faulsseray le couenant.

1059. *hold*, MS. *hold;* *hold* is of course the right reading, as the Fr. has *tenez:* cf. also l. 1056.

P. 43, l. 1072. And to (the) ladies which that men (had) brought, etc.

1081. *forcelet;* this should rather be spelt *forceret*, from O.F. *forcerat*, a casket. But the New Eng. Dict. gives two other examples of the same corruption. Also *your* in the MS. is a mistake for *yuor*, ivory (Fr. *yuoire*); this is yet another instance of the *inversion* of letters; see note to l. 850.

1082. *formelet;* this again should have been spelt *fermelet*. The Fr. text has *fermail*, which is also sometimes written *fermeillet* or *fermillet*. It means a buckle, clasp, or brooch. *Formelet* is given in the New Eng. Dict., s. v. *fermillet*.

P. 44, l. 1101. *durst*, durst.

1106. *sate*, he sat; where *he* means Raymond—

Car Il ne voult pas courouciet
Raymon, qui fust sur vng coursier;
Cougie pleut, etc.

1113. *had* = there were; Fr. *y auoit;* cf. l. 1127.

P. 45, l. 1122. Fr. on peut bien scauoir se le ment.

1125. *quicke Roche*, live rock; Fr. viue Roche.

1132. *the contray*, i. e. the people of the country.

1139. She named the castle *Lusignen* after the latter part of her name; in l. 1199, we have mention of the town of *Mel*, corresponding to the former part of the name; but see note to l. 1146.

1142. The Fr. text omits all mention of Ciprian, and merely says,

Encore le Roy *a presen*
Crie en son cry, lusignen.

But the statement is verified by the Fr. of l. 5351.

1146, 7. The word *fautih* in the MS. should be *fautith* = lacketh.

Mellusine autant dire vault
Comme merueille qui la ne fault.

This seems to imply that *Melusine* is equivalent to *merveilleuse;* but it is hard to follow this etymology. In l. 1139 is mentioned *Lusignen* as being named from the latter part of her name, and in l. 1199 is mentioned the town of *Mel*. Hence M. de la Mure suggests (p. 489) that the derivation should be reversed, and that the name was compounded from the two chief places which she possessed, viz. Melle and Lusignan. But he adds in a note; "Cette étymologie du nom de Melusine n'est pas la seule que l'on ait imaginée; Bullet n'a pas oublié d'insérer dans les *Memoires sur la langue celtique*, ce mot, qu'il fait venir de *Mé*, moitié, et *Llisowen*, anguille[1]; dautres auteurs veulent que Mélusine soit une altération du nom oriental Mélésinde." More probably it is the same name with Millicent. The prose romance says, "ye are called Melusyne of Albanye, whiche name in grek langage is as moche for to say as thing merueyllous or commyng fro grete merueylle."—*Melusine*, p. 64.

P. 46, l. 1161. *in trauers*, across.

1162. *grey;* the Fr. has *vert*. So also it is said of Lancelot in the French prose romance, "ses yeux que ressembloient deux belles *esmeraudes*."

1165. *Neuer man sain*, never (had) man seen. Fr. "On ne vit."

1171. *brought*, borough; or rather, fort. The mount of Beau Repair here mentioned seems to owe its existence to a mistranslation, as the Fr. text says,

Apres ce temps elle fist faire
Le bourg ou a *mault beau Repaire*,

i. e. the fort where there is a very good place of retreat = the fort which is an excellent stronghold.

1175. *louers*, *loupes*, louvres and loopholes. A *louvre* is an architectural term for a small tower with open sides; but is here used to translate the French *a l'ouvert;* for the Fr. text has,

Murdrieres Il a (.) *a louuert*
Pour lancier, traire, & deffendre.

P. 47, l. 1186. *toure trompe*, trumpet-tower.

1188. *For*, four, one at each corner; *reuarde*, regard, look.

Quatre trompeurs sarasinois
La furent mis a celle fois,
Pour le fort et le bourg garder
Et pour tout entour *Regarder*, etc.

[1] This is a piece of mystification; he omits to say in what language *mé* means "half"; and the word *Llisowen* is an error for Welsh *Llysywen*, an eel. If the name were Welsh, it would be simpler to derive it from *melus*, sweet.

1194. *Oede*, Fr. Oedes, the name generally spelt *Eudes*, by some confounded with *Hugues*. De la Mure; *Histoire*, etc., p. 506. Another spelling is *Odon*, i. e. Otho; (see *Melusine*, p. 102).

1200. *Vauuant and meruant*, Vauvant and Mervent, two towns in Poitou, the former of which adjoins Parthenay. De la Mure; pp. 500, 501. *St. Messent* = St. Maixent. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 103.

P. 48, l. 1220. *peito*, Poitou.

1223. *cornicles*, mis-written for *cronicles*; Fr. text, *la cronique*.

1224. *Talmondois*, the name of a place. "And after she made Tallemounte and Tallemondois and many other townes and fortres."—*Melusine*, p. 104.

1235. (She) made that day in Luxembourg (many) a fair thing;

En Luxembourg maint beau fait fist.

P. 49, l. 1252. *mallers*, Maillezais in Poitou. The abbey was burnt by Geoffrey in A.D. 1232,[1] for which offence he had to pay to the church the sum of 1000 *écus*; De la Mure, p. 493. The particulars are given at length in a later part of the romance; p. 116.

1253. How Raymond was enraged both against Geoffrey and Melusine, and how he lost Melusine, is all related at length hereafter; p. 121.

P. 50, l. 1274. We may here collect the names of the ten sons of Raymond and Melusine. They were, according to the romance, 1. Urien, who had an ugly face and eyes of different colours, in honour of whom Lusignan was built. 2. Oede (Eudes), with a face like fire. 3. Guy, who had one eye lower than the other. 4. Anthony, marked with a scar like that made by a lion's claw. 5. Raynold, with one eye. 6. Gaffrey (Geoffrey), with the great tooth. 7. Fromont, with a blemish on his nose. 8. Horrible, with three eyes. 9. Raymond. 10. Thierry. M. de la Mure considers four of these as historical, and arranges them in this order. 1. Guy, taken prisoner by Saladin in A.D. 1187; king of Jerusalem, 1185—1192; exchanges the kingdom for that of Cyprus in 1192, buying it of the knights templars for 100,000 *écus d'or* (!), they having previously purchased it from Richard I. of England, who had conquered it. He died in Cyprus, A.D. 1196. 2. Geoffrey, inherited Vouvant and Mervent in Poitou. He burnt the abbey of Maillezais, A.D. 1232,[1] and had to pay for the rebuilding of it. He was afterwards buried in this new abbey. There is a document extant, proving that in 1216 he made over a large amount of land to the monastery of Beaulieu in Roannois. [This document is given at length by M. de la Mure at p. 501, and is the *only authentic document* (says the editor of the book in a foot-note) on which he rests his conjectures concerning Melusine's family.] 3. Odo or Eudes, but who ought to have been called Hugues, who inherited the domain of Lusignan. 4. Amery, or Amaulry, called Urien in the romance, who succeeded Guy as king of Cyprus, from A.D. 1196—1210.

1275. Now *I* return, etc.; cf. l. 1277, *I* shall declare each.

1281. *to know where*, to know war; Fr. Aler veult scauoir de la *guerre*.

1291. *to wel find ther peple*, to well find their people; i. e. to pay them good hire. Fr. Et pour bien sauldoier leur gent.

1295. *teise*, draw, tend.

P. 51, l. 1299. *Famagouce*; such is the true reading, the town being the modern Famagousta. The Fr. text has "famagosse." Compare

"And sall fayr to *Famagost* for-lyes [= ferlyes, i. e. wonders] to seke,
And saill furth be *Cipres* as the buk tellis."

[1] De la Mure; p. 493. Surely this date is wrong, and should be an earlier one.

Miscellaneous Poems, in *Lancelot du Lak;* ed. by Mr. J. Stevenson, 1839; p. 151 (reprinted in Bernardus, etc., ed. Lumby, 1870, p. 29).

1313. Urien's men were seen taking up their quarters in the sultan's tents, and dislodging the sultan's men.

1315. *regid;* read *rengid*, ranged. The Fr. text has *Rngies*, a mistake for *Rengies.*

1319. *Armed was with*, was armed *by.*

P. 52, l. 1335. *garison*, healing; none would undertake to heal him.

> Le Roy dun dart envelymee,
> Qui bien fut forgie et lyme,
> Fut tellement feru a point
> Quen lui de garison na point.

1338. *The*, MS. Thy; Fr. text, *Les* Cypriens.

1340. *thowne*, town; so *whent* for *went*, l. 1413; *where* for *were* = war, l. 1281; *then* for *ten*, l. 3477. In these words, the *th* represents a strongly aspirated *t*, not the *th* in *thing* or *this.*

1345. *enforced*, augmented; Fr. text, *enforcies*, from *enforcier*, to augment.

P. 53, l. 1375. *myght*, MS. *nyght.* The sense is, so that there might never be recovery (for that man). Fr. text, Oncques homme ne le pouoit guerir.

1378. *perceiued;* this in the MS. looks like *perteined;* but the French has, quant Vriens lappercoit. Cf. note to l. 548.

1386. *dedes Army*, deeds of arms; "Tant fist darmes ce Vriens."

P. 54, l. 1394. *Ther by*, MS. *Therby;* French, *Par* Guyon et par Vriens.

1396. *thought long*, thought to abide (?). Cf. A.S. *lengian*, to dwell. French text, Vriens es trefz se loga. That he did not wish to remain there long is shown by l. 1399. But probably we should read "log," i. e. loge = lodge; cf. *hug* for *huge.*

1414. *Moche went Cipryan*, many a Cyprian went.

P. 55, l. 1424. Who, O lord God, who (could withstand him)? Not a giant, at any time.

1442. *know*, known.

P. 56, l. 1454. Whereby (you) shall not lose.

1462. *send*, sent.

1468. Whom, as I best could, (I) have warded and defended.

P. 57, l. 1483. The general sense is, She cannot sustain such fierce conflicts of arms, nor the sharp showers (of arrows).

> Femme ne peut les fiers estours
> Darmes porter, ne les durs tours.

1500. *hir*, here; spelt in next line *here.* French text, "*or* orez, Vriens, *or* me pardonnez."

P. 58, l. 1517. If (I) saw (there) were any respite of death in you.

1523. *reised god*, elevated the host. Fr. leuoit dieu.

1526. *yild*, he yielded.

1533. *loke*, locked up; Fr. De dueil fut son cueur enserray.

P. 59, l. 1545. *Tho*, those who; Fr. A ceulx, qui se meslerent du fait.

1546. *wyll*, well; spelt *wel* two lines below.

1548. *A kinges dede*, Fr. au fait du Roy.

1555. The words scrawled in the margin in a later hand have been written near the edge of the page, and the letters in brackets cut away by the binder; these marginal notes are, of course, of little value.

1566. *Colcis*, Colchis.

1572. *medee auise*, Medea's advice. The words are run together in the MS.

P. 60, l. 1578. *ille*, island; should rather have been spelt *ile* as in l. 1570.

1579. Compare

> Il en y est advenu mille,
> Mille voire par mille fois,
> Tant au plain comme aux destrois.

1586. The Fr. text has merely "de la contree" where the English has "maree," which I guess to mean land by the sea-shore, from the O.F. *maree* (Godefroy). "The porte yaffe," i. e. Jaffa, is not represented in the French copy. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 277, where we read—"Geffray assawted Iaphe, and toke it by force."

1595. The insertion of *ne* is essential to the metre and the syntax; Fr. Quil nalast. Even thus, the metre still lacks a syllable.

1599. *full know*, well known, illustrious.

1601. The marginal note in the MS. should state that the "king of hermyne" was "vnkull to vriens wif." M. de la Mure remarks (pp. 509, 524) that Urien, whose real name was Amaulry, was a younger son of Melusine, and obtained the kingdom of Cyprus by succeeding his elder brother Guy; that his first wife's name was Cive or Eschive d'Isbelin or d'Iblin, daughter of Baudouin, Count of Rama in Palestine; and that, instead of his wife's uncle being king of Armenia, it was his (Urien's) daughter who was married to Leo I., first king of Armenia, created king in A.D. 1197 by Henry VI. (or V.), emperor of the East. By *hermyne* is meant Armenia, the Fr. text having *armenye*.

P. 61, l. 1614. *hermyns*, Armenians; Fr. *armyniens*.

1630. MS. *occorded*, but Fr. Chascun saccorda. See l. 1633.

1633. *Guye after send*, Guy (was) sent after. Fr. Guy fut mande.

P. 62, l. 1641. *wilfull*, willing.

1648. It had before been two brothers (that were kings).

1652. Compare

> Et en leur temps forment ayderent
> A ceulx qui sont deulx descendu,
> (Ainsi comme Iay entendu),
> Et ceulx de Rodes, se saichies,
> Ont guerroye Iusques en leurs marchees.

1663. *noyours*, annoyers; Fr. Et leurs nuysans suppediterent.

P. 63, l. 1670. *Sept psabulmes*, seven psalms; but the Fr. has "les *quinze* psalmes."

1696. *Brehain*; the prose romance has *Behayne* (see *Melusine*, p. 214), and there is little doubt but that *Bohemia* is meant, and Tieck accordingly writes *Böhmen*. Sometimes the term is restricted to a city, and it then means Prague, as in l. 1951.

P. 64, l. 1700. Fr. text, le Roy dausay, and Roquefort says this means *Alsace*; Tieck, too, has *Elsass*. In *Melusine*, p. 187, it appears as *Aussay*, an error for *Aussay*.

1704. For *hurt*, which is in the MS., read *hurd*, heard.

> Car chascun deulx sauoir vouloit
> Pourquoy le Roy les guerreroit;
> Et cestoit pour vne pucelle.

1708. Fr. Fille du duc, mais orpheline. Thus *Orphelyne* means that

she was an orphan; her *name* was Christian, as told in l. 1827; and the prose romance calls her father Asselyn; *fol.* 105; cf. *Melusine*, p. 183.

1718. *A-ferrome*, from afar; Fr. de long.

1721, 2. *Army peple*, men-at-arms; "Custile" is given by Burguy as another form of Cousteau or Couteau, a knife. Compare

Voient grant foison de gens darmes,
A grans cousteaulx et grans guisarmes.

1723. The MS. reading "staste" should perhaps be "stafte;" i.e. they ranged themselves in lines, and put themselves in battle order; Fr. text, Lors se misdrent en ordonnance. *Staf* means a *line* in ll. 6555, 6581.

P. 65, l. 1735. Again the Lusignans cried out full fast.

De Rechief lusignen[s] escrient.

The MS. reading *cryng* is an evident blunder for *cryng*, the peculiar spelling of *crying* which the scribe or translator has generally adopted; thus, in l. 1761, he writes *reioed* for *reioyed*, *ioyng* for *ioying*, l. 1898; while in l. 1900 we have the very word *cryng*. In the text, I have written *crying* for clearness.

1740. *ech by thainself*, each by himself.

1754. *takyng*, taken; Fr. *prins* = modern Fr. *pris*.

P. 66, l. 1765. (They) presented the king to this fair creature.

1767. *shappe*, shaped.

1787. Afterwards commanding these brethren to come to her.

P. 67, l. 1799. *yevyng*, given; cf. *takyng* in l. 1754.

1802. *where*, were; cf. *whent* for *went*, l. 1413.

1808. The MS. *kew* is of course an error for *knew*; Fr. scauoient.

1815. *forigers*, foragers; MS. forigers; but Fr. text, fouriers.

P. 68, l. 1818. Compare

A lentree de Luxenbourg
Lieu ny auoit ne carrefourg
Dont len neust veu venir les gens
Au sons de ces doulx Instrumens.

The spelling *carfoukes* in l. 1819 gives the etymology of *Carfax* (also spelt *Carfox*). It answers to O.F. *carrefourgs*, L. *quadrifurcus*.

1841. *wace*, was; Fr. ausis *fut*.

P. 69, l. 1851. *at thys iournay*, to-day; Fr. au lourduy.

1877. *And had*, if (I) had.

P. 70, l. 1886. *With-that*, provided that.

1892. *demage*, damage; Fr. dommaige.

1900. *cryng*, crying; cf. note to l. 1735.

1901. *semble wyse* is equivalent to the *lyke wyse* of l. 1901.

1905. *sureté*, surety.

1907. *mow ye*, certainly a mistake for *myght I*; for the Fr. text has,

Et dit, barons, moult lies seroie,

where *lies* = Lat. *latus*.

1909. The first *to* = two.

P. 72, l. 1951. According to Tieck and the Volksbuch, Brehaigne means Prague in Bohemia, as before noted (at l. 1696). The prose romance mentions *Praghe* by name; *Melusine*, p. 215.

1961. *deing*. The MS. has either *deing* or *doing*; that *deing* is right is proved by the sense, and by the Fr. text, which has "mourront."

1967. He shall have my brother's (king of Brehaine's) daughter to wife. Compare

La fille mon faire[1] a moillier
Aura Regnault, car emploier
Ne la pourroit mon frere mieulx.

P. 73, l. 1971. After my brother, (he shall be) king of high degree. Fr. Roy sera.

1973. *hoir*, heir. Fr. hoir.

1981. *Auynsime;* the Fr. text has—Dedens quinze Iours, within this *fortnight*. Note that the metre requires a dissyllabic word only. It is clear (as has been suggested to me) that the scribe has actually written *A* for *q*. The right word is, of course, *quynsime*, i. e. fortnight, from O.F. *quinzisme*, a fortnight (Godefroy); mod. F. *quinzaine*.

P. 74, l. 2006. Sir Anthony is certainly the speaker, we must not read —"Sir Anthony," (he) said, etc. The French has—Anthonie lui dit, frere, alez.

2011. *done* is here the infinitive, generally spelt *don*.

2018. *this said duk*, viz. duke Anthony; cf. ll. 1997, 2003. Observe that the English version is quite wrong; for it states that "this said duke went towards Luxembourg," whereas it should state that "the king went towards Luxembourg *to meet* this said duke;" the Fr. text might easily be mistaken, as it runs,

En luxembourg, vers le duc, va.

P. 75, l. 2049. The spelling *wordle* seems intentional, in order to eke out ten syllables for the line. It is not uncommon.

2056. By comparing the various statements in *De la Mure* (pp. 494, 502, 518), it appears that the old shield of Lusignan was barry of ten pieces, argent and azure; over all a lion gules (not crowned); and the shield of modern Luxembourg is argent, a lion gules, crowned or. If then, as Christian in this line suggests, the bars of azure in the Lusignan shield be left out of the consideration, Anthony would bear the arms of Luxembourg very nearly, as then the whole field would be argent. But De la Mure points out that such a shield (viz. argent, a lion gules) really belonged to Cyprus, and that it should not be thus confounded with the Luxembourg shield, since in this latter the lion is *crowned*.

P. 76, l. 2066. *Baueres* and *Almayn*, Fr. *bauiere* et *alemaigne*, Bavaria and Germany.

2073. *Traquo*, Fr. text, Craquo; Cracow. The prose romance speaks of "Zelodyus, kyng of Craco;" see *Melusine*, p. 225.

2075. *Esclauons*, Slavonians. Fr. text, esclauons. In l. 2077, we read that he was lord and sire of that land also, viz. of Slavonia as well as Cracow.

2079. In the MS. "sc" is written so as to resemble "st;" thus "mourmish" resembles "starmish," and in l. 2075, just above, "Esclauons" resembles "Estlauons." This practice is common enough in old MSS.

2083. *Fedris*, the name of the king of Brehain, called in the Fr. text *Fedoiz*, but in the Volksbuch, *Friedrich*. The prose romance has "the kynge Federyke of behayne;" *Melusine*, p. 223.

P. 77, l. 2094. The Slavonians beat the men of Brehain, and chased them *to the end*, i. e. as far as they could, viz. back to the town again. Fr. Iusques au bourg.

2096. Compare Mais le bon duc de luxembourg
Tantost ostera le debat;
Le Roy lui huignon se combat

[1] Obviously error for *le*.

Aux faulx sarrasins de tous lez,
Qui ses gens ont moult Recuilliez.

2103, 4. Here and there he cast them down, fighting full manfully, cut down one man, and overturned another on to the ground. Fr. Lun detrenche, lautre mort Rue.

2113. *she*, viz. his soul; Fr. A dieu soit *elle* commandee.

2117. But (as for) the Saracens indeed, they followed close (after them), catching up those who fled.

P. 78, l. 2126. *noyng* = *noying*, annoyance.

2132. "They greatly dreaded the Saracens at that time, when they saw their king dead, who was formerly of great puissance; whereof the Saracens had then great joy, (because) there were (many) Christians who had been ended and finished (?)." But this last line is so forced and absurd, that it is far better to read "Tristing," and to interpret the line to mean—"trusting their war had been ended and done." In support of this, we may remark that the scribe has already written *Traquo* for *Craquo*, l. 2073. The line is not in the French.

P. 79, l. 2154. To preserve the right sense, the translator should have said—The *Sarisins* went out, thaim fast trussing—i. e. fast destroying (or driving back) the people of Brehain; the mistake evidently arose from a misconception of the Fr. text,

Brehaignons vont fort destruisant,

where *Brehaignons* is in the *accusative* case.

2159. *Als!* alas! Cf. l. 2166 below.

2161. *most*, I must.

2167. In what manner (of) form.

2171. *nere*, neither.

P. 80, l. 2208. This messenger is a *Saracen* scout, not the one mentioned in l. 2182.

2213. For see the many Christian people, fast coming.

P. 81, l. 2221. *not-For-þat*, nevertheless; Fr. non pourtant.

2223. The construction is obscure; Fr. text,

Et anthonie dautre contree
Venoit en bataille ordonnee.

2232. Two of them there hath Raynold cast down.

P. 82, l. 2246. Here again, as at l. 2073, the Fr. has Craquo.

2251. *grace*, grass; so also *wace* for *was*, l. 1841.

2252. *deth*, dead.

2253. *cried and grad.* Compare

Le Roye de Craquo crie & hue;

which supplies us with the origin of the phrase *hue and cry*.

P. 83, l. 2287. *An hye*, on high.

2290. In this line *A man* has a particular reference to the king of Alsace, as the meaning is—Thus should a man avenge himself on the Saracens, because the king of Cracow had in very truth in like manner caused his brother to be burnt to ashes; this refers to l. 2139.

P. 84, l. 2309. *your fadir Deth*, your father's death; the Fr. text has—la mort ton pere.

P. 85, l. 2342. *hold;* read *bold*, which ends l. 2281 in a similar sentence; for *hold* will not rime to *behold* in l. 2340. So too in l. 2406; and, in l. 4, *has* is written for *has*.

2357. *or* is the right reading; Fr. Vng Royaulme *ou* vng empire.

2359. *commanded*, commended

P. 86, l. 2380. *May* is the right reading; Fr. Qui esglentine espousera.

2381. For my part, I say to you.

P. 87, l. 2406. Cf. l. 2342.

2415. And all that belongeth to her you (shall have) to take (for your own).

2420. For your free kindness and courtesy, he shall defend, etc.

2422. Read "werre;" the meaning is—For he can *war* well; Fr. Car il scet assez de la *guerre*.

P. 88, l. 2428. The king prepared for his niece all such fine array as pertains to a queen.

2446. *wis*, read *vois;* Fr. Et dient tous a vne *voix*.

P. 89, l. 2464. *ortholegne;* the Fr. text has a different reading,

Regnault fist grant guerre en frise,
Oestellere de la conquist;
Danemarche par force acquist;

but this is hardly more intelligible. Cf. *Melusine*, p. 242.

2469. Was not on this side of the Romans; a proverbial expression which has occurred before, l. 266. And see l. 2483.

2471. *Speke me shall;* the *me* is adopted from a phrase in the preceding line of the Fr. text—Ie *me* tairay.

2483. As any man could on this side of the sea; Fr. de ca la mer; cf. l. 2469.

P. 90, l. 2487. Compare

Cellui deliura les des[t]rois
Dardayne, ou auoit moult *grant* bois,
Maint bon chastel fortiffia;
Yuay premier ediffia;
Sur meuze vng noble pont fist
De mesieres, et puis conquist
Plusieurs bon lieux par sa prouesse.

Here Dardayne = D'Ardennes, famous for its forest, and it is easy to see how this was changed into "dardane." In the next line, *knight* is of course wrong; read *brought*, which is used to mean a castle in ll. 1171, 1199. *Yuon* (= Fr. Yvay) is probably Givet, a town on the Meuse, lower down the river than *Mezieres*.

2495. *wered*, made war upon.

2496. *Faborugh:* probably *Friborugh* = Friburg in Switzerland (?). The Fr. text has *bribourg*, and the prose romance has Frebourgh; see *Melusine*, p. 350. *Aritrige* is mis-written for *Autrige* = Autriche or Austria; Fr. text, autriche.

P. 91, l. 2519. *of corage*, courageously.

2523. This line, as it stands, means—In warring, a strong warrior, well set. But it is a mistranslation; and should express that he carried on war bravely *in Guerrande;* for the Fr. text has—En *guerrande* fort guerreoya. Guerrande is mentioned at l. 2950, where the story of Geoffrey's combat with the giant is resumed; it is situated on the sea-coast near the mouth of the Loire.

2528. Compare

Jusqua la Rochelle Ilz prenoient
Sauuergarde, tant le craignoient.
Il prenoit a pastiz partout
Autant au millieu comme au boult.

According to Roquefort, *pastis* (from Lat. *pactio*) is a forced contribution

which men agree to pay an enemy; so that the giant, in fact, levied "black mail" on the inhabitants. The word *pateysed* answers to O.F. *patisser*, to pay a forced contribution; but is here used actively to signify "levied contributions from." Cf. "he shal neuer more *patyse* you;" *Melusine*, p. 304.

2533. This seems to imply that Geoffrey heard that the giant called him a man with a great tooth, but the line is merely parenthetical in the Fr. text;

Quant Gieffray la nouelle entend,
(Que len appelle au grant dent), etc.

P. 92, l. 2543. *Hym-selfenn the tenth*, i. e. He went *with nine others.* It is a French idiom; Luy dixiesme sen part de la.

2553. *malers*, Maillieres in the Fr. text, Malliers in German. It means Maillezais in Poitou; DE LA MURE; *Histoire*, p. 493. The prose romance has Maillezes, *fol.* 142; *Melusine*, p. 246.

P. 93, l. 2579. *monke;* MS. *moke* (!).

2583. *all my lifes fate*, i. e. all my life; Fr. Car la vueil Ie ma vie vser.

2585. in you (is) all the hold; i. e. all depends upon you; Fr. en vous tient.

2586. *herd*, hard.

2594. This clearly refers to the tonsure; cf. *Melusine*, p. 305.

P. 94, l. 2608. *A morn*, on the morrow; Fr. au matin.

2622. *Merkministre;* Fr. maire monstier.

2623. *Broughdieu;* Fr. bourg de dieu.

2630. Fr. A sainct martin, la grant eglise. "France had three (tutelar saints), who had each his sacred city; each, as it were, succeeded to, without dispossessing the other. St Martin of Tours was the older; St Remi, who baptized Clovis into the Catholic Church, had an especial claim on all of Frankish descent. But, as Paris rose above Tours and Rheims, so rose St Denys, by degrees, to be the leading saint of France." Dean Milman, *Hist. of Latin Christianity*, vol. vi., p. 244, 2nd ed. At p. 249 of the same work we read, "Tours and Poitiers quarrelled for the body of St Martin."

2632. And thereof (I will) cause deeds to be made.

P. 95, l. 2633. Compare

Ou de nostre dame de chartres;
Voire, se tu veulx de paris,
Ne soiez donc de Rien marris;
Car bien suis acointe du pape,
Il ny aura Riens qui meschappe;
Et puis apres serez euesque,
Ne demoura guerres apres que
Autre bonne eueschie auras,
Soit paris, beauuoir, ou arras.

2650. Fr. text, Et la pour nous dieu pryeras. The English is obscure.

P. 96, l. 2668. The word *in* seems redundant, as far as the sense is concerned.

2672. Compare—Ilz furent ars, vaille que vaille; *ars* means *burnt.*

2676. Compare

Mellusine fut a vouent,
Et mectoit ses Robes au vent,
Ou nouuellement fut venue,
Iamais elle ne sen fut tenue.

P. 97, l. 2700. *Thre;* Fr. *Trois.*

P. 98, l. 2744. Whose coming was the occasion of the feast; but the Fr. only says that the ladies came there on that occasion—

Et de dames tresgrant foison
Y vindrent pour celle achoyson.

P. 99, l. 2761. You are not so hardy as to enquire of your wife, either seriously or in jest, whither she goes.

2771. The right sense should be—And some others say that she goes on this day to Fairy-land; compare

Autres dient que en faerye
Va cellui Iour—saichies de voir,
Frere, mectes paine a sauoir.

2784. *There he faste knakked; knakked* (knocked) is the translators' blunder; it should mean, There he fast *hastened* where he had not been (before). The mistake is easily traced; Fr. text, *Se Rapa* ou oncques neust este.

P. 100, l. 2809. Here is an evident allusion to the coat of arms of Lusignan. The shield was "burelé d'argent et d'azur de dix pieces;" *De la Mure*, pp. 494, 502; cf. note to l. 2056. So too Melusine's tail was divided into stripes of *argent* and *azure*.

2812. *to sight gan purchas;* i. e. he had seen.

2817. *to Ende*, to the end that; Fr. affin que.

2818. *cloute*, a fragment of cloth; Fr. *drapelet;* in the next line, *melled* is the Fr. mesle (mêlé) smeared, lit. mixed; and *Alway* = altogether.

P. 101, l. 2843. Cursed be the hour that ever (you) came hither.

P. 102, l. 2857. There is a line omitted before this; compare

Et droit eust de ce courouchiers;
Destruit en fut et exillies,
Car, etc.

where *courouchiers* should perhaps be *courouchier;* so that the meaning should be, And (Raymond) was right to be angry at this; (the earl) was destroyed for it, and (his people) exiled.

2863. *To on his brother*, to one, viz. to his brother; Fr. A vng, sien frere.

2868. *lament*, lamented.

2872. *purer*, poorer, more wretched.

P. 103, l. 2880. Fr. Perdray ma pensee Ioyeuse; thus *pensif* = thoughtful, and is redundant.

2882. Fr. Miraige letter en vng *puis.*

2889. *led*, laid down.

2903. *In on estat*, in one position.

P. 104, l. 2928. *merely*, merrily.

P. 105, l. 2950. *Guernande;* read *Guerrande*, as in the French.

2960. *staf*, a mace; Fr. maclue.

2963. A complete mistranslation; it should be "which had cost many écus;" Fr. Qui couste auoit mainte escu. The mistake arose from the double meaning of escu, viz. 1. a shield; 2. a piece of money.

2965. Again wrong; it should mean, May God preserve him! he undertakes a great deed! Fr. Dieu le saulue, *grant* fait emprent.

2969. *stil you*, be silent; Fr. vous taisies.

P. 106, l. 2980. So long war hast had, or made.

2992. *full*, foul things, evil; unless it be an error for *ill*. The line means, Who sware by his gods that evil should come to him; the Fr. text however is slightly different—Les dieux Iura que mal y vint.

2993. He considered himself sorely disgraced, since a single man desired to war against him openly.

P. 107, l. 3016. The translator probably meant this line and the next to be said by Geoffrey; but we ought to alter *And* to *said;* for the Fr. has,

Chetif—*dit* guedon, etc.

3023. *foly, is no nay,* it is folly, there's no denying it; Fr. cest grant folye.

3025. *she,* i. e. his *life,* which is feminine in French (la vie).

3029. Fr. text, Mais le geant compte nen tient.

P. 108, l. 3032. *sett;* the nom. case to the verb is Geoffrey, who set him (a stroke) there in the breast.

3035. *to se* = in sight; an expletive phrase.

3037. The syntax is hereabouts very wild. The line means, Hast thou not given me such an offering? it shall be restored this moment; i. e. You have bestowed on me a fair blow, and it shall be now returned.

3039. This means—he was wrath that he had just been so cast down to the ground in that isle by a single stroke.

3043. This means—as Geoffrey kept turning about, never still, the giant (took) the steel falchion in hand, cutting the legs off Geoffrey's courser. The omission of the verb *took* is very awkward.

3054. This describes the effect of a *second* blow given by Geoffrey: the first nearly cut off the giant's left arm (his right was cut *quite* off soon afterwards), and the second smote him sorely on the haunch.

3055, 6. The sense is—the giant thought he must make the fight a mortal one.

3058. *thereof gaf;* imitated from the French;

Son flael prent et met en la place,
Au gieffroy sur le heaulme en donne.

P. 109, l. 3064. *fleing;* Fr. text, voler.

3065. The MS. actually has *leggys;* but the Fr. tells us that—Vng de ses marteaulx guedon prent. Cf. "hamers;" *Melusine,* p. 303.

3067. Compare

Du coup Ruer moult sesuertue (*sic*)
De gieffroy actaint la machue;
Il la luy fist voler des mains.

3071. *To Gaffray noght had,* Geoffrey had nothing; this use of *had* is an imitation of the French idiom *y auoit.*

3074. *genyng,* given.

3078. Whether arm, staffe, or axe, (they all) fell down right nigh him. It was his *right* arm, says the prose romance (p. 303).

3080. The last word in the line is most obscurely written. The Fr. merely says—Quant vie vng de ses bras perdu. *Bede* does not seem right. The word "grad" (see l. 2253) would fit in better.

3082. *of new,* lately; it often means anew, again; but the giant had still one arm left to raise his sword with.

3084. But (Geoffrey) avoided the stroke.

3089. Compare

Lui a donne vng tel merel,
Et vne si trespiande offerende,
Heaulme na qui ne pourfende.

P. 110, l. 3093. *hys horne sarasin,* his Saracen horn; this well exemplifies the variation between the English text and the Cambridge French

copy; for the *latter* is here *wrong;* it says, Puis prent son *corps* sarasinois; but *corps* must be an error for O.F. *cor*, a horn.

3103. *geaunt*, giant's.

3104. You moved war (i. e. fought) against this man, and thought in your mind to vanquish him, and have now discomfited this enemy.

3111. *I shold* = I ought; i. e. it was my duty to; Fr. deuoie.

P. 111, l. 3124. Whereby (he) had then manfully ended the war.

3140. *wace*, was; as also in l. 1841.

3147. Alas! (he) wrought the letters (at an) ill hour.

P. 112, l. 3163. *Norbelande;* Fr. text, Northombellande.

3172. The word *on* is necessary; Fr. Il maine a tout le pays guerre.

P. 113, l. 3194. Fr. text, Pour lamour de chrestiennete. The next line is not in the French at all.

3213. The word *goste* seems introduced for the sake of the rime, to the prejudice of the sense; the French is,

Dair fut vermeil comme sangs,
De fin dueil quil auoit au corps.

P. 114, l. 3218. *tho ill*, those evil men; *thys*, thus.

3229. "The date of the ravaging of the abbey of Mailleres by Geoffray with the Great Tooth was 1232;" note to *Melusine*, p. 383.

3230. *messengers*, should be *messenger;* so in l. 3235, *Thai* should be *he*, etc.; for there was only one messenger; cf. l. 3346.

P. 115, l. 3256. *balled;* a mistranslation, which looks like guesswork; for the Fr. has *palle*, i. e. pale.

3263. *full*, foully, evilly; *mal le pensastes.*

P. 116, l. 3292. *Thaken*, for *Taken;* so too in l. 3477, *Than* for *Tan*. Cf. note to l. 1340.

P. 117, l. 3339. *semyng in corage*, as it seems to my thoughts; Fr. text, "Dieu le pere, ce mest daduis."

P. 118, l. 3358. *conduit*, conducted; Fr. *conduisoit.*

3365. The Fr. line corresponding to this is,

En peu deure moult lolugs alerent.

Way's note, in his edition of the *Promptorium Parvulorum*, to the word *kennynge* is so entirely to the point that I give it here. "Will. Worcester uses the term *kenning* to denote a distance at sea, pp. 179, 313; and it appears from Leland that 20 miles was accounted as a kenning, probably, as the extreme distance within ordinary sight. 'Scylley is a kennyng, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste pointe of Cornewaulle.' *Itin.* iii., f. 6. See also f. 13." Many readers will probably recall the lines in Keat's Sonnet "On first looking into Chapman's Homer,"

"Then felt I like some watcher of the skies
When a new planet swims into his *ken.*"

P. 119, ll. 3381–3392. These lines are parenthetic, being added by the writer to prepare us for the coming *denouement* of the story.

P. 120, l. 3399. *bered*, buried; *of hys*, of him; altered for the sake of the rime. We still say that body of his.

3417. *blissed with right hand*, crossed himself; Fr. si se signa.

3423. *Is it this?* is it thus? Fr. Est il ainsi?

P. 122, l. 3476. *wronged*, read *wrong*. Fr. text, "Nay pas tort se Ie me tourmente."

3484. Fr. text, "Et, pour la larme de vaudosme." It seems to be a sort of proverbial oath. *Vaudosme* seems to be a place-name, the modern

Vendôme, not far from Orleans. The words "hys fair" seem to have no meaning, and to be merely expletive.

P. 124, l. 3551. *scroched*, sic in MS. But see l. 3678.

P. 125, l. 3556. *sery*, we should expect *say*, to rime with *Gaffray;* yet *sery* may be = Lat. *sero*, in the sense of *say*, *utter*, or *speak*, which it sometimes bears.

3575. *Trowing* means *as I trow;* Fr. "Bien quinze fois, *se croy Ie*, ou vint."

3584. Fr. "Mal vey ton gracieux demaine."

P. 127, l. 3617. This line seems imperfect. The line in the MS. ends with "disceiue," in which the e has been smudged nearly out again. The Fr. has,

"Se mon corps a toy demouroit,
Tu ta perceuras bien briefment
De ton maluais parlurement;
Se verite meussies tenue,
[Fol. 82 b.] Jusques ala mort me eussies eue,
Et par moy eussies eu secours," etc.

3640. *seueralte* can only mean *separation;* yet the precise opposite is meant; "Plus ny sera *ensemble* tenue."

P. 128, l. 3652. She draws the three barons aside, to tell Raymond *and them* her *special* injunction about Horrible; hence her speaking in an undertone, and her addressing Raymond as before.

P. 129, l. 3689. The Fr. has

Qui de tous eulx estoit le maistre,
Sil en fut cause, bien en peut estre;

meaning, I suppose, that *if* the abbot were at the bottom of all, it was not to be wondered at.

P. 130, l. 3711. This story of Melusine's re-appearance before melancholy events is always carefully insisted on wherever the legend is told. Her first manifestation of herself was just before Raymond's death, as told further on, ll. 5182—5194. According to the prose romance (fol. 218) she was seen by an English captain, one Sersuel, just before he lost the castle to the duke of Berry; and she was also seen several times by one "godart," and moreover by one "yuon of walles," and *by many others*. See *Melusine*, pp. 369. 370.

P. 132. l. 3802. How the earl of Forest met with his death will be duly told hereafter. See p. 170.

P. 133, l. 3809. This eulogy of the lords of Parthenay is carefully enlarged upon at the close of the poem, for obvious reasons.

P. 139, l. 4011. *Rather or later*, Sooner or later. This is a peculiarly good instance of the use of *rather*, it being so well brought out by *later* following.

4015. The Fr. text has,

Elle fait mon cuer espartir,
En Remectant comme la cire
fait le geant feu en larmes frire."
Ainsi se tourmente Raymont.

She divides my heart, re-kindling it as the giant fire fries wax into tears. Thus Raymond torments himself." The translator has quite missed this.

P. 140, l. 4048. "Whether I lie or no, God on high knows." Such asseverations occur often.

P. 141, l. 4055. *norbelande;* why this spelling occurs is not clear; for

the Fr. text has "northombelande," and the prose romance "Northomberland." Tieck writes it *Norhemen.*

P. 142, l. 4101. That the French copy from which the translator took the poem had slightly different readings from the Cambridge copy is of course likely enough. Already, more instances of deviation have been pointed out than can be accounted for by a supposition of errors in translation. The mention of the "marbre stone" on which the giant sat is a crucial instance; for the Cambridge copy reads,

La guide voyt sur vng Rochier
Le geant assis sur vng *arbere;*

whereas, when we turn to Tieck's German version, the word "Marmorstein" re-appears; so that there was doubtless a special mention of *marble* in that French copy which the translator used.

4106. He had no dread or fear at all, for he thought he need not mistrust God that he had been misled.

P. 144, l. 4149. The re-appearance of the word "werly" in this line, as indicated in the foot-note, is of course due to its having been copied in from the line above. It is clearly superfluous.

P. 145, l. 4181. The Fr. has, De leaige de six ou sept ans.

P. 147, l. 4240. We ought rather to read "And yut, so I *shall*;" Fr. text, Et si feray Ie; mais dy moy, etc.

P. 148, l. 4278. It wanted but little that he had not been destroyed.

P. 149, l. 4311. The reading "Aid" is supported by the Fr. text;

So la ne luy donnent aye
Magot, Apolin, Teruagant.

P. 150, l. 4319. The reading "conquered" is amply supported by l. 3942, which runs, Wich that ceason conquered was and gett.

4336. The cold knife-blade entirely passing through (his thigh-armour).

P. 152, l. 4384. According to the prose romance, the name of this mountain of "Northomberland" was called "Brombelyoys," and the story of "Elynas, kyng of Albany," is told at much greater length and at the beginning of the romance, which is its right place. There we find that Presine was the king's *second* wife, and that the breaking of his oath was due to his listening to the suggestions of Nathas, his son by his former wife; with many other additions. See *Melusine*, pp. 9—16.

P. 153, l. 4407. *With thes doughters thre he closed,* he was enclosed by his three daughters. Fr. text, Car ses trois filles lenclouirent.

4426. Grimold was either the fifth, sixth, or seventh of them, and he hath been the last.

P. 156. l. 4495. *She*, i. e. the chamber. The translator doubtless employed *she* because the Fr. text has *Elle:* just below (l. 4499) he uses *it.*

4508. Fr. Ils portent moult *grant* medecines.

P. 158, l. 4549. *maried;* perhaps the translator meant *married*, but the proper meaning here is *vexed*, Fr. marrye. The French here arranges a few lines in a different order, but the extract given exactly fits in in place of fol. 88. The translator claims to have made his translation nearly *line by line*, and here 57 French lines answer to 56 English ones. As we are sure of the exact number of lines lost, we are able to continue the right numbering of the lines by just missing 56.

P. 159, l. 4607. More about lady Melior and the Sparrow-hawk castle will be found further on. See p. 186.

P. 160, l. 4621. *Palatine*, elsewhere spelt *Palestine*, had her name

assigned with evident reference to the acquirement by Guy of Lusignan of the title of king of Jerusalem; see l. 4634.

4625. *coinqs;* this is spelt in several other ways, as may be seen in the Index of Names. The Fr. text has (elsewhere) "courgo;" and the prose romance, "Guygo." The story of Palestine's treasure is given more at length further on. See p. 196.

P. 162, l. 4687. This means that the giant perceived Geoffrey, and perceived that he was doomed. Geoffrey does not perceive *him* till l. 4691.

4694. The mis-spelling *dorn* is probably due to the word *Anon* following it.

P. 164, l. 4735. Fr. text, De son papier estes plainez.

P. 167, l. 4827. *waloping*, galloping. It is curious that this word occurs in the prose romance also, at fol. 169, back; "whan the saudan was departed fro the batayll, he waloped tyl he cam̃ to [the] sarasyns oost." See *Melusine*, pp. 21, 130, 288.

P. 171, l. 4964. The prose romance calls the pope *Benedictus;* but, strangely enough, there is neither a Benedict nor a Leo among the popes of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The reference is probably to Gregory IX (1227—1241); see note to *Melusine*, p. 385.

P. 173, l. 5007. *Ayglon*, called Chastaillon in the Camb. Fr. text.

5010. The allusion is to l. 3807.

P. 175, l. 5085. In all the marches he ruled over, whether it was wrong or right.

P. 180, l. 5218. *lefte* is of course the reading. Fr. text,

De ses pechies Riens ne laissa.

P. 183, ll. 5326, 7. There is only one Fr. line answering to these two, but it supports the reading "drad." It runs, "Sarrasin neust qui le craingne."

P. 184, l. 5329. *Hys lewyng*, during his lifetime; Fr. Son viuant.

5357. Fr. text, Du pierregort en angleterre.

P. 185, l. 5359. *cambrere;* Fr. text, En arragon, ceulx de cambiere.

5370. This story found its way into *Mandeville's Travels*, ch. xiii. (ed. Halliwell, p. 145).

P. 186, l. 5414. The prose romance says, (*fol.* 7 *b*) whoever "wil goo watche there the day before the euen and theuen also of saint Iohan baptiste, whiche is on the xx (23rd?) day of Iung," may achieve the aventure. It was thus in the "most cheffest time of somertide," (l. 5522) not near midwinter, when we commemorate the *Evangelist*. The eve of St John was an appropriate time for the adventure. In Thorpe's *Northern Mythology* (vol. iii. p. 140) we read that "treasures burn especially on St John's night, and those who *know how* can then raise them."

P. 189, l. 5503. Fr. text,

Ainsi la chambre painte estoit
Dun pie de mur Iusques au toit,
Qui deuisoit les nascions
Et les estranges Regions,
Du furent telz hommes vaillans
Qui point ne furent sommeillans, etc.;

where "deuisoit" means *described*, not "deuided."

P. 193, l. 5619. This line should mean, Since you do not keep to that which is your own; Fr. Mais puisque ne ten veulx tenir.

P. 194, l. 5645. Fr. text,

Arriue est a dure feste,
Car point ne voit qui le loppine,
Mais maint coup eust sur son eschine.

Thus the Fr. verb *loppiner*, (*lit.* to cut into pieces, hence to beat severely), has been twisted into "his *opinion*"!

5653. For remarks on "anointed" in the depraved sense of beaten, see *Notes and Quer.* 3rd S. IX. 359, 422; reprinted in *A Student's Pastime*, p. 4. The Fr. text has *oingt.*

P. 195, l. 5672. *Crius;* not mentioned in Camb. Fr. text.

5683. Fr. text, Mais la moitie pis gouuerna.

5684. De la Mure devotes his last chapter to the kings of Armenia, giving the list as follows. Leo I (reigned 1197), Constant, Haiton, Leo II, Theodore, Leo III, Hugues, John, Leo IV, Leo V, Leo VI. This makes Leo I the hero of the Sparrow-hawk adventure, Constant the king mentioned in l. 5682, and the rest the "nine heirs." The name of the last king agrees with the prophecy in l. 5628, and De la Mure tells us (p. 526) so much of his history as confirms the account in the next stanza; "il se réfugia en France auprès du Roi Charles VI, l'an 1385. Et ayant disposé de ses droits au Royaume d'Arménie, en faveur de la Maison de Chypre, comme il a été vu ci-devant, il mourut à Paris, l'an 1393, le 29e novembre. Il y fut inhumé en l'église des Célestines, ou on voit sa representation," etc. I may add that La Coudrette insinuates that he saw the funeral himself—"Ou moult de gens *Ie vey* ensemble"—a line omitted in the translation. Cf. note to *Melusine*, p. 385.

P. 196, l. 5718, *treteth*, read *tretyng;* where-*yng* marks the infinitive.

P. 200, l. 5823. Fr. text,

Vng homme trouua en sa voye,
Qui Iusques au mont le conuoie;

which shows that "be" should be "he," and suggests that l. 5824 should run thus,

Which to this montain *he* gan *hym* conuay,

where "he" means *high*, as elsewhere. For this mountain is generally called the *high* mountain; see ll. 4625, 4631, 5725.

P. 201, l. 5854. *Brandes* should no doubt be *Brandest;* Fr. text, Brandist.

P. 205, l. 5972. Fr. text,

Qui fut Iadis clerc de mellin,
Et pres dillecques demouroit;

whence it is clear that *mellin* (translated Merlyn!) is the *name of a place*, probably Molina near the Sierra Molina in the extreme S. of Arragon.

5981. Fr. text,

Ce devin estoit nay despenge,
Et fut a lescole a tolette, etc.;

so that "of good cognicion" should have been *born in Spain;* and "Tholouse certain" really represents *Toledo.*

P. 208, l. 6061. Fr. text,

Helas, Il eust eu le tresoir,
Et conquis, seust vesqu encoir,
Et terre de promission,
Qui tant est saincte Region.

P. 209, l. 6105. Fr. text,

La gist, la est la tombe mise,
Ie lay veue de mes deulx yeulx.

P. 211, l. 6162. Fr. text, Elle court plus fort qune flesse.

P. 212, l. 6175. Who is meant by this "one William" is not at first sight obvious, there being no archbishop of Bourdeaux of that name at this time, though Bourdeaux would be the see in which was Parthenay. Nor was the archbishop of Paris, nor of Tours, so named at this time. However, the mystery is solved when we find that the translator is at fault. The person referred to is no "archbishop," but one who bore the surname *Archevesque*. In *La Grande Encyclopédie* we find the following entry:—"*Archevêque*, ou *Larchevesque*, surnom pris au xi^e^ siècle par la famille des seigneurs de Parthenay." De la Mure refers to Guillaume l'Archevesque; *Hist. des Ducs du Bourbon*, Paris, 1897; vol. i. p. 476.

6182. A curious mistake about the date has here crept into the text; the year should be 1401. For the Fr. text has, "En lan mil *vnq* et quatrecens; and this fulfils the conditions; for, in 1401, the 17th of May was not only a Tuesday, but the *Tuesday before Pentecost*. The false date, 1407, is easily accounted for; for it so happens that in that year too the 17th of May was on a Tuesday, but it was the Tuesday *after* Pentecost, which makes all the difference.

P. 213, l. 6206. Fr. text,

Fut faicte la translacion
En lan et Incarnacion
Du chief du gracieux corps;
Car Il estoit Ia pieca mors.

6211. The romance appears to be wrong. St Louis died Aug. 25, 1270; and Fabyan (ed. Ellis, p. 409) says that he was also translated on the *same day of the year* in 1295.

P. 214, l. 6266. The reigning king was Charles VI.

P. 219, l. 6423. Both here and below the Fr. text spells the name "coudrette."

P. 220, l. 6433. The Camb. copy of the Fr. text ends with the line, Adoncques se taira coudrette; the litany being missing, though part of the page is left blank.

P. 223, l. 6546. The translator, being deserted at this point by Coudrette, gives us an original epilogue, wherein he considerably falls off, and, towards the end, seems almost to give it up.

P. 224, l. 6553, repeated from Prologue, l. 15.

6577. This boast is hardly borne out by the facts.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[The French words inserted between marks of parenthesis after the word to be glossed are the corresponding words in the French text. Thus "Aduertise (*aduiser*)" means that *aduiser* is the word which the translator has rendered by *aduertise;* but it is not meant that *aduiser* occurs in *all* the passages where *aduertise* does, only that they are found to correspond once *at least.* In very many instances, the French word greatly explains the English one, which is the reason for giving it. The following abbreviations have been used:—Pr. Parv. = Promptorium Parvulorum; Bur. = Burguy, Glossaire de la langue d'oïl; Cotg. = Cotgrave's French Dictionary; Roq. = Roquefort's Glossaire; Jam. = Jamieson's Scottish Dictionary. Ch. appended to a word means that it is used by Chaucer. Other abbreviations, as A.S. for Anglo-Saxon, O.N. for Old Norse, O.Fr. for Old French, etc., will be readily understood. The letter *p* before a number refers to the Prologue. The books referred to in italics—as *K. Horn*—are books published by the E. E. T. S.]

A, he, 5400.

A, on, 752, 805; A day, on a day, at times, 752.

Abake, to putte (*Recuillier*), to put aside, decline, 3110; to defeat, 2094, 2100.

Abakwarde, backwards, 5888.

Abasshed, amazed, astounded, 2052, 2346, 2849, 4806; afraid, 2635. Roq. *eshahir.* "Abaschyd or aferde. *Territus.*" Pr. Parv.

Aby, pay for (it), 4679. Ch.

Acause, because, 2913, 3611.

Acceptiff, acceptable, pleasing, 3285.

Accounte, to count, number, 4892. "Here to *account,*" etc. Spenser, F. Q. iii. 6. 30.

Acquitail, acquittal, 4764.

Aday, in the day, at various times, often, 4252.

Adieu commaunde, I commend you to God, 3849.

Adquire, acquire, *p.* 99.

Adrad, afraid, 588.

Aduertise (*aduiser*), to pay heed to, 477; to notice, perceive, 2847.

Aferrom, 629, 3375; Aferrome, 4488, } afar off, at a distance. Cf. A.S. *feorran.*

Affiaunce, trust, 3177.

Affray, disturbance, 2854. Ch.

Affy, to be affianced to, 6052.

Aforn, 136, 347, 353, 4435, 4891, 4995, Aforne, 56, 4440, "Aforne (afore), *Ante, coram.*" Pr. Parv. } before.

Afray, terror, 140. Ch.

Again, 2534, Agayne, 251, } against.

Agast, were afraid, 4806. "Agaste, supra in a-ferde." Pr. Parv.

A-hy, on high, 1210. *See* Anhy.

Alabastre, 4515, Alebastre, 5039, } alabaster.

A-land, on land, 4836.

Alfaste, very quickly, 3252.

Alienyng, alienating, 6128.
All-oute, fully, entirely, completely, 2320, 4463, 5922. It occurs also in *Lancelot of the Laik.*
Al-oute, the same as the above, 866.
All-ther-first, first of all, 2490. So too Alðer best, best of all, *Gen. and Ex.* Cf. Du. *allereerst.*
Als, also, 3440, 4163, 5089. Ch.
Als! alas! 2159, 2166. Fr. text, *las*, which see in Roq.
Amended, 4544, } grew stronger,
Amendid, 4035, } grew up.
Ameruelled, astonished, 405.
Amidward, in the middle, 4291.
Amorn, in the morning, on the morrow, 5519.
An, written for And, 4957.
Ancelle, handmaid, 6456. Lat. *ancilla.*
And, if, 5384, 5446, 6809.
An-hy, on high, 2704, 2966, 3145, etc.
Anoynted, used jocularly of a good beating, 5653. So the Fr. text, *bien oingt.*
Antecessour, ancestor, 6359.
Antecessoures, predecessors, 4786.
A-per-se, superexcellent, lit. A by itself, 1148.
Apertly, openly, *p.* 30, 331. *Piers Pl.*
Aplace, in her place, before all, 932.
Aplas, in the place, in men's presence, 522. Cf. Gower, C. A. ii. 152. *See* note.
Aply, to ply, bend, 4187.
Apparaill (*la pareille*), the like of it (?). Apparently copied from the Fr. text; 742.
Apparailled (*apparaillie*), adorned, 927.
Appareill, to deck, adorn, 5236.
Appetite, desire, wish, 2621; desire, love, 2896.
Apply, to bend to, submit to, 5313. *See* Aply.
Arew, arrow, 6162.
Argent (*argent*), silver money, 1119.
Armes, coats-of-arms, painted shields, 5481; a coat-of-arms (*sing.*), 5494.
Army dedes, deeds of arms, gallant acts, 1738, 4134, 5745; dedes Army, 1386, 1489.
Army peple (*gens darmes*), men completely armed, 2215.
Armyly (*tout arme*), completely armed, used as an adv., 5418.
Arson (*archon*), saddle-bow, 2961. Fr. *arçon.*
Asaid, *pt. s.* said, 450.
Askes, ashes, 3412.
Assemble, encounter, 1728.
Assembled (*assemblerent*), encountered, 1328, 1725.
Assoled, prob. error for assoiled, *i. e.* absolved, 5224.
Astabled (*establist*), established, 5281.
Astat, estate, condition, 393, 1257. *All. Poems.*
Astoned, stunned, benumbed, 4289.
Astronemie, 6, } astrology.
Astronemye, 187, } So in *Lancelot*, l. 432.
Astronomian, a man learned in astronomy and astrology, 12.
At end, at last, 4683, 5244.
Athirt, athwart, 169.
A-this-side, 266, }
A-thys-side, 2469, } on this side.
Athissid, 3472, }
Athissid Rome, on this side of Rome, a proverbial phrase for *anywhere.*
Ato, a-two, in twain, 3087, 5857.
Attamed, contaminated, 466.

—"that a queene . . .
In any wise should be *attamed.*"
Chaucer's Dream, 1128.

"Athamyd, as a wessel wyth drynke. *Attaminatus.*"—Pr. Parv.

Attende, await, wait for, 1422; expect, 1425, 1465.
Aualed (*avalle*), let down, lowered, 3001, 4479. Ch.
Auaunce you, proceed, 2377.
Auaunce, 5566. *See* To-auaunce.
Auaunsing himselfe, proceeding on his way, 5655.
Auaunt (*moy vanter*), to boast, *p.* 161. Ch.
Auenture, ill fortune, 391; good fortune, 416.
Auentures, adventures, *p.* 102.
Auise, *sb.* counsel, 5269.
Auise, *vb.* pay heed to, 2014; perceive, espy, 4687; consider, 5451.

Anise hym, let him take heed, 5382.
Anised, he perceived, 4448.
Anisse, good counsel, wisdom, 6486.
Auncion, old; most auncion = eldest, 1276; ancient, *p.* 22.
Auncionte, antiquity, 6357.
Aunter, to adventure oneself, *p.* 21. Ch.
Autentike, praiseworthy, exemplary, 6181. Cotg. gives under Authentique, "approved or allowed by authority."
Aunsine, a singular error for Quinsime, a period of fifteen days, a fortnight, 1981. The Fr. text has *quinze Iours*. *See* the note.
Auysilye, advisedly, wisely, 538.
A-where, everywhere, 4245, 4952, 5352. A.S. *ǽhwǽr*.
Ay, ever, 3262, 3650, 4162. Ch.
Ay, each (?); in the phr. "other ay," 103. It seems to be put for "ayþer." "Ayþer oþer in armes con felde." *Gawain*, l. 841.
Aye, 2959; Ayen, 1735, again.
Ayne (*laisne*), eldest, 1695.

Bace, low, 621. *See* Bas.
Baculere, bachelor, a novice in arms or arts, 616, 1925, 4243, 5955. See *Bacheler* in Roq. [The MS. has in all four places the reading "hainlere," but it is hard to see how this can be right, even if we give to *i* the sound of *j*.]
Bakke, in the phr. with the bakke = backwards, where *with* = A.S. *wiþ*, 4709.
Balled, bald, 3256. Ch.
Bandone, disposal, 4767.
"For bothe wys folk and unwys
Were hoolly to *her baundon* brought."
Ch. Rom. of Rose, 1163; where the orig. has *a son bandon*.
Baptime, baptism, 1242.
Barge, a ship of large size, 1284, 5666. The Fr. text says it was so called because it was *si large*. Roq. says, "grande barque qui portoit trois voiles et un ancre."
Baronage (*baronnye*), an assembly of barons, 685, 5199.
Barony (*baronnye*), the same as Baronage, 853.
Barreres (*barriere*), barriers, bars, 4663. [MS. Barrore, but Pr. Parv. has *Barrere*, q. v.]
Bas, low; gen. in phr. "hie and bas," high and low, 4, 523, 927, 945, etc.; *adv.* downwards, 665. *See* Basse.
Base; in phr. base wise (*en bas*), in a low soft way, in a whisper, 2916.
Basly; more basly (*plus bas*), lower, 1216.
Basse, low, 6157. *See* Bas.
Bash, be amazed, wonder, 782. O.Fr. *esbahir*.
Basshed, amazed, 605, 2351, 2940.
Basterd, bastard wine, 979.
Bastiled (*basti*), fortified, furnished with defences, 1134. "Bastillè, fortifiè avec des tours et des créneaux." Roq.
Beforn, before, 1357, 4943, 5280. *See* Aforne.
Behest, promise, 273. Ch.
Behofull, behoveful, necessary, 3379, 4109.
Behold, *sb.* a look, glance, 3543.
Belay, belly, 4307, 4534.
Bement, bemoaned, 3320, 3883, 3907, etc.
Bered (*enseuely*), buried, 3399.
Berres, an error for Breres, briars, brush-wood, 3297. *See* Brere in Pr. Parv.
Besain, beseen, seemly, 858.
Beseying, busying, 3431.
Besinesse, industry, diligence, 2495.
Bete (*bastue*), adorned with *beaten* gold, 917. *See* Tyrwhitt, note to v. 981 of Cant. Tales.
Betan, the same as Bete, 4502.
Bethenke, think of, 3998.
Bette, 3034, Bett, 5526, } better. A.S. *bet*.
Better (*amere*), bitter, 2825.
Beuteuous, beauteous, 5077, 5192, 5441.
Bild, 1172, Billed, 3115, } built.
Bleeere, wound, hurt, 3572. Fr. *blessure*.

Blenched, 3085, } swerved aside,
Blent, 4628, } shrank aside.
See *Blench* in New Eng. Dict.

Blissed, blessed himself, crossed himself, 2813, 3417, 4807, 4754. The Fr. text generally has *se signa.*

Bliue, quickly, 5673. Rob. of Gloucest., l. 573.

Blode, in phr. of blode = by blood, *i. e.* by blood relationship, 4829.

Bode, *vb.* tarried, abode, waited, 2958, 4058. A.S. *bīdan.*

Bode, *sb.* abiding, tarrying, rest, 1937, 4466. Ch.

Bole (*toneau*), a large-sized bowl, 2988. Cf. "His *bolle* of a *galun.*" *K. Horn*, 1123.

Bolned (*enflez*), swollen, 1428. "Bolnyd, *Tumidus*," Pr. Parv. Sw. *bulna*, Dan. *bulne.*

Bonet, a small additional sail, 6407. "Bonet of a seyle, *Artemo, siraprum*," Pr. Parv. See *Morte Arthur*, l. 3657.

Boode, tarried, waited, 5414.

Bood, awaited (*vb. act.*), 5458.

Botme, bottom, 4480. A.S. *botm.*

Brace, embrace, seize, 1446. "*Bracer*, embrasser," Burguy.

Braid, Braide, Brayd, time, moment of time, 453, 486, 2828, etc. O.N. *bragð*, a rapid movement, a twinkling.

Braid (*braient*), cried out, lit. brayed, 2122. O.Fr. *braire.*

Brandes (*brandist*), brandishes, 5854. Unless it be an error for *brandest*, brandished.

Bred, breadth, 5647. *See* Chinesse.

Brede, breadth, 1180, 3008, 3101. Ch.

Brede, bread, 3661.

Breffes, letters, 2683. O.Fr. *bref.*

Brend, Brende, burnt, 229, 2667, 3412, etc.

Brenne, to burn, 3229. O.N. *brenna*, Ger. *brennen.*

Brennyng, burning, 5347.

Brennynglie, fervently, extremely, 69.

Bretherin, brethren, 3666, 5344.

Breueloker, in a briefer manner, 6582. Cf. Goodlokest.

Briddes, birds, 877, 1003, 5476. Ch.

Brigge (*pont*), bridge, 1222.

Brise, breaketh, 3748. Fr. *briser.*

Brought (*bourg*), town, 1171, 1199.

Bruled (*brulez*), burnt, 2289, 3313, 4855, 5246.

Bruschet, small twigs, brushwood, 3299. "Broce, menu bois;" Burguy. "Brossettes, small heath wherof headbrushes are made;" Cotg.

Bryghty, bright, 2149.

Burlid, striped; only in the phr. "burlid with siluer and Asure," 2809, 3492, 3870. "Burelle d'argent et d'azur; (We blaze it thus) he bears so many clossets argent and azure;" Cotg. [A *closset* or *closet* is a stripe or narrow bar.] Cf. the heraldic term Barruly.

Buschinentes (*bachines*), prob. an error for Baschinetes, basnets, light helmets, 2148. *See* Bassinet in Cotg.

Bustesly (*raydement*), boisterously, violently, fiercely, forcibly, 2262, 3257, 4174, 4271. *See* Boystows in Pr. Parv.

By-ment, bemoaned, 1346. *See* Bement.

Byrnde, burnt, 3408.

Caitife, wretch, 3318.

Calange, challenge, *i. e.* claim, 3725. "Calanger, as Chalanger." Cotg.

Can (*scet*), knows, *p.* 108.

Canoun, canon; right canoun = canon law, 8.

Carectes, characters, 6605.

Carfoukes (*carrefourq*), places where four roads meet, 1819. *See* Carthowse in Pr. Parv. [Carfax is the same word; hence, its etymology, from *carre fourys* (*quatuor furcæ*).]

Carfty, crafty, 5708.

Cassedony, chalcedony, 4510. "And suþþe riche cassedoines;" *Fl. and Blanch.* 286.

Coste, plannest, intendest, 3016.

Catell (*des biens*), chattels, goods, 457.

Catholike, 462, 3500.

Cautels (*cautelle*), trickery, cunning, attempt at overreaching, 5563. *See* Roq.

Caytif, 2166, } wretch.
Caytiff, 3016, }

Ceason, season, 4150, 5521.

Celest, celestial, 5449.

Celestif, celestial, 3288.

Cereatly, *p.* 18, 6554, } in due order.
Ceriatly, 1836, }
Lat. *seriatim*.

Cerched, searched, 4743.

Cerching, searching, 4656.

Certes, certainly, 3665, 4984.

Cesse, cease, 4043.

Chanon (*chanoine*), a canon, 644, 2626.

Chapitre-hous, chapter-house, 3249.

Charge, *vb.* to heed, reck, care, 3937.

Charge, *sb.* regard, care, 4124.

Chaufe, to chafe, warm, 224.

Chaufed, chafed, warmed, 4024; chafed, angry, 3258.

Chausing, chasing, 4911.

Chere (*chier*), dear, 2749.

Cherefull (*tres chier*), dear, 2585.

Cherished, *vb. neut.* grew up, 4035.

Cherisly, dearly, 5338.

Cherishly, dearly, 122.

Chermat (*chiere mate*), chap-fallen, 5882. *See* Char (3) and Mat in Burguy.

Chersh, to cherish, 6318.

Ches, chose, 326.

Chese, choose, 4965. Ch.

Cheue, achieve, 597.

Childed (*enfanta*), bare, 1157, 1193; borne, 4401.

Chine, chink, 4343. A.S. *cine*.

Chinesse, chine, back; Chinesse bred = back's breadth; *see* Brede. The Fr. has simply *leschine*; 5647.

Chirmed, made a loud noise, chirped loudly, 878. Cf. "*synnigra cyrm*, the uproar of sinners;" Cædmon, ed. Thorpe, 145, 17. "With *charm* of earliest birds;" Milton, P. L. iv., 642. *See* Forby.

Chirsly (*moult chier*), dearly, 23.

Clariners, clarion-players, trumpeters, 2221. "Claryowre or clarenere, *Litiren*." Pr. Parv.

Clarrè, a clear wine, 972. *See* Claret, in Pr. Parv.

Claustrall, living in a cloister, 2595. Cotg.

Claymed (*clamez*), proclaimed, called, 1675.

Clemmyng, climbing, 235.

Clergy, 2552, } knowledge, science.
Clerigie, 7, } O.Fr. *clergie*.

Clerke, a scholar, 2552.

Cliue, *pt. s.* clave, 1382.

Closed, enclosed, 5577; was enclosed, 4407. "Closyd, or closyd yn, *Inclusus*." Pr. Parv.

Cloute (*drapelet*), a small bit of cloth, 2818. "Clowte of cloth, *Scrutum*." Pr. Parv.

Cognicion, knowledge, 5981.

Collyng (*laccola*), taking round the neck, embracing, 2911.

Comeraunce (*freeur*), mental trouble, great fright, 4905. "Comerawnce. *Vexacio*." Pr. Parv.

Comerd, cumbered with grief, overwhelmed with chagrin, 4402. See *Combrer*, Bur.; and cf. Ger. *kummer*, grief.

Comerous, cumbrous, troublesome, 4066. "Comerovs, *Vexativus*." Pr. Parv. Also cumbersome, vast, 5773.

Comforth, *sb.* comfort, 3985; *vb.* to comfort, 3922.

Commaunde, commend, 3849, 4771; Commaunded, commended, 264, 5166, 5439; Commaundyng, commending, 3964.

Compernage, company, 1020, 3706.

Complesh, accomplish, 5212; Compleshed, accomplished, 3960.

Comynly, commonly, 3685.

Comynte, community, 4072. "Comownte, *communitas*." Pr. Parv.

Concellour, counsellor, 3860.

Conclude, include, 6553.

Conduce, *p.* 206, } to conduct.
Condute, 6465, }

Condute, *pt. s.* conducted, 3358.

Conforture, aid, assistance, a strengthening, 4149.

Confraternite, *p.* 39.

Coniectures, instructions, lessons, *p.* 100. Fr. text, Ilz firent comme bien *aprins*.

Conisaunce, 802, } knowledge.
Conysance, 404, }
Conne (*sauoir*), to know, *p.* 104.
Connynghede, skill, *p.* 5.
Conquere, to acquire, 1450, 3942, 4319.
Contred, encountered, met, 3346. It is followed by *again* = against; contred again = met.
Contring [followed by *again*,] encountering, meeting, 1640; [without *again*] encountering in a hostile manner, 3030.
Contrepane, counterpart, 6587. [The word here means lit. a *counterpart*, a sense which it has but very seldom; *see* "Pane, or parte of a thynge;" Pr. Parv. "Counterpaine, the counterpart of a deed;" Wright; Prov. Dict. The usual sense of Fr. *contrepan* is a gage, pledge.]
Contune, to continue to be, to remain, 2207, 2881.
Coppe, top, 5911. A.S. *copp.*
Corage, intent, *p.* 80; heart, mind, 355; thoughts, feelings, 1895, 2779; mind, will, 2012; of corage = in meaning, 530. See *Corage*, Roq.
Cordiall, prob. = by heart, *p.* 10; unless it is a mere expletive.
Cornicles, chronicles, 1223.
Corporall, large of body, 4456.
Corsed, cursed, 4310.
Cost, side, quarter, direction, 605. O.Fr. *coste.*
Costile, a knife, dagger, 4334. *See* Custile.
Costile-yre, knife-iron, knife-blade, 4336.
Coude, knew, 9.
Couent, convent, 2659, 3254, 3266, 3321. O.Fr. *covent.*
Coursed (*mauldy*), cursed, 304. Cf. Corsed.
Conyne, contrivance, arrangement, manner, way, 5582. Ch. See *Couvine*, Roq.
Cowd, could, 4918; Cowde, knew, 14.
Coyly (*coyement*), quietly, secretly, 2184.
Cracching, scratching, clawing, 5892. "Clawyn or cracchyn." Pr. Parv.
Creat, created, *p.* 32.
Cressed, increased, grew, 5604; Cressith, increaseth, augmenteth, 4262.
Cross, sword-hilt, so named from its shape, 4711, 5904.
Crown, tonsure, 3224.
Crusedly, cursedly, 5246.
Crussing, cursing, 2851.
Cure, care, charge, 2617. O.Fr. *cure.* Roq.
Curtois, 703, } courteous.
Curtoys, 97, }
Custell, a dagger, 5853; Custiles (*cousteaulx*), daggers, large knives, 1722. Fr. *coutean*, O.Fr. *coustel, coltel*, Lat. *cultellus.*

Dampned (*dampne*), damned, 283, 307, 3335.
Damycel, damsel, 936.
Dan = Lat. *dominus*, a title often given to monks, 3259, 3272. Ch.
Dangerous, sparing, niggardly, 1812. Ch.
Debonair, 6525, } courteous,
Debonaire, 28, 828, } gracious,
Debonayr, *p.* 91, } gentle. Ch.
Deboner, 5147, }
Debonerly, courteously, 895.
Debonerte, affability, sweet and gentle demeanour, 3888. *Débonnaireté*, Cotg.
Dede, deed, 4364.
Dede, dead, 263, 297, etc.
Dede-cold, cold in death, 292, 453.
Defautes, defects, failings, *p.* 74.
Deing, dying, 5946.
Deleful, doleful, 3293.
Deliuerly, quickly, 2859, 4138. Ch.
Demage, damage, 1892, 2316, 3035.
Demain (*demaine*), service, use; [lit. property, domain], 5164. See *demaigne*, Roq.
Deme, to judge, 3600. Ch.
Demenyng (*demaine*), conduct, demeanour, 3584. See *demainer*, Roq.
Deminute, diminished, 5680.
Demurly, softly; demurly in audience, too softly to be well heard, 788. Fr. text, *tout bas.*

Departson, departure, 104, 1079, 3362, 5024, 5260, etc.

Depeynted, painted, 5503. Ch. has *depeint*.

Derain, action, 4643. O.Fr. *deraisne*, "action de prouver, de soutenir son droit;" Godefroy.

Deray (*desroy*), foolishness, lit. disorderly conduct, 4524. O.Fr. *desroy, desrei*.

Desherite, disinherited, 1046.

Determine, to come to an end, 5596, 5974, 6135.

Deuer, duty, 6218. Ch.

Deuin, to recount; to deuin, so to speak, *p.* 108, 3660. See *deviner*, Bur.

Deuise, *sb.* agreement, manner agreed on, 505; direction, appointment, 2385.

Deuise, *vb.* in the phr. to deuise = to relate, to recount, 479, 728, 983, 2846, 3744, 5603. [A mere expletive phrase, always at the end of a line, and introduced for the sake of the rime.]

Deuoir, 941, } duty. Fr. *devoir*.
Deuor, 5304, }

Diabolike, diabolic, 3499.

Diffame, dispraise, infamy, 2763, 2835, 3392.

Diffamed, of ill fame, infamous, 3475.

Diffaute, fault, sin, 2875, 3316, 4869; without diffaute = without fail, 3025; Diffautes, defects, 6600, 6611.

Diffence, prohibition, 4393. Ch.

Diffended, forbade, 4392. Ch.

Diffy, to defy, 4193.

Diffynid, deceased, 4007.

Dight, to bring about, cause, 3444; decked, arrayed, 4023; prepared, ready, 5421. A.S. *dihtan*.

Digne, worthy, *p.* 107.

Disancred, weighed anchor, 3360.

Discended, dismounted from horseback, 4891.

Discesse, decease, 3638.

Discomfight, to discomfit, subdue, 2535, 2970, 3233, 4087; discomfited, 2526.

Discomfite, 3121, } discomfited, sub-
Descomfite, 3129, } dued.

Disherite, disinherited, 5554; despoiled, ruined, 2662, 5234.

Disma[i]lled (*desmaillies*), deprived of its mail, hacked about, rent, 4357.

Disnature, unnatural conduct, 376.

Disordinatly, foolishly, lit. disorderly, 3560, 3670.

Disording (*desordonnee*), unruly, unbridled, loose in behaviour, 2768.

Dispend, spend, 41.

Displesance, sorrow, 3741.

Dispoilled, undressed; Desp. hym, undressed himself, 2888: Desp. hir, undressed herself, 2908.

Distayn, deprive, 509. Ch. [Lit. to deprive of colour, cause to fade.]

Distrained (*destrains*), afflicted, vexed, 614. Ch.

Distroed, destroyed, 4673, 4790.

Distrussand (*destruiant*), destroying, 4082.

Dole (*dueil, douleur*), grief, 657, 3206, 3669, 3763, 3969.

Dolent (*dolent*), mournful, sorry, 514, 3395.

Dongun, 1130, } donjon tower,
Dongon, 4766, } tower, dungeon.
Donion, 2983, } See *Donjon* in Burguy.

Doubtance (*doubtance*), dread, 2130.

Doubte, *sb.* fear, 2541; *vb.* are in fear, fear the worst, 1336. O.Fr. *doubter*.

Doubted, feared, 1209, 1218, 1369, 2814, etc.; ryght doubted (*redoubtee*), much feared or respected, 829.

Doubty, doughty, 1636, 4821, 6281. [A false spelling.]

Doubtyng, fearing, 4819.

Doucet (*doulx*), sweet, 877, 972, 1008, 3898.

Doughter, daughter, 5389.

Doughteth (*doubte*), feareth, 117.

Doute, *vb.* to fear, 2318; *sb.* fear, 4383. *See* Doubte.

Drad, [miswritten *drue*] dreaded, 5326. Ch.

Dresse, (1) *vb. act.* to direct, guide, 2604, 4190; *vb. refl.* go, 2195; vs dresse, direct ourselves to, *i. e.* go to, attain to, 6538; *vb. neut.*

to go, 325, 5957. (2) to succeed in getting, 2179.
Dressed, erected, lifted, 4798; see *dresser* in Burguy. Also, arrived, come, 1444, 2063.
Dubte, to doubt, fear, 459.
Dured (*durerent*), lasted, 992; Durith, lasteth, 6136. Ch.
Dreuyng, driving, hurrying, 1727, 2064. Cf. *Morte Arthure*, l. 761.
Drust, durst, 1101.
Dyght, to appoint for himself, 5408.

Ebrew, Hebrew, *p.* 198.
Edefy, build up, 4009; Edified, built, 1684, 2490.
Egal, Egall, like, equal; *p.* 182, 951, 2353.
Egally, *adj.* like, equal, 1165.
Egge, edge, 5932.
Ellyswhere, elsewhere, 4774.
Emprise, reputation, worth, renown, 2013. [This is the right sense in *Lancelot*, ll. 129, 269, 3458, though Burguy, Jam., Roq., and Cotg. give no other sense than *enterprise*.]
Enbras, surround, lit. embrace, 395, 3304.
Enbrasing, embracing, 2911, 3771.
Enbrauded, embroidered, 1310. Cotg. gives "*brodé*, imbroyded."
Encheson (*achoison*), occasion, reason, 558, 2744, 5286. O.Fr. *achoise* or *encheison*, Lat. *occasio*. Ch.
Endly, having an end, final, 4011.
Enduryng, during, 4629.
Endys, ends, 2531.
Enfaimling (*affamee*), starving, succumbing to hunger, 1300.
Enfeffed, intrusted, 2617. O.Fr. *fiefer*, to give in sief; *see* Burguy, s. v. *fieu*.
Engendrure, parentage, 6345, 6388.
En-gree, in good part, 3819. Fr. *en grè*.
Engine, skill, 5046; craft, contrivance, 4244, 4392, 5613, 5708. Lat. *ingenium*.
Enhaused, raised, elevated, 6255. O.Fr. *enhalcer*, *enhaucier*.
Enheritour, heir, 5013, 5357.
Enlesing, lose (*inf. mood*), 5625.
Enmeddis, amidst, 4223, 5823; Enmyddes, amidst, 870, 933, 1841, 3085, 3097, 4894, etc.
Enpreising, praising, 1671.
Enpreynted, imprinted, impressed, *p.* 10.
Ensemble, together, 2474, 3996.
Ensuffering, suffering, 4627.
Entend (*actendez*), heed, 2746.
Entendement, endeavour, *p.* 81, *p.* 84. Ch.
Entent, intention, will, wish, *p.* 18, *p.* 82, *p.* 155; thoughts, 3300, 3394. Ch.
Ententifly, attentively, 5459.
Entercommaunding (*sentre-commanderent*), mutually commending, 103.
Entere, inter, 4941; Entered (*enterray*), interred, 1534, 3401, 3628.
Entermet, to have dealings with, 215. [O.Fr. *entremetre*, but this gen. has the sense of undertake, attempt, like Entremete below.]
Enteruel, 591, } time; lit.
Enteruall, 1095, 2455, } interval.
Entreloued, loved mutually, 3734; Entrelouing, loving mutually, 6352.
Entremete (*entremectre*), to undertake, to take care to do, 3657.
Entrepreignant (*entrepreinnant*), enterprising, 2504, 5073, 5355.
Entreproched, approached each other, 2225.
Entresembling, encounter, 1730.
Entreual, 45, } time. *See*
Entreuall, 5165, } Enteruel.
Enuiron, *prep.* round about, 570; *adv.* round about, round and round, 877, 2905, 4800, 5520. Fr. *environ*. Ch.
Enuironee, *adv.* round about, 5480; *prep.* round about, 3874.
Enuyron, *adv.* round, 4447.
Equipollent (*lequipolent*), equivalent, to the same effect, 530
Erbigage, lodging, tent, 1017. O.Fr. *erbegier*, Roq.
Ert, (thou) art, 4256, 5573.
Escarmish (*lescarmuce*), skirmish, 2210.
Eschange, change, 3727. Ch.

Eschawfe, warm, 969. O.Fr. *eschaufer.*

Eschew, flee from, avoid, 4074. Ch.

Escried, cried out, 2185. O.Fr. *escrier.*

Esglise, a church, 2630. O.Fr. *esglise.*

Espouse, bride, 931, 954, 1000.

Estat, rank, 794, 813; position, 2903; state, condition, 3496. Ch.

Etern, eternal, 6437. Ch.

Eueridell, every whit, entirely, 2800, 2920, 4253; Euerydele, 423; Euerydell, all over, entirely, 2800, 3755.

Exampleir (*lexemplaire*), a copy, *p.* 131; Exemplair, a model, a pattern, 6377. [Lat. *exemplar* has both the above meanings.]

Exort, exhortation, 3972.

Expresse, exactly, 3004.

Faccion (*facon*), fashion, make, 3100.

Fade, to dispose, arrange, *p.* 164. A.S. *fadian*, to set in order, dispose.

Fader, father, 683, 4642, 5118; Faider, 6274; Fayder, 5258.

Faders, father's, 4628.

Famylous, hungry, 6258. Lat. *famelicus*, O.Fr. *famillens.*

Fantain, fountain, 323, 765, 4161.

Fantesie, fancy, 358; a vain thing, *p.* 58. Ch.

Fantesied, fancied, imagined, *p.* 45.

Fantesy, 3485, Fantisie, *p.* 58, } fancy.

Fardell (*fardel*), a bundle, 573. Ch.

Fauchon (*faulx, branc*), a falchion, sword, 3042, 3044, 3051. Lat. *falx.*

Faut, to lack, 2175; Faute, 797; hence Fauteth = lacketh, 6379; Fautih, miswritten for fautith, lack, 1147; Fauted, failed, wanted, 4278; Fauting, lacking, *p.* 5. Cf. Sp. *faltar*, It. *fallare.*

Fayn, an error for Sayn, say, *p.* 184.

Fe; in the phr. in fe = under tribute, 2511; also in fe = in fief, in fee, 2630.

Feblesse, feebleness, 3740. Ch.

Feld, a field, 1702, 2216. Ch.

Fele, many, 2518, 2683. Mœso-G *filu.* Ch.

Fell, fierce, 1237, 4063, 4760, 5410, 5631.

Felonesly, cruelly, evilly, 270, 5785.

Felony, perfidy, treason, 2833. Roq.

Femine, feminine, 3820.

Fend, a fiend, 4075, 4141, 5783. Ch.

Fenestre, 3823, 4932, Fenistre, 3863, } a window. Lat. *fenestra.*

Fentise, cowardice, 4214.

Fersely, fiercely, 5870.

Ferrom, 629, etc. *See* A-ferrom.

Fers, fierce, 4655.

Fet, (1) fetched, 2782; (2) feats, acts, 6330.

Fiffe, five, 5265.

Fifte, fifth, 4426.

Fill, fell, 3046, 3088, 4286, 5894; befel, fell out, 446, 2731; Fille, fell, 5604.

Fin, 3645. *See* Fine (1).

Finabilly (*finablement*), finally, 5385 6493.

Finance (*finance*), ransom, 1853. Burguy.

Find, in the phr. wel find = to pay, recompense, 1291.

Fine, (1) extreme, very, 4175, 6155; see *Fin* in Burguy; (2) conclusion, end, 4011. Ch.

Flaelles (*fleaux*), flails, 2999. Lat. *flagellum.*

Floure-delise (*fleurs de liz*), fleurs-de-lis, 1006.

Fly, flew, fled away, 4905, 5652.

Foley, foolish, 3546.

Folily, foolishly, 5602. Ch.

Foltish, foolish, 3322, 5559. "Folett, *idem quod* Folte. *Fatuellus.*" Pr. Parv.

Folyly, foolishly, 3260.

Fonden, found, *p.* 173.

Fong, received, 2423; got, 1265; received, took in, 1333.

Fonge, to take, 4828. Ch. A.S. *fōn.*

Forcelet, should rather be spelt Forceret, a casket, 1081. *See* the note to the line. "Forceret, petil coffre, cassette." Roq. *See* note to "Foorcere" in Pr. Parv.

Forigers, foragers, 1815.

Formelet, should rather be spelt Fermelet, a brooch, a jewelled fastening, 1082. "*Fermal, fermail, fermeillet*, Agrafe, boucle, chaine, crochet, carcan." Roq.

Forshend, utterly destroyed, 3306. A.S. *for-* and *scendan*.

Forsmete (*detrenche*), smote down, 2104.

Fortake, kept prisoner, 5386.

For-takyng (*pourprins*), 5591. The Eng. word means a taking of prisoners, cf. Fortake; but the true meaning of *pourprins* is an enclosure, a domain. *See* Bur. and Roq.

Forth-progresse, journey, 3199, 5029.

For-why, wherefore, why, 3117.

Forwoxen, overgrown, huge, 2990. A.S. *forweaxan*.

Fouchesafe, vouchsafe, 2039.

Fouled (*afola*), killed, 4278. "*Afoler*, maltraiter, blesser, meurtrier, tuer." Bur.

Founte, 2650. The words "Raymounde" and "stounde" show that the word should be "founde." It should also prob. be joined to *in* preceding it; and we get in-founde = enter (sc. heaven), go in, go up, ascend. It is thus a compound of the O.E. *founde*, to go (*Morte Arthure*, 1228; *Lancelot*, 2612); A.S. *fundian*. Cf. A.S. *ingān*, to enter.

Fourge, to make, perform, *p.* 4, *p.* 25, *p.* 133; Fourged, made, constructed, *p.* 162, 257, 579; built, *p.* 134, 1682, 3853. O.Fr. *forgier*. Bur.

Fourging, construction, 1002.

Foyson (*foison*), plenty, 32. *See* Fuson, Fusion.

Franchise, freedom, 3745; territory (see Pr. Parv.), 4961; hertes franchise = to its heart's content, 5472.

Franchised, free, noble, lit. rendered a free man, 1487.

Franke, free, 1506.

Fransh, French, *p.* 198.

Fray, terror, 4901.

Frendlyhed, friendliness, 1403, 6448; of frendlyhede, for friendship's sake, 3022.

Frenshest, most Frenchlike, *p.* 175.

Frike (*frique*), lusty, delicate, 2803. "Fryke, or craske, or yn grete helthe. *Crassus.*" Pr. Parv. See *frique*, Roq.

Fro-thens, thence, 3294, 3326, 3449, etc.

Fro-whens, whence, 3762, 5830.

Full, in an evil hour, lit. foully, 3263; that full hym come = that evil had come to him, *or*, that he had come to him in an evil hour, 2992: Fr. text, *que mal y vint*.

Fume, smoke, 3957.

Fumy, smoky, 3954.

Funde, find, 4676.

Fundementes, foundations, 1121.

Fusion (*foison*), plenty, 128, 4362, 5466; a number, multitude, 2283; 2743. Lat. *fusio*.

Fuson, plenty, 985, 5287; number, 1113, 1721.

Fuste (*poing*), fist, 4301.

Fyn, faithful, sincere, 3831. "*Fine*, vraie, sincère, fidèle." Roq.

Garison, healing; take hym *in* garison = undertake to heal him, 1335. O.Fr. *garison*, from vb. *garir* = Mœso-G. *warjan*.

Gain, against, 2827, 3749, 3793.

Gane, did (*aux. vb.*), 5402.

Garnyson, stronghold, castle, 5467. *See* Garsone in Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has *en garnison* = by way of provisions, but the translator has not so taken it.]

Gayn, towards, 345, 564; against, 2791, 5863.

Geant, giant, 4676, 4687; Geaunt, 3233; Giaunt, 3197.

Gent, fair, pretty, 2441, 3490, 3590.

Gentile (*gente*), gentle, noble, 308; noble person, 643; pretty, 1611. The comp. is Gentelere, prettier, 1612; the sup. is Gentillest, prettiest, 342.

Gentilesse, graciousness, nobleness, 3175. Roq.

Gere, contrivance, plan; lit. gear, 276.

Gesian (*gesine*), child-bed, 4391,

4397, 4529, 5581. From O.Fr. *gesir*, Lat. *jacere*.

Gete, procure; gete do hym for to dy = procure his death, 3655. *See* Gett.

Gett, 3942, } gotten, obtained. In
Gette, 4319, } l. 5932 the sense is, whether (the stroke) was gotten with the back or the sword-edge.

Gidour, guide, 4105, 5833.

Gif, given, 5798.

Gisarmes (*pl.*), a weapon of which the shape is disputed, perhaps a battle-axe with a spike at the back. *See* Bur., Roq., and Way's note to Gyserne in Pr. Parv. 1722.

Gise, guise, manner, way, 5866. Ch.

Glad, 992. *See* the note.

Glente (*glissa*), glanced aside, 253. Ch. O.Fr. *glinser*, Roq.

Glinte (*clissa*), slipped, 4934.

Glode, glided, 726.

Goldish, golden, 1348.

Goddoughter, 3722.

Godmodere, godmother, 274.

Goodlokest, goodliest, fairest, 343. [In the *Piers. Pl.* MSS. are many such forms, as, Lightloker, Mystiloker, Sadloker, Slilokest, Wikkedlokest, Wisloker.]

Goste, spirit, 3213, 4927; creature, being, 4809; Gostes, spirits, *p.* 46.

Gouernail, behaviour, 844; arrangement, management, contrivance, 861, 5561, 5774: Gouernall, control, might, 6070.

Gouerneth hir, comports herself, 2765.

Grad, shouted, 2253. A.S. *grādan*.

Grame, grief, 2663, 3310, 4469, 4940. A.S. *grama*. Ch.

Gre, agreement, accord, 3951. Fr. *grè*.

Greabill, suitable to the occasion, devout, 5176.

Greabilly, satisfactorily, pleasantly, 1543.

Greable, agreeable to, 6580.

Gree. *See* En gree, 3819.

Gree, I agree, 5019.

Grees (*degres*), steps, 4917, 4908, 5434. Cf. *grissens* in Forby.

Greithed tham, got themselves ready, arrayed themselves, 1411; Greithed, made ready, 4168. Sc. *graith*. O.N. *greitha*.

Gret, greeted, 5524.

Gretth, an error, either for Greeth = agreeth, suiteth; or else for Goeth, 6561.

Grice, steps, 1427. *See* Grees.

Grint, ground, 3267.

Grinting, grinding, 2141. Ch.

Grohund (*liurier*), greyhound, 1389.

Groin, snout, 5875, 5877.

Grome, man, being, 2990. Cf. *Gawayn*, 1006.

Gud, good, 4952.

Gudfader, godfather, 274.

Guerdon, *sb.* a reward, 551; *vb.* to reward, 1876. O.H.G. *widerlôn*, changed in Low Lat. into *widerdonum*, whence It. *guiderdone*, O.Fr. *guerdon*.

Gyed, ruled, lit. guided, 2487.

Gynnyng, a beginning, 789, 3977.

Habilite (*habillete*), ability, dexterity, 2341, 3021, 6139.

Habill (*habille*), able, dexterous, mighty, 2355; Hable, active, 4536, 4639, 4876.

Habound, abound, 4429.

Had, was, 5065, 5326; was had = was, 5770, 5993; placed, set, 5492. Cf. Fr. *y avoir*.

Hamwarde, homeward, 3450.

Han = hath, 2699. [Prob. an error due to the pl. *sones* preceding. Fr. text, *a mis*.]

Hanche (*hance*), haunch, thigh, 3054, 4333; Hanches, thighs, 5643.

Hansell, an earnest, a gift (ironical), 4885. O.N. and Dan. *handsel*.

Hapne, to happen to do, to succeed in doing a thing, 5884; Hapned, happened on, lighted on, 5871. [Wrongly translated; the Fr. has *happer* = clutch, seize.]

Hardesse (*hardiesse*), hardihood, 5948.

Hattyd of, hated by, 5091.

Haunt, to use, *p.* 167; to exercise, prove, 2524; go, approach (Fr. text, *yroit*), 4396. O.Fr. *hanter*, Bur.

Hauour, possessions, riches, wealth, 3191, 3323, 4769. 5685. Fr. *avoir.*
Haused, raised, lifted up, 3083, 4265, 5883.
Hautain, loud, 2829, 3403, 3547, 4192, etc. Ch.
Hautanly, loudly, 2185; Hautaynly (*haultement*), loudly, 1906, 1977, 3317.
Hautyng, loud, 236. *See* Hautain.
Hawse, exaltation, 498. O.Fr. *halt*, Lat. *altus*, high.
He, high, 132, 4631, 6395.
Hed, heat, 3557. [l'rob. an error for *het* or *hete*, as in l. 2935.] Fr. text, *chault.*
Heder, hither, 152, 2843. A.S. *hider.*
Heder-to, hitherto, to this time, 4412.
Hend, gracious, courteous, 6144. See *All. Poems.*
Hent, to take in hand, undertake, 598; took, 129, 3909; Hent and went = took and went, 810; to have, 1837; receive, take, *p.* 157, 683, 2411, 5241; to procure, 5740; to hent = for one to take, 5808; hys sight hent = catch with his sight, perceive (Fr. text, *perceuoir*), 5493; arrived at, got to, 5272; received, had, 5009. A.S. *hentan*, to hunt for, catch. Ch.
Herber, garden, 6024. Ch.
Herbigage, lodging, 1790.
Herbiging, taking up their quarters, 1313.
Herbourgh, to harbour, shelter, 6523. O.N. *herbergja.*
Herd, hard, 2586, 4482; herd fast, 5645, where Fr. text has *dure feste* = hard *feast*, said ironically.
Herdly, shepherd-like, 5117.
Herite, heritage, acquisition; non herite = there is no acquiring anything, *p.* 203; inheritance, possession, 38. O.Fr. *herite*, from Lat. *hereditas.* Bur.
Hert, heart, 3206.
Hertly, heartily *p.* 73.
Hest, behest, command, 90, 907, 5313. Ch.
Hiduous, hideous, 5136.
Hiduou[s]nesse, horror, 3494.
Hiest, highest, 4925.
Hild, held, 4994.
Hire, to hear, 3877, 4763, 5055, 5529.
Hiring, hearing, 4202.
His, sign of gen. case, 4874.
Hit, it, 3109.
Hithe, height, 5045. Cf. *Heythe* in Pr. Parv.
Ho, who, *p.* 134, *p.* 136, 2368; which (of two), 4122, 4131; whoso, 5377.
Ho many, how many, 4042. [If so, *ho* should be *hou*, as elsewhere; but probably *many* is an error for *may*, as at l. 6572, and we should read "ho may" = who-ever may.]
Hodelnesse, secrecy, 2080; oblivion, 5961. *Hidellike* = secretly, occurs in *Gen. and Ex.*, l. 2882. Cf. Sc. *hode*, to hide; Jam.
Hoder, whither, 2764.
Hoir (*hoir*), an heir, 1973; Hoires, heirs, 508, 5323, 5554, 5684.
Hold, held as, considered as, 5204, 5338.
Hold, faithful, friendly, 2146. A.S. *hold.*
Holde, holding, possession, *p.* 34.
Hole, holy, 4963.
Honorous, 3251, } honourable.
Honourous, 3236, }
Hostage, temporary abode, 2475. See *hoste* in Bur.
Houith, behoveth, 3657.
Houred, lit. divided in hours, hence set, appointed; always in phr. houred braid, houred tyde (or the like), = set time, particular moment, 528, 2695.
Hout, out, 5652.
How-were-it, howbeit, 3207.
Hug, huge, 4940, 5959.
Hume (perhaps), low, deep, 2882. Cf. L. *humilis*, low; or perhaps for *humid.* [The Fr. text has merely, *en vng puis.*]
Hurd, 3564, 3765, } heard.
Hurde, 4783, 5258, }
Hurteling, knocking together, pushing, tussling, 4328, 4330. Fr. *heurter.*
Hy. *See* An-hy.
Hy, hasten, 2950. Ch.
Hyduous, hideous, terrible, 5770.

Hyer, in phr. more hyer = higher, 5435.
Hyre, hear, 3388, 4405.
Hys, sign of gen. case, 6007.

Iape, a jest, 2636, 5695. Ch.
Iawne (*Iausne*), yellow, 971.
Iesseron, coat of small mail, 4335. O.Fr. *jazeran*, Bur. Roq.
I-horsed, mounted on horseback, provided with horses, 886.
Ile, 1570, 3040, } isle, island.
Ille, 1578, }
Image, creature, 1508.
In, a shortened form of Inly, very, exceedingly, 5077, 5899, 6023.
Incongrew, *adv.* unfitly, wrongly, 4389.
Iniquite, misery, misfortune, 4156.
Inly (lit. inwardly), very, extremely, 27, 168, 3950, 4656, 5072, 5869. Ch.
Innepee, suddenly, on a sudden (?), 3823. Apparently contr. from Fr. *inopiné*.
I-now, enough, 165, 457, 781, 804, etc.
Instaunce, time, 1064, 2932, 3106.
Into (*en*), in, 875.
Ioint, an arrangement, lit. a juncture or joining together, 5019.
Iolyest, prettiest, 343.
Ionglyng, jangling, *i. e.* garrulity, 3751. "Iangelynge, *Garrulacio.*" Pr. Parv.
Iornay, lit. a day's work; hence trouble, labour, *p.* 141.
Iournay, a day, 1851, 4068; a set day, 58; hence a day's conflict, a fighting-bout, combat, 4123. Cf. the expression, "to gain *the day.*"
Ioustes, joustings, 988, 989. Ch.
Ioynant, adjoining, 4513.
Ioyned, enjoined, 5146.
Is, used as gen. case-ending, 28, 5750.
Iumelles (*iumelles*), *s. pl.* side-posts (of the gates); *or adj.* double, folding, 1182. Cotg. has *jumelles*, the side-cheeks of a presse.
Iuparde, a doubtful result, possible danger, 5458. Fr. *jeu parti*.
Iustice, *vb.* to rule, govern, 3807.
Iusticere, a dispenser of justice, 5308.
I-wisse, certainly, 4847. A.S. *gewis.* Ger. *gewiss.*

Kechins, kitchens, 881.
Kennyng, the extreme distance at sea to which the sight can reach, 3365. [This distance has been much over-rated, as thus—"Scylley is a *kennyng*, that is to say, about xx. miles from the very Westeste point of Cornewaulle;" Leland, Itin. iii. f. 6.—"thre *kennynges* ferre on the see, that is, one and twenty leghes ferre;" Prose *Romance of Melusine*, fol. 61, p. 104.]
Kepe, kept, 2931.
Keruyng, cutting, 5889.
Knakked, hurried (?), 2784. [The Fr. text has *Se Rapa* = he hastened. "Knock, to move briskly about;" Wright. But *see* the note.]
Knakking, knocking, 1733. Fr. text, *mailloient.*
Knewlich, 844, } knowledge.
Knowlich, 4121, }
Knowleching, knowledge, 2773.
Kynred, kindred, 213.

Labbyng, blabbing, 3751. Du. *labben.* Ch.
Lachesse, negligence, *p.* 11, 6574. O.Fr. *lachesse.* Ch.
Lad, led, 1251, 2754, 5800; led over, changed, 2938; conducted, governed, 5322.
Lade, passed through, endured, suffered, 3785; much as in the phr. to lead a life.
Lateis, lattice, grating, cage, 4747; Latise (*traille*), 4666.
Launcegay, a javelin, dart, 2108. Compounded of Fr. *lance*, and *zagaye*, a Moorish pike, Sp. *azagaya.* Ch.
Leche, a physician, 5143. Ch.
Led, laid down, 2889.
Lemys, limbs, 4237. A.S. *lim.*
Lenght, length, 5859.
Lepete, leapt, 3046. [An error for *lepte*; *see* l. 3070.]

Lere, to teach, *p.* 77. A.S. *lǣran.* Ch.
Lese, to lose, 506, 1454, 2892, 3642, etc. Ch.
Lesing, a lie, 6293. A.S. *lēasung.* Ch.
Lesing, losing, 5548.
Lesingmonger, a liar, 3604.
Lesingour, a liar, 5753.
Lesse, lose, 3542, 3752.
Lest, least, 69, 87.
Lete doo make, caused to be made, 5167; lete make, cause to be made, 691.
Lette, a hindrance, 5903. Ch.
Lette, prevented, hindered, 3047. A.S. *lǣtan.*
Leue, in the phr. parting-leue = leave taking, 5060.
Leuer, liefer, 3205. Ch.
Leuer (*leuier*), a lever, a huge mace, 4177, 4265.
Leuerey, delivery, 560.
Leuyng, hys = during his life, 5329; Leuing, life, 488.
Lifte, left (hand), 4496.
Ligging, lying, 4511, 4785. A.S. *licgan.* Ch.
Light, lieth, 453, 1023, 4523, 6105.
Linage, lineage, 1036, 4630, 4926, 5033.
Loge, tent, 985; Logge, lodging, abode, 5168; Logges (*logies*), tents, 2220.
Loke (*enserray, serre*), locked up, constrained, bound up, 1533; was locked, was bound up, 3774. Ch.
Lome, frequently, 119.
"The Lion lete cri, as hit was do,
For he hird *lome* to tell."
Pol. Songs; ed. Wright, p. 197.
A.S. *ge-lōme.*
Longing, belonging, 1939, 2671.
Longith hir, which belongs to her, 2415.
Loos (*los*), praise, *p.* 96, 1225, 4215, 5387. Ch. "Loos, or fame." Pr. Parv. *See* Lose.
Loote, lot, 3184.
Lored, taught, 3962. *See* Lere.
Lorn out fro wit, deprived of wit, 3885.
Losse (*perte*), loss, 3434, 3608.
Lose (*loz*), praise, *p.* 157. *See* Loos.
Louers, louvres (*see* note), 1175. "That no light leope yn at *lover* ne at *loupe.*" *Piers Plowman,* C. xxi. 288.
Lowpes, loop-holes, 1175.
Lust, listeth, wishes, desires, *p.* 31, 2994; pleases, vouchesafes, 286; please, 367, 689, 760; hym luste = it please him, 5379.
Lust, *sb.* will, pleasure, 328. A.S. *lust.* Ch.
Lyn, linen; or rather perhaps, flax. A.S. *līn,* flax.
Lynde, lime-trees; wodes lynde = lime-trees of the wood; 159. A.S. *lind,* pl. *linde* (Cædmon, p. 197, l. 4).
Lyuerey, delivery, 560.

Made, mad, 3559.
Mahyme (*mehengnie*), disgrace, blemish, 6356. See *mahain* in Bur. and Roq. Cf. It. *magagna,* E. *maim.*
Maillet, mallet, 4698, 4716. "Mal-yet, betyl." Pr. Parv.
Mainè, a suite, 1087, 1305.
Maistry, in the phr. to gret maistry = with great art; Fr. text, *par grant maistrie,* 4503; Maistrie, art, skill, 188.
Maker, poet, author, 6106.
Malerous, unfortunate, 6473.
Malice, *adj.* (*yrez*), angry, irate, 2780, 3039, 3446, 3537, etc.
Manhede, manhood, *p.* 92.
Manion, many a one, *p.* 170.
Manlyhed, manliness, 4352.
Manoir, mansion, 619.
Manson, abode, 5169.
Manyon, many a one, 634.
Marbre, marble, 4101.
Marches (*marches*), frontiers, and hence, lands, territory, 5085; frontier-lands, 5314.
Maree, land by the sea (?), 1586. The Fr. text has merely, *de la contre.* O.Fr. *maree,* "bord de la mer"; Godefroy.
Maried, vexed, 4549. [An error for Marred, q. v.]
Markois, a marquis, *p.* 115, 850; marquises, 6342.

Marred (*marriz*), vexed, afflicted, 2140, 3509, 3516. Roq.
Matrimonial, *sb.* a wedding, 952.
Mayne, or Maynee, a suite, a company of followers, household, 826, 2456, 4914, 5199. O.Fr. *maisnee.* Bur.
Me, one, people, used like the Fr. *on*, 6562; *K. Horn*, 366.
Meddes, the midst, 2531.
Meene, middling, 4061.
Meene, 4613, } mean, way.
Mene, 4983. }
Melled (*meslerent*), lit. meddled with; hence, had to do with, were busy about, 1545; (*mesle*), lit. mixed; hence, smeared, 2819.
Melling, an encounter, 1326.
Memoir, memorial, *p.* 151.
Menal, menial, 900.
Menusing, diminution, 6570. Cf. O.Fr. *menu*, minute.
Mercy, in phr. graunt mercy = many thanks, 5533.
Messe (*messe*), mass, 943, 953, 6095.
Methephisike, *p.* 80. [Ch.
Metrely, metrically, 6566.
Meue, move, 6557; Meued, moved, 3275; Meueth, moveth, 5564.
Middes, amidst, 5779.
Ministre (*monstier*), minster, 2596, 2621, 3693; Minstre, 3319, 4856.
Miscaunce, mischance, harm, 5642.
Miscreantes, misbelievers, pagans, *p.* 52.
Misded, misdeed, sin; hence, untruth, 5662.
Misdede, misdid, sinned, 4646.
Misfall, to have misfortune, be unlucky, 3614.
Mister, need, 5213, 5874, 6253. O.Fr. and Prov. *mester.* Roq.
Mistriste, mistrust, 4108.
Mo, more (with reference to number), 964, 3696. A.S. *mā.* Ch.
Moder, mother, 4850. Ch.; *adj.* mother, native, 6573.
Moisted, moistened, 3574.
Moisty, moist, 3953.
Moitees, halves, 5936.
Moitie (*moitie*), half, 734.
Mondiall (*mondain*), worldly, of this world, 18; earthly, human, 3915. Prov. *mondial.*
Montance, amount, quantity, number, 5229. Roq.
Morteis, to grant in mortmain, 6083; Mortesing, granting in mortmain, 5287. See *Amortir*, Cotg.
Most, 4987, } must. Ch.
Moste, 5291, }
Mouth, to speak, utter, 2852.
Mow, may, are able, 5446. Ch.
Muable, changeable, 814. Fr. *muable.*
Murmurhed, murmuring, complaint, 3603.
Musarde (*musart*), one who is bemused, a fool, 5537. Bur.
Muserde, as Musarde, 5559.
Muses, thoughts, musings, 3431, 6513.
Mustred, fully exhibited, shown, 3003. O.Fr. *mostrer.* Sp. and Port. *mostrar.*
Mynstracy, minstrelsy, 944; *Lancelot*, 2762.
Mynstre, a minster, 4987, 5247.

Natheles, nevertheless, *p.* 6, 5882.
Nauee, ship, 5673. See *Nave.* Roq.
Nawhere, nowhere, 4388, 4483.
Nay; in the phr. is no nay = it cannot be denied, 501, 3023, 3665. Ch.
Nehed, approached, 3005. A.S. *genēhwian*, Mœso-G. *nehwjan.*
Nere, never, 5702.
Nerre, nearer, 4111, 5826. A.S. *nēarra.*
Neuer-for-neuer, never at any time, 4906, 5139.
Noblehed, nobleness, 6339.
Nobles, renown, 21; splendour, 5474; Noblesse, grandeur, splendour, 5438, 5460; renown, 2658. See *Noblesce*, Roq.
Nobley, fine apparel, rich clothing, 2656.
Noght-for-that (*non pourtant*), nevertheless, 2815, 4077, 4222.
Noisaunce (*enui*), vexation, 1865, 1892; displeasure, 3538, 5535; grief, 3373, 3738, 3915, 5641. See Noysance.
Nombred, numbered, 3687.
Nome, *pt. pl.* took, 1403. Mœso-G. and A.S. *niman.*

Norish, nurse's, 3806; nurse, 3837; nurses, 4025.
Noriture, nurture, 3837.
Not-for-that, notwithstanding, 4703; nevertheless, 5883.
Nouell, novel, new, 5194, 5397; news, 2717, etc.
Nouels (*nouuelles*), news, 45, 4432, 4740; Nouelles, news, 1627, 1949, 2125, 2206, etc.
Noyed (*ennoyee*), vexed, annoyed, 242, 1866; was vexed, grieved, 623.
Noyng, sorrow, grief, 2126.
Noyours (*nuysans*), annoyers, foes, 1663.
Noysance (*ennuy*), discomfort, trouble, grief, 383, 401; annoyance, offence, 2512. *See* Noisaunce.

O, one, a, 3770, 3773. Ch.
Obliuy, 3798, 5416, } oblivion.
Oblyuy, 5137, 5141, }
Occision, slaughter, 5320, 5908.
Oder, other, 5108.
Of, off, 5825, 5889, etc.
Offeryng, dealing a blow, 3090.
Of-fors, perforce, 5487, 5804, 6405.
Of-new, newly, lately, 3082; anew, again, 3511, 6101.
On-lif, alive, 4204. *Gen. and Ex.*, 2417.
Ooste, host, 1313.
Ope, *adj.* open, 4907.
Or, ere, 4084.
Ordained (*fait ordonner*), made provision for, 2428.
Ordaynyng, set in order, draw up, 2222.
Ordinat, regular, *p.* 188. Lat. *ordinatus*. Ch.
Ordinaunce, appointment, due order, 63, 699.
Orgulous (*orguielleux*), proud, 2955, 4067; surly, furious, 5771.
Orgulously, proudly, 3543.
Orison, prayer, 4969, 5171, 6425.
Orpheline, an orphan, 1708. Fr. *orphelin*, fem. *orpheline*.
Os, as, 554, 2076, 3372, 6424. [It occurs in some of the *Piers Plowman* MSS.]
Osey, *i. e.* Alsace, the name of a wine, 982.
Other (*ou*), or, *p.* 198.
Ouermette, excessive, immense, 3101. A.S. *ofer-mǽte*, immensus. Grein.
Ouerthwart, perversely, hence excessively, 3171. Cf. Du. *overdwars*, athwart.
Ouise (*toit*), eaves, upper edge of the wall, 5504. A.S. *efese*, a margin, eaves. "Ovis, eaves." Barnes, Gloss. of Dorset Dialect.
Ourtorned, was overturned, 4713.
Outerly, utterly, 3683, 4050, 4291, 5203.
Outre, utter, speak, 1233, 1563, 2816, 3156, etc.; Outred, uttered, spoke, 1024, 1437.
Outring, uttering, saying, 2647, 3570.
Owe, to possess, own, have with one, 75; fiftene yeres gan owe = was fifteen years old, 4546. A.S. *āgan*.
Owyd (*auoit*), he had, possessed, held, 1298.

Paceyfed. *See* Pateysed.
Pagent, page, *p.* 79.
Pain, 721. *See* Pane.
Panche, paunch, 5773.
Pane, a stake, 724, the same as Pain in 721. *See* Pane in Pr. Parv.; "*Panne de bois* is particularly the piece of timber that sustains a gutter between the roofs of two fronts, or houses." Cotg. [In both places, *pale* would have been a better word, as the Fr. text has *pel.*]
Pane, lappet, flap, 5654. "*Pan*, the skirt of a gown, the pane of a hose, of a cloke." Cotg.
Pannes, pains, 1045. *Lancelot*, 1273.
Parage (*paraige*), parentage, birth, 475, 6007. Roq.
Parcas, perchance, 3690. *See* Percas.
Parcelly, partially, 4015.
Parde, par Dieu, 155, 3993.
Parfight, perfect, 3994.
Parfightnesse, perfection, *p.* 9.
Parlement, a parliament, 2363; talk, discourse, 2653.

Part here (*partis dycy*), depart hence, 2839; part to you here (*part toy dicy*), depart thou hence, 5636; Parted, departed, 2972, 5157.
Party, side, 228.
Passe, pace, 6068.
Passed, departed this life, deceased, 6182.
Passingly, surpassingly, very richly, 5299.
Pastay, a pasty, 5945. "Pasty, or pye." Pr. Parv.
Pastour (*pastour*), a shepherd, 5117.
Pateysed (*prenoit a pastiz*), laid under tribute, 2530. *See* the note. "*Pastis*, contribution dont on est convenu, accord, convention; *pactio*." Roq. "*Patisser*, payer l'impôt"; Godefroy.
Paulon, tent, pavilion, 911, 1001, 2010, 5416; Paulons, tents, 869, 876.
Paupires (*papier*), papers, 4735.
Pawme, palm of the hand, 4306.
Pay, pleasure, 824, 1034, 5542. Lat. *pacare*.
Payny (*payennie*), heathendom, Pagan lands, 1564.
Peled (*pilliez*), pillaged, 2169.
Pensell, pennon, streamer, 1720. O.Fr. *pennoncel*.
Pensifnesse, sorrow, 4982.
Penticost, 6182.
Percas, perhaps, 3521, 5637.
Perdè, par Dieu, 735.
Perdurable, everlasting, 6489.
Perdurabelly, 283, } Perdurabilly, 6496, } everlastingly.
Perdurabilite, 3595, } Perdurabilnesse, 6537, } everlastingness.
Pere, peer, equal, 3472. Ch.
Perfixst, fixed, 700.
Pering, appearing, 5944.
Perish, to cause to perish, impoverish, destroy, 3933.
Permanable, permanent, 6437.
Perrey (*pierrie*), jewelry, 4503. Ch.
Perron, a stone placed to help horsemen in mounting or dismounting, 4974. Gk. *petra*. Cf. It. *pietrone*. Bur.
Pertly, openly, straightway, 5474. Cf. Apertly.
Pesible, soft, gentle; in wise pesible = in an undertone, 3653.
Pesibilly, peacefully, 2427, 5198.
Petyvins, men of Poitou, 1362.
Pight (*tendus*), pitched, 869, 918, 5417; set, placed, 5034.
Pilour, pillar, 5035.
Pine, pain, sorrow, torment, grief, 2899, 3634, 3668; trouble, 6515. A.S. *pīn*.
Pipe (*tonneau*), a large barrel, properly a half-tun, 5773, 5926. "Pype, vessel, or halfe-tunne." Pr. Parv.
Pitty (*puis*), pit, 2882. [Cf. Moisty for Moist, Bryghty for Bryght.]
Plain, openly, 2994; at once, 2557. "*Plain*, clairement." Roq. "*De plain*, out of hand." Cotg.
Playnly (*a plain*), openly, 1567.
Plener, full, plentiful, 2751.
Plenerly, fully, 1931; plainly (Fr. *plaines pour voir*), 2047.
Plesaunce, pleasure, *p.* 3, *p.* 65, *p.* 166, *p.* 208, etc. Ch.
Plieth, bendeth, tendeth, *p.* 81.
Plite, condition, 2721, 2803; ending plite = final state, death, 5681.
Ply, to bend, 4188.
Porete, poverty, 3666.
Port, 1350, } Porte, 2680, 5420, } door, gate.
Port, Porte, burden, distress, 3819, 3925, 3987. Fr. *porter*.
Portraed, pourtrayed, 5478.
Poscede, possess, 2629.
Postell, apostle, 4963; Postelles, apostles, 6477.
Poyntement (*ce point*), point agreed on, agreement, 505.
Predestinat, predestined, 4379.
Preise (*preisse*), prize, value, 1518. O.Fr. *preiser*. Bur.
Prented, imprinted, 3859.
Present, at this present, 2865.
Presentens, present time, 1439. O.Fr. *tens*, time.
Presently, now, 2370, 2841; immediately, 4748.
President, precedent, original, *p.* 16.
Prest, Preste, quickly, readily, 1697, 2542, 2739, 4486, 5023, 5403. Fr. *prêt*; O.Fr. *prest*.
Preue, privy, secret, 3462.

Preue, prove, *p.* 92; Preuyd, proved, *p.* 170; approved, *p.* 174.
Preuyngly, with good proof, 2524.
Preynted, imprinted, impressed, 382. "Preentyñ, *Inprimo.*" Pr. Parv.
Preysingly, laudably, *p.* 96.
Prise (*pris*), high estimation, fame, *p.* 99; prize, 3895.
Procincte (*lenchainte*), neighbourhood, precincts, 737.
Proheim, *p.* 29, } proëm.
Prohemy, *p.* 76, }
Prologe, prologue, *p.* 76, *p.* 210.
Promission; in phr. land of promission = land of promise, Palestine, 4634, 5713, 5759, 6063.
Promittyng, promising, 5128.
Prossesse; in phr. within prossesse = in process of time, 5288.
Prys (*pris*), honour, fame, 5387.
Psabulmes, psalms, 1670. [*Read* Psaulmes.]
Pulcrious, fair, 1263. Lat. *pulcher.*
Punicion, punishment, 3671.
Purchas, to get, acquire, 1300; attain, reach, 546; attain to, have, 733, 1347, 1447, 2939; that it may purchace = that I may translate it, *p.* 70; to purchas = to be got, to be had, 266; purchas syghes, heave sighs, 194; made purchas = acquired, 2497; riuage gan purchas = arrived, 2734.
Purchassyng, means of recovery (for him), 1375; Fr. text, *Oncques homme ne le pouoit guerir.*
Purer, poorer, 2872.
Purueance, provision, 2376.
Purueyd, provided, 2378.
Pusance, power, skill, *p.* 187.
Pusant, 4438, } mighty.
Pusaunt, 212, }
Pusantly, mightily, 2466.

Quarell (*querelle*), suit, claim, demand, 5560. "*Querelle*, A sute, action, or process against," etc. Cotg.
Quented (*acointe*), acquainted, 2636.
Quicke, alive, 384; Quicke roche, live rock, 1125, 4352.
Quite-clayme, a quit-claim, free and full pardon, 1885. Fr. text, *Il est de nous quicte clamez.*

Rabbishly, hastily, speedily, 4690. "Rapyñ or hastyñ. *Festino.*" Pr. Parv. [Ravishing = rapid; Ch. Shak.]
Radde, read, 3203, 4651.
Raid, arrayed, drest, 1992, 4023. "Rayd, *ornatus.*" Pr. Parv.
Raid, in the phr. ill raid (*tres mal atourne*), = in an evil plight; lit. ill dressed, but Raymond was undressed already, 2915.
Raide, in the phr. foule raide = put into an evil plight, 3090. O.Fr. *arroier.*
Ramage (*Ramaige*), wild, uncultivated, 527.
Randon, impetuosity, 1727. O.Fr. *randon.*
Rase, to tear, rend, 5884, 5938. Fr. *raser.*
Rather, sooner, 4011.
Raundon, as Randon, 3048, 5866; haste, 707.
Ray, array, apparel, 846, 2429.
Rayd, (1) dressed, 2608; (2) read, 3186.
Raynes, the reins, 4325.
Rebaude (*ribaude*), a ribald fellow, a wretch, 2839, 4197.
Receit, retreat, place of shelter, 159. O.Fr. *recet*, Bur.
Rechaufed, warmed again, 4024.
Recluse, become a recluse, 4966.
Recomfort (*reconfort*), comfort, consolation, 412.
Recommend, entrust, 5208.
Recreant (*recreans*), defeated, utterly worsted, 4781, 5325.
Recreantly, disgracefully, 4436.
Redoute, *vb.* to fear, 2528; Redoubted, feared, 6168. Ch.
Redrese, to set upright again, raise up, 3571.
Redyfy, rebuild, 3700.
Refection, repast, 5468.
Refershing (*se Reffrechy*), refreshing, recruiting, 1305.
Regiat way, royal way, king's highway, principal road, 5255. [Fr. text, *le grant chemin.*]
Regned, reigned, 5314, 5321.

Reioy, rejoice, 755, 2719; Reioyed, rejoiced, 2228, 5042; Reioyng, rejoicing, 425.

Rekke (*rascellier*), a rack (for horses), 913.

Releued, lifted herself up again, 3789; Releued hym, lifted himself up again, 4226; Relcuing, lifting himself up again, 4704.

Remayn, in the phr. do it to remayn = cause it to be carried or conducted, 584. [Fr. text, *le ramenez;* and the Eng. word is an awkward copy of it.]

Remeue, remove, move away, 3191; Remew, remove, move away, 3069, 3943.

Remitte, restore, 5242.

Renay, deny, 2173, 4310. Fr. *renier.*

Rend, *v.* to surrender, render up, 6186.

Renged, drew up in ranks, set in array, 2224; Rengid, 1315.

Rentid (*renta*), endowed with rents, 5300.

Repair (*repaire*), fort, fastness, 1133; abode, 5168; to your repair you take = betake yourself to your usual abode, *i. e.* to Poitiers, 574.

Repref, reproof, dishonour, 371, 1255, 1258, 2322.

Repreued, reproved, 237.

Requeryng, praying, beseeching, 3174.

Require (*requiers*), pray, *p.* 204; beseech, entreat, 2579, 5612; ask for, 5383; Requiring, praying, beseeching, *p.* 61, 1616, 3352.

Resoned, talked to, 791.

Resplendising, shining brightly, 1196, 4512.

Rethoriously, rhetorically, with flourishes, 6611.

Retrair, retreat, 1001, 4707; return, 2824; withdrawal of a thing given, 5597; without retrair = without fail, 1622, 5149. "*Sans retraire* signifie sans appel, sans y manquer." Bur., vol. ii., p. 230.

Reuel, pleasantry, jesting, sport, 5193. "*Rewel*, . . . badinage, plaisanterie." Bur. Ch.

Rew; in phr. by rew = in order (lit. by row), 5211, 6500, 6554. Ch.

Rewarde, look about, consider, 1190, 2367, 5528; Rewarded, regarded, beheld, 291. O.Fr. *rewarder.* Roq.

Rewme (*royaulme*), 1467, 1505, 2412, 5552, etc.; Rewmes, kingdoms, 1647, 1662, 1669.

Richesse, riches, 5437. Ch.

Right (*droit*), law, 8.

Riuage, arrival; riuage gan purchas = arrived, 2734; Fr. text, *arriva.*

Riue, open in one's dealings, public, openly manifest, 3461. "Ryyf, or opynly knowe. *Manifestus, publicatus.*" Pr. Parv.

Riued, arrived, 1350, 6408.

Roche, rock, 4270, 4935, 5031.

Romans, romance, 6415, 6417, 6418, 6420.

Ron, run; ron in age = advanced in years, 5425.

Rought, recked, 5106.

Route, company, 3787. Ch.

Routhe, ruth, pity, 3684. Ch.

Row, rough, 1266. A.S. *rūh;* Ger. *roh.* Ch.

Rowted, snored, 5784. Ch.

Rudesse, violence, force, 4272. Fr. *rudesse.*

Rychesse, riches, 5283.

Ryn, run, 3252.

Ryn (*rain*), border, edge, esp. the edge of a wood (Godefroy), 879. Ger. *rain;* O.Fr. *rain.*

Ryued, arrived, 3248. *See* Riued.

Saad, said, 647.

Sad, *adj.* wise, mature, discreet, 1088, 4876; set, determined, 2079; fixed, marked out (?), 576; separate (?), 2272. *See* Halliwell.

Sad, *adv.* firmly, certainly, 874, 3274; determinedly, 2208; discreetly, quietly, 4104; firmly, fixedly, 3859; full sad = very certainly, 4459. [The word is often a mere expletive.]

Sagesse, wisdom, 6224.

Sagilly, sagely, 5315.

Said, an error for sad = discreet, 5788.

Sain, say, 1183, 2760, 2767, 2771, 5193. Ch.
Sain, seen, 729, 752, 2991, 3099.
Saluz, salutation, 347, 896, 901. O.Fr. *saluz*. Bur.
Samfayl, without fail, 2351. [Rather read *sanfail*. *See* Sanfaill.]
Sampler, *p.* 77, } original. Lat.
Samplere, 2947, } *exemplar*.
Sampnolence, somnolency, slumber, 4616.
Sanfaill, without fail, 1590.
Santred, mused, wondered, hesitated, 4653. Cf. Eng. *saunter*.
Satefied, satisfied, *i. e.* well rewarded, 1917; satisfied with presents, 5162.
Sauacion, salvation, 4970, 5155.
Saue; *ho s'aue*, whoso has, 6296.
Sautes, assaults, 2145. Ch.
Say, essay, attempt, 354.
Sayand, *s.* saying, 206.
Saying-again, gainsaying, 3242.
Sayn, 51, } seen.
Sayne, *p.* 186, }
Sayn, say, *p.* 184.
Scaberge, scabbard, 2790, 3047, 3060, 4722.
Scarmish, skirmish, 2079.
Scaturday (*sempmedi*), Saturday, 2724.
Schapel, chapel, 771.
Schurch, church, 3247.
Scomfite, to discomfit, 4198.
Scomfiture, discomfiture, conflict, 4148.
Scripture, writing, record, records, *p.* 118, 2076, 2115, 5484, 5494, etc.
Scorched (miswritten *scroched*), scorched, 3551. [Spelt *scorched* in l. 3678.]
Secundarilie (*secondement*), a second time, 512.
Sef (*sept*), seven, 4181.
Seff, seven, 4182.
Seffe, 1261, } seventh.
Sefth, 4427, }
Seignorie (*seignourie*), lordship, dominion, 55, 5197, 5751; rank, high degree, 339. Ch.
Seignoried, was lord of, ruled, 5090.
Semblable, like, 6488. Ch.
Semblably (*samblablement*), similarly, in like manner, 5330.
Semblabilly, as Semblably, 1092.
Semblance, appearance, 1768.
Semblant (*samblant*), appearance, 1421. Ch.
Semble wyse, like wise, like manner, 1904. [Cf. *lyke-wyse* in l. 1901.]
Send, sent, 1462, 5273.
Sentence, meaning, sense, 6553, 6568. Ch.
Sentement, opinion, *p.* 125.
Sept, seven, 1670.
Sepulture, sepulchre, 3627. Ch.
Sery, prob. an error for "say," 3556. [If *sery* exists, it may mean *assert*.] Cf. Lat. *sero*, It. *asserire*.
Setterday, Saturday, 5598, 5601.
Seueralte, separate portions, 3640. [The text requires some word expressing the exact opposite of this, viz. integrity. As it is, we must put a comma after *hold*.]
Sew, to follow, 2002; to pursue, 1751; Sewed, followed, 138, 142, 3980, 4476, etc. Ch.
Sex, six, 5281. Lat. *sex*.
Shad, shed, 5063.
Shal, an error for Smal, small, 1393.
Shameuous, shameful, 3407, 3444, 5135.
Share (*trenche*), shore, cut, 3075.
She, it; used of a chamber, 4495, 4502. Fr. LA *chambre*.
Shend, despoiled, ruined, 4988. A.S. *scendan*.
Shereful (*chiere*), dear, 829.
Shete, to shoot, 1176; Shette (*chut*), shot down, *i. e.* fell quickly, 5905. A.S. *scēotan*.
Shill, shrill, 1997, 2209, 2976, 3317, 3403. "Schylle, and sharpe (schille, lowde), *Acutus, sonorus*." Pr. Parv. Du. *schel*.
Shifte, divided, sliced, 2792. "Schyftyñ, or part asundyr;" "Schyfteñ, or partyn, or delyñ." *Pr. Parv.* Cf. Du. *schiften*, Dan. *skifte*, Sw. *skifta*, to divide; O.N. *skipta*, to divide, *skīfa*, to cleave, split; Ger. *schiefern*, to slice off. The Eng. *shive*, a slice, seems to give the true clue to the word. The Fr. text has *Tant boulta parcy*

et par la, where *boulta* = *bouta*, thrust, smote.
Shitte, to enclose, 555; shut, 4409, 4412; shut in, 3295, 5791, etc.
Sho, she, 836.
Sighty, visible, 1229. Pr. Parv.
Simplesse, simpleness, lack of skill, 6567, 6601, 6608, 6610.
Sin, since, 3731, 4113, 5557.
Sinistre, left, 3049.
Sith, since; long sith = long since, 6209; euer sith = ever since, 4414.
Sithen, since, 163, 4424; afterwards, 3187, 3980.
Sixte, sixth, 4427.
Slay (*occist*), slew, 1251.
Sle, to slay, 210, 1367, 3017.
Slegges (*marteaulx*), sledge-hammers, 3000, 3065. A.S. *slecge*.
Sly, slew, 2090, 3978, 4073; to slay, 114; Slye (*tua*), slew, 147.
Slyest, slewest, 4254.
Smortherting, smothering, 3303.
Soghed, sighed, 2890; Sogheth, sigheth, 6164.
Solain, famous, excellent, fair, 864, 6104. O.Fr. *solempne*. Roq. [At l. 864 the Fr. text has *beaulx*.]
Solain, solitary, done in solitude, 4394; lonely, 5431. Ch. has *soleyn*. See Pr. Parv.
Sollemply, solemnly, 6192.
Sompnolence, slumber, 5384, 5452.
Sompnolent, slumberous, 5376.
Sonly, soon, 4078.
Sothlese, Sothlesse, truly, verily, 197, 417, 940, 2657, 3852. [Sothlese *should* mean *untruly*, but the author insists that it shall not.]
Soudan, sultan, 1301, 1315, 1371, 1383. Ch.
Soudiour, soldier, warrior, 4081. See Pr. Parv. [The Fr. text has *fouldreant* = one who terrifies.]
Souerayn, supreme, 210, 291, 297, 387, etc.
Soule, sole, single, 3641, 3770.
Souly, solely, singly, 4198.
Souned, sounded, 4718; Sounneth, soundeth, 5782.
Sowghid, sighed, 1944.
Sowly, as Souly, 4154.
Sparcled, scattered, 6480. "Splarplynge, or scaterynge (sparkelynge, sundrynge, sparkelyng). *Dissipatio*." Pr. Parv.
Spedfully, speedily, 3451.
Spell, to tell, relate, 5103, 5705. A.S. *spellian*.
Spere, sphere, 6509. *Lancelot*, 6.
Sperhauke (*espreuier*), sparrow-hawk, 5374, 5396, 5440, 5453.
Sperhauke, *i.e.* Sparrow-hawk castle, 5413.
Spored, spurred, 4214; Sporing, spurring, 4098.
Sprancles, sprinkles, tear-drops, 4016.
Sprites, spirits, feelings, affections, 4648.
Staf, a line, verse, 6555; Staffes, lines, 6581. Cf. Eng. *stave*.
Stage, story of a tower, 4925.
Standede, Standed, stone-dead, 115, 1376, 2282, 3121.
Stafte, 1723. [MS. *staste*; read *stafte*.] They stafte them = they ranged themselves in line; an idea repeated in the words "putt into ordinance;" for the Fr. text has merely, *Lors se misdrent en ordonnance*. Cf. Staff, a line, *supra*. Kilian gives "*Staven*, Figere, pangere, statuere."
Stede, place, 4686, 4938, 4942.
Steke, to set, fix, 3538. G. *stecken*.
Stered, stirred, excited, 2217. Ch.
Stied, mounted, climbed, 5861. A.S. *stigan*.
Stikell, steep, 5848. A.S. *sticol*.
Stile, steel, 2259, 2960, 3042.
Stilen, of steel, 256.
Stoke, stuck, 3955.
Stonde, time, 3517. *See* Stounde.
Stonde, astonied, 2346; Stoned, astonied, amazed, 728, 2940, 4700; in a trance, 3569. O.Fr. *estoner*.
Stonyng (*esbahissement*), abashment, cause of shame, 1230.
Stound, Stounde, } time, period, instant, 237, 312, 532, 633, 703, etc.; chiefly in phr. that stounde = at that time. A.S. *stund*; Ger. *stunde*. Cf. Du. *stond* = moment, instant.
Store, 5617. An error for Stere, to stir, cause, bring about.

Stour (*estour*), also Stoure, conflict, combat, 1360, 2231, 4165; pace, rate, 4827. Ch.
Stourne, stern, 5730.
Stratte, strait, narrow, 5809. Lat. *strictus*.
Strayned (*destraint*), strained, tormented, 1406.
Streight, stretched, made ready, 869, 918, 1005, 5417. A.S. *streccan*, to stretch; p.p. *gestreht*.
Streith, straightway, 712.
Stronght (*fort*), a fortress, 1179, 1184, 1192, 3452, etc.
Stroied, destroyed, 2857, 3313, 4854.
Stroyng, destroying, 3408.
Swatte, sweated, 3079; Suete, to sweat, 4851.
Suffisantly, sufficiently, 3984.
Sughed, sighed, 5024.
Sugret, 3848, } sugared, sweet.
Sugred, 6029, } Ch.
Surad, betrothed, 5087.
Surmitte, to lay a charge on, impose a task on, 5606. The line means, "To impose a task on Palestine, my youngest sister." "*Surmettre*; imposer, charger, accuser." Roq.
Surrend, to restore, render back again, 4986.
Suster, sister, 5595; Sustre, 5606; Sustres, sisters, 5575.
Swatte (*tressue*), sweated, 2781, 2876, 4929.
Syn, afterwards, *p.* 176; since, 4928. *See* Sin.
Synny, sinful, 5218.

Tach (*tache*), a blemish, 1265.
Tacked (*attachierent*), attached, 4802. Pr. Parv.
Taking, *sb.* capture, 4920; *pp.* taken, 4921.
Targe, target, shield, 4212.
Tasting, feeling, 4491. Ch.
Teise, draw near to, approach, 1295.
Tend, vexed, grieved, 2328; irritated, disquieted, 5785; was vexed, incensed, 3213. A.S. *téonian*, to vex, irritate, incense.
Tende, kindled; debate tende = kindled strife, 2097; kindled, lighted (Fr. text, *alumer font*), 2136. A.S. *on-tendan*, to light, kindle.
Termyne, to finish, bring to an end, 5996.
Terrene, earthly, 417.
Terrenly, as regards lands; wurthy terrenly = a great landholder, 5014. [The Fr. text has *sera grant terrien*, where *terrien* = *terrier*, seigneur qui a beaucoup de terres.]
Tewisday, 2670, 3247, } Tuesday.
Tewsday, 3309, 5763, }
Tha (*ilz*), they, 1365.
Thaken (*esprins*), taken, seized, 3292.
Thaught, taught, 98, 768, 3962.
The, prosper, 4959. A.S. *þēon*.
Then, ten, 3477.
Thenke, think, 3801, 3804, 3815.
Ther-hens, thence, 4345. [Perhaps an error for Ther-thens.]
Ther-thens, thence, 3125, 3350, 4818, 5070, 5517, 5763.
Therthorough, thereby, 3149.
This, thus, 2892, 3424.
Tho, those, 1343, 1653, 3176, 3218, etc. A.S. *þā*. Ch.
Tho, then, 253, 4534, 5391. A.S. *þā*.
Thombe, tomb, 6105.
Thorught, through, 3863.
Thought, though, 6611.
Thrall, *adj.* subject, 4714.
Thraste, to thrust, 4233.
Throw, time; that throw = at that time, 626; in a throw, in a brief space of time, 3360. See Pr. Parv. A.S. *þrāh*. Ch.
Thwanges, 568, } thongs. A.S.
Thanges, 582, } *þwang*.
Thyme (*temps*), weather, 2735.
Thys, thus, 297, 3218, 3279, 5069. *See* This.
Timbre (*fust*), wooden hilt, 1377.
Tirandise, 4732, } tyranny.
Tirandisse, 6487, }
To, two, *p.* 173, 31, 144, 1648, 1649, 1651, etc.
To-aunaunce (*ton deuancier*), preceding (you): man to-aunaunce = ancestor, 5566.
To-bore, native, 6563.
To-broke, brake very much, 5893. A.S. *tō-brecan*.

To-chapped (*detrenche*), cut small, 2272.

Togeders, together, 102, 1027, 1727, etc.

Told, accounted; noght told of = thought nothing of, 3029.

To-rent, rent severely, 5648; quite broken, 4290. Ch.

Tomorne, to-morrow, 2749.

Torn, turn, 2764, 2838, 2938, 3043, 6566; return home, 5266; Torned, turned, 3738. Ch.

Torning, 2905, } turning.
Tornyng, 3449, }

To-stoniste, much astonished, 2198.

To-tere, to tear severely, 5938; To-tore, tore severely, 5872.

Tour, a tower, 4662, 4772, 4907.

Tour, a turn, circuit, 3875. Fr. *tour*.

Townishe peple (*celles de la ville*), people of the town, 2443.

Toxicat (*envelyme*), poisoned, 1333, 1429.

Traiteresse, traitress, 2770.

Trauers, in the phr. in trauers (*au trauers*), across, 1161; across, sideways, 5886.

Trauersing, changing about, changing the place of words, 6562.

Traying, for Tarying, tarrying, 49. *See* note.

Trenchand, cutting, 3045. Ch.

Trewage, tribute, 4729, 4739, 6154. O.Fr. *treu, treuage*. Roq.

Trimble, tremble, 3097.

Trought, truth, 2919, 3697.

Trouth, truth, 3710.

Trowe (*trou*), a hole, 4270.

Trowing (*se croy Ie*), as I suppose, 3575, 4260; expecting, trusting, 4266.

Trusse, *sb.* a bundle, 720; (see Pr. Parv.); pack off, begone, 3011. O.Fr. *torser, trusser*. Bur.

Trussing (*destruisant*), making (them) pack off, routing (them), 2154; perhaps here used in the sense of destroying.

Tydy, timely; tydy stounde, timely moment, 5722. Cf. Ger. *zeitig*.

Vail, to avail; but used in phr. vail that vail might = happen what may; Fr. text, *vaille que vaille*, 2672.

Uaillant, valiant, 4650.

Ualay, valley, 4160; Ualey, 584, 725, 747, etc.

Valoure, value, power, *p.* 50, 3899.

Uandosme, 3484. This is a proper name (the modern Vendôme), and the allusion to it must be a proverb. The line means, "By the tears of Vandosme's beauty" (*or* face, *or* appearance), though "hys fair" is merely expletive. Fr. text, *Et, pour la larme de vandosme.*

Uarray, very, 5399.

Uermaill (*vermeillon*), vermilion, scarlet, 3213, 4279, 5477.

Uerray, very, 4652.

Uiage, journey, expedition, 3123, 5820; purpose, 3958; necessaries for a journey (Lat. *viaticum*), 5020; of viage = on their journey, 2476. Ch.

Uilloined, dishonoured, slighted, 2993. O.Fr. *vilainer*. Bur.

Vilously (*villainement*), insultingly, 2861. *Perhaps read* uilonsly.

Uitaill, victuals, eatables, 5022, 5166. Ch.

Uitaillouns, 987. An error for uitaillous, eatable, life-sustaining.

Vmbleste, humblest, 4842.

Unboro, unborn, 3709.

Unconnyng, unskilful, 6610.

Vnconnyngnesse, lack of skill, *p.* 12.

Vnfold, explained, *p.* 130; to narrate, relate, 893, 4372, 5124; visibly, openly, plainly, 697, 2350, 5038; produced, given birth to, 4401; unfold of = brought forth by, 465 (cf. l. 4401); narrated, related, 5990; evident, manifest, openly displayed, *p.* 35, 26.

Vnhaply, by ill chance, 5918.

Unknow, unknown, 843, 4954.

Unmesurabelnesse, want of moderation, talkativeness, 3594.

Unmete, immense, measureless, 5775. A.S. *ungemet*, immensity.

Unnethes, scarcely, 318, 778, 1405, 1703, etc. Properly *unethes*, as in Ch.

Vnperfight, imperfect, sinful, 5225.
Vnshit, } to open, 3501; opened,
Vnshitte, } 3945, 4747, 5792.
Vnwemmed, unblemished, 6569. *See* Wemme.
Uoide, to depart, 4109, 5590; Uoided, departed, 5639; avoided, 3084. Ch.
Uois, voice, 2404, 3547, 4870.
Uolente (*voulente*), wish, desire, 47, 3473.
Voluntarily (*voulentiers*), gladly, 5055.
Uomed, foamed, 3215.
Uoyding, avoiding, 4672.
Vre, common custom, habitual use, 3722. *See* Nares' Glossary.

Wacche, watch, 5523; to watch, 5375, 5395; Wacchyd (*veilla*), watched; wacchyd his person = took heed to himself, kept himself awake, 5518.
Wace, was, 4769, 4844, 5243.
Waillant, valiant, 5354.
Wak, to watch, 5444; Wake, 5454; Waked, watched, 5461.
Waking, *s.* watching, 5527.
Walling, welling up, 4161. A.S. *weallan.* Ger. *wallen.*
Wallure (*murs*), walls, 1152, 5504.
Waloping, galloping, 4827. Kilian gives "Galoppe, waloppe" in Appendix. *See* note to the line.
Warant, safeguard, defence, 4195; to guard, save, 4201.
Wardain, warder, 4415. Ch.
Warde, *sb.* custody, 4824; *vb.* guard, 5003, 5005; cf. *garde* in l. 5004.
Warde (*gardez*), take care, beware, 805, 834.
Warented (*poeoit garir*), defended, saved, 2237.
Warly, warily, 41, 4267.
Warly, *adj.* warlike, 1362.
Waymented, lamented, 3324. O.Fr. *waimenter.* Bur.
Waymenting, lamenting, 4953; *sb.* a lament, 3459. Ch.
Wemme, spot, blemish, 466. A.S. *wamm.*
Wend, to turn about, 6566; Went, *i. e.* arrived, 3453; went, 2264; turned, overturned, 2104.
Wendyng, turning, 2905.
Went, weened, knew, 5646. *See* note to the line.
Were (*guerre*), war, 2980, 3056, 3172, 4056, etc.
Were, whether, 5659. *See* Wher.
Were, (who) was, 4063.
Werly, warlike, 1591, 4148.
Wern (*escondiroie*), deny, refuse, refuse to do, *p.* 126, 556, 1494. A.S. *wiernan.*
Wern, warn, 4197. A.S. *warnian.*
Werne, to deny, refuse, 82, 86, 520. *See* Wern.
Werre, war, 3659, 4429.
Werred, warred on, 5318. Ch. *werreie.*
Werrely, in a warlike way, 1741.
Wersom, weary, 4406; wersom goste = tired, oppressed spirit.
Wher, } whether, 359, 4048, 4654,
Where, } 4657, 5083.
Where (*guerre*), war, 1281.
Where-hens, whence, *p.* 114, 3351, 3383, 5489.
Wherethorugh, whereby, 447, 3389, 4404.
Wherethorught, wherefore, 3079.
Whight (*hardis*), nimble, vigorous, 2522. Suio-G. *wig;* Sw. *vig.*
Whilis, whilst, 5597.
Wice, wise, 4896.
Wight, nimble, swift, 4910. Ch.
Wightly, quickly, 326; nimbly, 2260, 4226; soon, 4697, 4843; strongly, vigorously, 3066, 4699.
Wighty, nimble, quick (= Wight), 4704. Cf. Bryghty, Pitty, Moisty.
Wilfull, willing, glad, 1641.
Will, *adv.* well, 5527, 6171.
Wilnyng, wishing, 3178. Ch.
Win, to rise, get up, 2986. *See* Jam., s. v. Win—"to win up, to rise."
With, *used in the sense of* by, 4673. Ch.
Withdraught, withdrawal, 5927.
Withsay, to gainsay, 86, 3235; refuse, 5529. A.S. *wiðseggan.* Ch.
Withsaing, gainsaying, 482. *See* l. 485.
Wo, *adj.* sad, 2538, 2562. Ch.
Woer, sadder, 2855.
Wode, mad, 3291, 4897. Ch.

Womanhed, womanhood, 2315.
Wonderly, w ndrously, 26, 5282; wondrous, 1241.
Wone .(*demeure*), dwelling, 5786. Ch. [The MS. has *lone.*]
Wordle, world, 166, 2049, 4838, 5782. "Al þe welthe of þis *wordle*, and þe woo boþe." *Piers Plowman*, C. i. 10.
Wordly, worldly, 457, 2644, 2923; mortal, 1177; living in this world, alive, 3533. [*Lancelot*, 3184, *has* ward = warld, world. *So* werd = world *in Gen. and Ex.* 32, 1315.]
Worle, world, 3816, 3841, 4007, 5179, 5353, etc.
Worly, worldly, 3838, 4110, 4373, 6510.
Worm, a large serpent, 5859; Wormes, serpents, 5772. A.S. *wyrm;* O.N. *ormr.*
Wout, wot, know, 761.
Woxin, become, 3436.
Wrake, harm, hurt, 5933. A.S. *wræc.*
Wraste, wrested, *i. e.* pierced, 1377.
Wrete, written, 4522, 6401.
Wreth, *sb.* wrath, 231.
Wreth, *vb.* to make angry, 2856; Wrethed, made angry, 4853.
Wroght, 2780, } wroth.
Wrought, 3543, }
Wrothed, was angry, 1254.
Wurght, *adj.* worth, 5940.
Wurghtinesse, worthiness, 5959.
Wyght, a wight, a creature, 3992. A.S. *wiht.*
Wyghtly (*vistement*), nimbly, quickly, 235, 333. *See* Wight.
Wylfully, at will, 327.
Wyn, to go, 3253. *See* Win.

Yaf, gave, 218, 559.
Yande, yonder, 5827.
Yanyng, yawning, 5852, 5941.
Yeff, give, *p.* 191, *p.* 196, *p.* 209, 75; given, 88; Yef, gave, 652.
Yefte, gift, 550.
Yeman (*varlet*), a yeoman, a squire, 5164, 5174.
Yerfull, ireful, angry, 3258.
Yeue, give, *i. e.* deliver, 462.
Yeuyng, giving; but used as = had given, 4720; giving, *p.* 47.
Yif, given, 5557.
Yifte, gift, 558, 687, 5401, 5406; Yiftes, gifts, 1071.
Yongling, youngling, youth, 3843.
Youthnesse, youth, 5221.
Yowlownesse (*crinx blons*), yellowness, 3887.
Yoy, joy, 3760, 3991.
Ypocras, the name of a compound wine, 972.
Yre (*fer*), iron, 1377, 2786, 2999.
Yrous, angry, 4889.
Yrously, angrily, 4692.
Yut, yet, *p.* 21, 3709, 5351, etc.
Ywis, certainly, *p.* 116.

Zowning (*se pasme*), swooning, 287, 3569, 3776; a swoon, 3781.
Zownyngly, swooningly, 3566.

ȝere, years, 126.

INDEX OF NAMES.

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are to the *pages* of the book; otherwise, the references are to the *lines*. By 'p.' is meant *page*, and by *prol.* the "Prologue."]

Albany, 4386, 5362.
Allexaundre, 6322.
Almayn, 2066.
AMERYS, AMERIE, or AMERYE, earl of Poitiers, p. 8; adopts Raymond, p. 11; goes out hunting, p. 12; is accidentally slain by Raymond, p. 16; is buried, p. 29.
Angoy (Anjou?), 968.
Anthonye, *prol.* 177.
ANTONY, or ANTHONYE, fourth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 48; besieges Luxembourg, p. 64; marries Christian, p. 71; further notice of him, p. 184.
Aras (Arras), 2640.
Ardennes. *See* Dardane.
Aristotle, quoted; *prol.* 78.
Aritrige (= Autrige, *i. e.* Austria), 2197. Fr. text, *Autriche.*
Armenia. *See* Hermeny.
Arminiens, 1604.
Arragon, or Arrigon, 4636, 5168, 5607, 5709, 5764, 5768.
Arthur, *prol.* 91, 5748.
Aucerre (Auxerre), 975.
Auoblon, or Aualon (Avalon), 4548, 4644, 4858.
Ausoy (Alsace), 1700, etc.
Ausoys (Alsacians), 1703, 1733, 1736, 1743, 1750, 1754.
Ayglon, 5607.

Bachus, *prol.* 37.
Barry. *See* Salz.
Baueres (Bavaria), 2066.
Bernagant, 4312; an error for Teruagant = Termagaunt.
Bertram, son of Amerye, 28.
BERTRAM, son of Anthony, and grandson of Melusine, becomes king of Alsace, p. 90.
Bewme (Beaune), 970.
Bew-repair, 1171; Fr. text, *le bourg ou a moult beau Repaire.*
Bewuais (Beauvais), 2640.
Blanche (daughter of Amerye), 27.
Brebaigne (Bohemia), 1696, 1939, 1951, 1972, 5328.
Brebaignous (Bohemians), 2072, 2093, 2116, 2154, 2182.
Bretain, 5086.
Brough-dieu, 2623.

Cambrere, 5359.
Celestines, 5691.
Charlemain, 6359, 6360.
Chartres, 2633.
Cipresse (Cyprus), 1297, 1467, 1600, 5317, 6275.
Ciprian, king, 1142, 1352, 1437.
Ciprian, a man of Cyprus, 1414.
Cipriens, men of Cyprus, 1316, 1332, 1338, 1400, 5351.
Coinqs, also spelt Quonig, Conqs, and Comquez, a mountain in Arragon, 4607, 4625, 5708, 6061.
Columbere (Coulombiers), 34, 125, 146, 866, 1099.
Conquez. *See* Coinqs.

Constantinoble, 946, 4516.
Couldrette, author of the French version of the romance, 6423, 6433.
CRAQUO, KING OF, p. 76; killed by Raynold, p. 82; burnt by the men of Alsace, p. 83.
CRISTIAN, daughter of the duke of Luxembourg, p. 64; gives a feast to Anthony and Raynold, p. 68; pardons the king of Alsace, p. 70; is married to Anthony, p. 71; asks Anthony to wear the arms of Luxembourg, p. 75.
Crius, 5672.

Dardane, 2488. An error for *d'Ardennes*, the place meant being the French department named Ardennes.
Denmarke, 2465.
Digon (Dijon ?), 974.
Dingenon, 982.

EGLENTINE, daughter of the king of Bohemia, p. 78; laments his death, p. 79; besieged by the Saracens, *id.*; welcomes the king of Alsace, p. 83; is married to Raynold, p. 87, 88.
Englande, 5357, 5741, 5968, 6006.
English Knight, the; his adventure in Arragon, 5741—5971.
ERMYNEE, daughter of the king of Cyprus, p. 51; laments his sore wounds, p. 52; besieged by the Saracens, p. 53; made heiress by her dying father, p. 56; marries Uriens, p. 59.
Esclamons, 2075, 2091, 2094.
Estables (Étaples ?), 978.

Faborugh, 2496. An error for Friburg; Fr. text, *bribourg*.
Famagouce, Famagousta in Cyprus, 1299, 1304.
FLOURYE, daughter of the king of Armenia, p. 61; marries Guy, p. 62.
Forest, earl of; 36, 60, 79, 91, 101. *See* FROMOUNTE.
Fraunce (France), 5687, 6388.
Frige (Phrygia), *prol.* 36.
Frise (Friesland), 2463.

FROMONT, seventh son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 49; asks his father if he may turn monk, p. 92; becomes a monk at Maillezais Abbey, p. 95; is burnt by Geoffrey, p. 96 (of which there is a more detailed account, pp. 113—117).
FROMOUNTE (EARL OF FOREST), tempts Raymond to find out where Melusine goes on a Saturday, p. 98; is threatened by Raymond, p. 101; slain by Geoffrey, p. 102 (of which there is a longer account, pp. 169, 170).

GAFFRAY (GEOFFREY), sixth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 49; says he will fight the giant Guedon, p. 91; his fight with Guedon, pp. 105 — 109; slays Guedon, p. 110; says he will go to Northumberland, p. 113; burns down Maillezais Abbey, pp. 114—117; goes to Northumberland, p. 118; he is to rebuild the abbey, p. 129; fights with the giant Grimold, pp. 141—151; enters the enchanted mountain, pp. 155—164; slays Grimold, p. 163; sees Raymond, p. 167; kills his uncle Fromounte, p. 170; rebuilds the abbey, p. 176 (cf. p. 182); is assoiled by the pope, p. 180; goes to Montserrat, p. 181; hears of Palestine's treasure, p. 207; falls ill, p. 208; dies, and is buried in the abbey, p. 209.
Gawayn, *prol.* 97.
Gian (Guienne), 6362.
Greffon, son of Uriens, 1562, 1584, 1585.
GRIMOLD THE GIANT, is sought by Geoffrey, pp. 141—144; fights with Geoffrey and flees away, pp. 145—151; found and slain by Geoffrey, pp. 161—163.
GUEDON THE GIANT, wastes Guerrande, p. 91; fights with Geoffrey and is slain, pp. 105—110; was cousin to Grimold, p. 148.
Guerrande, 2950, 3140, 3157, 3343, 4832.
GUY, third son of Raymond and

Melusine, p. 48; goes to Cyprus, p. 51; aids the king of Cyprus, p. 52; marries Flourye, and is king of Armenia, pp. 61, 62; alluded to, p. 183 and p. 192.

HELMAS, king of Albany, and husband of Presine, father of Melusine, Melior and Palestine, p. 152; enclosed in the enchanted mountain, p. 153; his tomb, p. 156; his history, pp. 157—160; alluded to, pp. 168, 173, 193, 199, and 207.
Hermeny (Armenia), 1637, 5321, 5369, 5372, 5391, 5672, 6275.
HORRIBLE, eighth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 50; Melusine advises that he be slain, p. 128; he is stifled in a cave, p. 137; alluded to, p. 184.
Hungery (Hungary), 5993.

Iason, 1573.
Iesus, 6525; Iesu, 6539.
Iohan of Pertenay, 6217, 6233.
Iudas Iscariot, 3337.
Iupiter, 4313.

King of Bohemia. *See* Brehaigne.
King of Craquo (Cracow). *See* CRAQUO.
King of Cyprus. *See* Ciprian, king.
King of France, 6265, 6272.
KING OF HERMYNE (ARMENIA); his adventure at Sparrow-hawk Castle, pp. 186—195.

Lancelet, *prol.* 95.
Latin, 6558, 6565.
Lesignen, *prol.* 135, *prol.* 195. *See* Lusignen.
Lochier, 2486.
Lusignen, built and named, 1138; name alluded to, 3725; used as a war-cry, 5352; the romance named from it, 6420. [Mentioned very often.]
Luxembrough, 1235, 1697, 1802, 2096, 2175, 5333.
Lyon (pope Leo), 4964, 5144, 5156.

Mabregon, *prol.* 172.
Machon (Macon), 31.
Mahounde, *i. e.* Muhammed, 310, 4313.
Mallers Abbey (now Maillezais), 1252, 2553, 2581, 2591, etc.; burnt down, 2666, 3291—3325; rebuilt, 5104; Geoffrey is buried there, 6099.
Margot, 4312.
Mars, 2671.
Mathefelon, 6236, 6301.
Medee (Medea), 1572, 1575.
Meisiere (Mezieres), 2492.
Mel (Melle, dep. deux Sévres), built, 1199.
MELIOR, second daughter of Helmas and Presine, p. 159; alluded to, p. 174; keeper of Sparrow-hawk Castle, p. 185; interview with the king of Armenia, pp. 190—194.
MELUSINE, eldest daughter of Helmas and Presine, p. 158; her doom, p. 159; meets with Raymond, pp. 19—27; marries Raymond, pp. 33—44; builds Lusignan, Mel, etc., pp. 45, 47; her children, pp. 46—50, p. 92; is seen bathing by Raymond, p. 100; comforts Raymond, p. 104; Raymond calls her serpent, p. 124; she reproaches him and bids him adieu, pp. 125—134; is changed into a serpent and vanishes, p. 135; reappears, p. 139; her name explained, p. 45.
Merkministre, 2622.
Merlyn, 5973. *See* note.
Meruant (Mervent), built, 1200; given to Thierry, 5007.
Meuse (river), 2491.
Midas, *prol.* 36.
Mont-sarrat (Monserrat in Arragon), 5148, 5169, 5296, 5305.
Mychaell, 6462.

Norbelande (Northumberland), 3163, 3168, 4055, 4726, 4823.
Norway, 6278, 6280.

Octanian, 2.
OEDES (EUDES), second son of Melusine, p. 47; marries daughter of the earl of Forest, p. 63; alluded to, p. 183.

Ortholegne, 2464. *See* note.

PALESTINE, youngest daughter of Helmas and Presine, p. 160; mentioned, p. 174 and p. 193; she guards her father's treasure in Arragon, pp. 196, 197.
Panebourght (Pembroke), 5357.
Partenay (Parthenay), *prol.* 122, *prol.* 146; built, 1204. [Mentioned very often throughout the poem.]
Partenay, lord of, 6145; date of his death, 6182.
Partenay, Iohan of. *See* Iohan.
Pareys (Paris), 2640, 5690, 6202.
Payny (pagan lands), 1564.
Paynymes, 1328, 1385, 1395, 1469, etc.
Peiteuin (a Poitevin, a man of Poitou), 1374.
Petyuins (Poitevins), 1362, 1733, 1743, etc.
Peito (Poitou), 1220.
Penticost, 6182.
Perceuale, *prol.* 97.
Perregort (Perigord), 6354, 6372.
Peyters (Poitiers), *prol.* 121, 3, 21, 32, 174, 521, etc.
Poiters, 53, 64, 89, etc. *See* Peyters.
Polin (Apolin), 4312.
Pope, the; 2636, 5144, 5156, 5216, 5224, 5253.
PRESINE, wife of Helmas, pp. 157—160; mentioned, p. 174.
Promission, land of (land of Promise, Palestine), 5713, 5759, 5786, 6063.

Quonig, 4607. *See* Coinqs.

RAYMOUND, son of the earl of Forest, adopted by Earl Amery, p. 11; hunts with Amery, and accidentally kills him, pp. 12—18; meets with Melusine, whom he marries, pp. 19—42; permits his son Fromont to turn monk, pp. 92—95; is tempted to see where Melusine goes on a Saturday, pp. 98, 99; sees her bathing, p. 100; his rage, and self-reproaches, pp. 101—104; hears how the abbey of Maillezais is burnt, and visits the ruins, pp. 1[illegible]; his grief, and how he [illegible] Melusine a serpent, pp. 1[illegible]; his adieux to Melusine, and lament at her loss, pp. 135, 136; sets out for Rome, p. 173; is pardoned by the pope, p. 177; becomes a hermit, pp. 178, 179; dies, p. 182.
RAYMOND, ninth son of Raymond and Melusine, p. 92, 2550; where "From[illegible]" is a mistake for "Raymon[illegible]"; becomes earl of Forest, p. 184.
RAYNOLD, fifth son of Melusine, p. 49; goes with Anthony to Luxembourg, pp. 63—68; goes with him next to Bohemia, pp. 74—85; marries Eglentyne, pp. 86—89; mentioned again, p. 184.
Ris (Ruys ?), 980.
Rochel (Rochelle), 31, 968; built, 1219; *also* 1282, 2529, 3807, 5110, 6461.
Romain (Romanée ?), 972.
Romayns (Romans), 2469.
Rome, 266, 4964, 5068, 5119.

SAINTS, invocation of. On pp. 221 and 222, the following saints are invoked: SS. Agnes, Andrew, Augustin, Clement, Cuthbert, Denise, Edith, Germain (Germanus), Iohan the baptist, Katerine, Laurence, Martin, Mary Magdeline, More (Maur), Michaell, Nicholas, Paul, Peter, Seurin (Severinus), Siluestre, Steuin (Stephen), Vincent. Also at p. 324 thanks are given to S. John the apostle, S. Michael, and the Virgin Mary.
St. Cross, church of, 6130.
Seint Johan-of-Angely (now St. Jean d'Angely), 976.
Seint Iougon, 975.
Seint Lowes (Louis IX.), 6192.
Seint Martin's, 2630.
Seint Messent (St. Maixent), 1200.
Seint pursain (St. Pourçain-sur-Allier), 980.
Salz and Barry (Salisbury), *prol.* 178.
Sarasins, 1311, 1330, 1964, 2087, 2099, etc.; all killed and buried, 2290.
Saracyne, 309.

Saturday, 490, 2724, 5598, 5601.
Soudan (Sultan), 1317; killed, 1381.
Sperhauke castell, romance of, 5370—5678.
Suriens (Syrians), 1387.

Talmondois (*Taillemondoiz*), 1227. [O.Fr. *taille*, a district.]
Terry. *See* THIERRY.
Tewsday, 2670, 3309.
Theophillus. 6459.
THIERRY, tenth and youngest son of Melusine, p. 92; is to be lord of Parthenay, p. 138; nursed by Melusine by night, p. 140; goes with Geoffrey, p. 173; governs Parthenay, p. 175.
Tholouse (Toulouse), 5159, 5199; (error for Toledo), 5982.
Tiberius Cesar, *prol.* 28.
Tourain, 970, 2629.
Toures, 2629.
Tourinz (Tours?), 974.
Trinite, the; 6434, 6547.
Tristram, 5750, 6008.
Trompe (name of a tower), 1186.
Turkes, 1387.

Valerius Maximus, *prol.* 27.
Vandosme, 3484.
Vauuant (Vouvent), built, 1200; 2676, 3125, 3368, 3372, 3453, 5007.
Uiart, 978.
Virgin Mary, 465, 6455, 6548.
URIEN, or URIENS, eldest son of Melusine, p. 46; goes to Cyprus, p. 50; kills the sultan, p. 53; is made king of Cyprus, p. 57; marries Ermynee, p. 59; noticed, p. 183.

William, 6175. *See* the note.

Yaffe, Jaffa, Joppa, 1587.
Yrlande (Ireland), 6286.
Ywon, 2490.

Printed by CLAY & SON, Limited,
Brunswick St, Stamford St, S.E.,
and Bungay.

00043481

Digitized with financial assistance from
Government of Maharashtra
on 30 January, 2020